

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

\_\_\_\_\_

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

\_\_\_\_\_

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

*Class*

*The Bancroft Library*

University of California • Berkeley





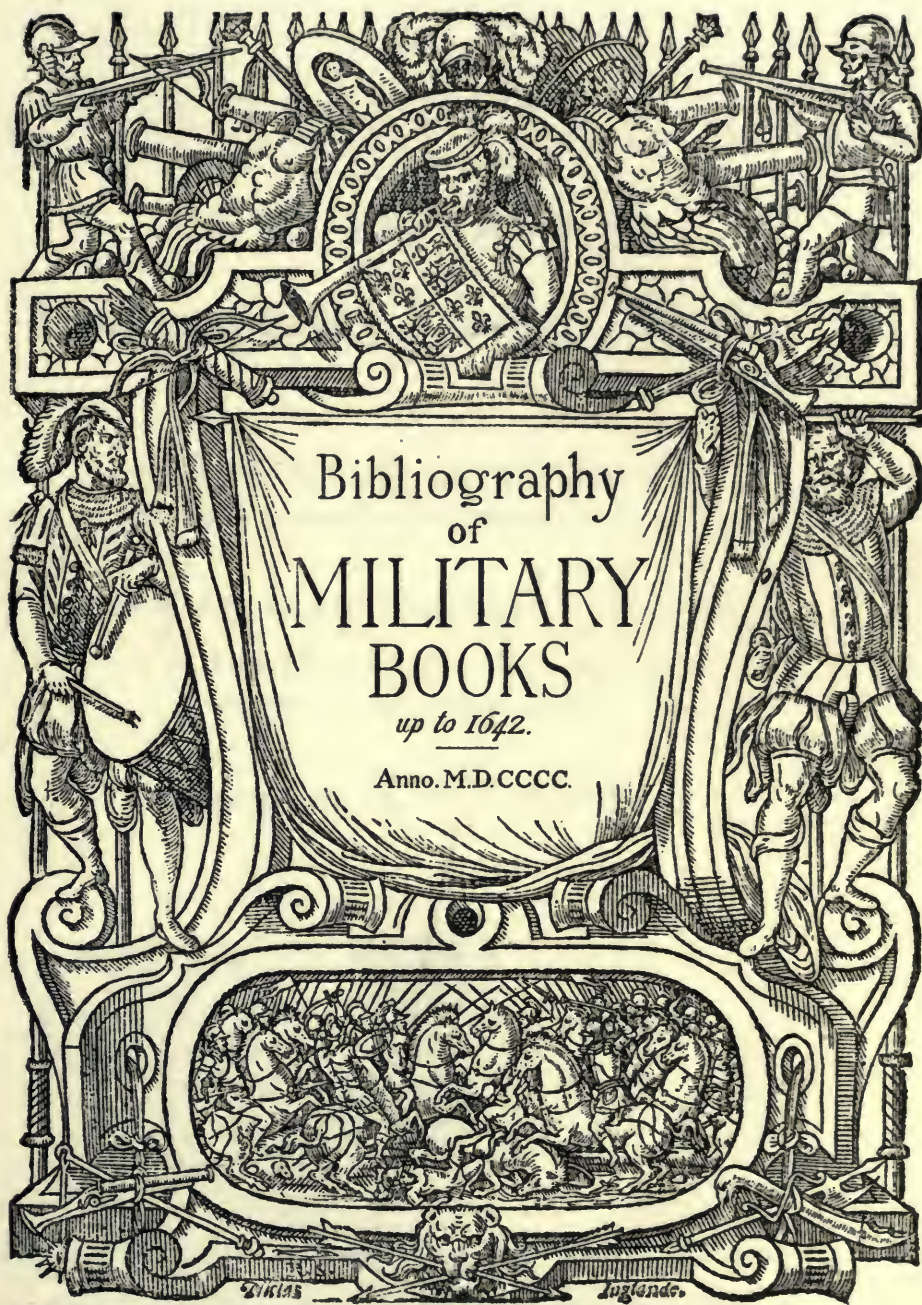
Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF ENGLISH AND  
FOREIGN MILITARY BOOKS



A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF THE LIFE AND

*\*\* Only 250 copies printed. This copy is  
No. 201.*



Bibliography  
of  
**MILITARY  
BOOKS**  
*up to 1642.*  
Anno. M.D.CCCC.

LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY  
OF  
CALIFORNIA





A BIBLIOGRAPHY  
OF  
ENGLISH MILITARY BOOKS  
UP TO 1642 AND OF  
Contemporary Foreign Works

BY  
**MAURICE J. D. COCKLE**  
LATE CAPT. 4TH BATT. BORDER REGT.

WITH AN INTRODUCTORY NOTE BY  
CHARLES OMAN, M.A., F.S.A.  
FELLOW OF ALL SOULS COLLEGE, OXFORD

EDITED BY H. D. COCKLE



**LONDON**

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, HAMILTON, KENT & CO. LTD.

1900

45

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

CHICAGO, ILLINOIS

1967

GENERAL

CHISWICK PRESS: CHARLES WHITTINGHAM AND CO.  
TOOKS COURT, CHANCERY LANE, LONDON.



## INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

**N**ONE know so well the value of a good Bibliography as those who have had to work at the same time on two topics, one of which has and the other has not been dealt with by a competent bibliographer. In the first case the student knows the obvious books, but he is fully aware that others exist, and it is his duty to find them. The preliminary labour of so doing is often enormous: I have known would-be authors who found it so engrossing that they have finally produced nothing more than a list of sources, where they had intended to write a book. Those who are not so faint-hearted, and who have got well to work on a hitherto neglected subject, are always finding new authorities containing facts which make it necessary to delete whole pages of their manuscript. It has always seemed to me that, by some special perversity of fate, a tract of importance, which has hitherto escaped notice, invariably turns up just as the author has despatched the second revise of his proofs to the press.

It is impossible, therefore, to exaggerate the debt which the specialist owes to those who are good enough to make his way clear for him, by searching out all the scattered materials bearing on his subject. As one who, after working through the military annals of the Middle Ages, is about to analyse the far more com-

plicated Art of War of the Renaissance, I am myself bound to express my personal obligation to Mr. Cockle for his diligence and care in compiling this bibliography of English works bearing on War. A glance through his proofs was sufficient to show me dozens of interesting books which had not before come under my notice.

In the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries the English had a school of war of their own, entirely dependent on the use of their great national weapon, the long-bow. From the day of Falkirk to that of Flodden the archer, when properly handled by his commanders, discomfited all who, on horse or on foot, came up against him. Unfortunately the tactics of this invincible English archery were not committed to paper by any scientific soldier: they have to be gathered from the chroniclers, who were generally clerics, and often unable to describe with clearness or accuracy the fights of which they have to tell. Just as laymen and professional soldiers began to write, the predominance of the long-bow was ceasing. Roger Ascham's "Toxophilus" (1545) has already to take the defensive against the incoming of firearms, and Sir John Smythe (1590), when he enlarges on "the great sufficiency, excellency, and wonderfull effects of archers" in his "Discourses," is the champion of a cause that had already been lost. Though many of the militia who had been called out against the Armada in 1588 were still armed with the bow, yet before 1600 Sheriffs and Lords-Lieutenant had begun to refuse to put into the ranks any man bearing the old national weapon. Roger Williams and Barwick had demolished all Sir John Smythe's old-fashioned theories.

It is a thousand pities that we have not any literary survivals from the earlier contentions between the advocates of the bow and the arquebus, which must have begun a full century before Smythe and Williams engaged in their controversy. The smaller firearms had been seen in England ere the Wars of the Roses came to an end: they had figured at the second battle of St. Albans and at Stoke Field. Yet they failed to make much way on this side of the Channel till the reign of Henry VIII. was far advanced.

Their advocates must have argued in vain, for two generations, against the conservatives who trusted in the clothyard shaft alone; but not a word of the dispute has descended to us.

By the time that the English soldier began to commit his experiences and his theories to paper, the old school of national tactics was moribund. The men who wrote in the age of Elizabeth had seen all their service in Flanders and France, and were set on teaching their fellow-countrymen the Art of War that had been developed by Spanish and Italian captains since the commencement of the great struggle between Charles V. and Francis I. The military books of the period which Mr. Cockle's bibliography covers are very largely compilations from the continental authors. When they are original compositions, they are still mainly inspired by foreign experience and foreign necessities. England was not destined for many generations to develop a new national system of tactics. This was not unnatural: the country was fortunate enough to escape the sight of battle within her own borders from the day of Solway Moss to that of Edgehill. Between 1542 and 1642 English troops often fought on the continent, but it was generally in small numbers, and as the mere auxiliaries of foreign allies. The only force of really formidable strength that was ever sent abroad was the army that sailed in 1589 to the ill-managed and unlucky "Journey of Portugal." Moreover, all the expeditions which were despatched to the continental wars consisted of men raised for the occasion, and disbanded on their return. There was no standing army in which the professional soldier could find a regular livelihood and a fixed position. He never got the chance of training a full army of Englishmen embodied for permanent service: the only bodies of his countrymen which were held together long enough to become veterans, were the regiments which were hired by the Dutch for their struggle with Spain, and afterwards by the German and Swedish princes during the Thirty Years' War. These corps were mere auxiliaries, and were naturally trained and exercised on continental and not on English methods. We were never to have a professional army of our own till Fairfax and Cromwell

embodied and disciplined the famous "New Model" in the spring of 1645.

It is natural, therefore, that all our early English military books, with very few exceptions, are echoes from the great wars of the continent. We need only except the works of the last advocates of archery, such as Sir John Smythe and William Neade, the author of that fantastic publication, "The Double-armed Man" (1625). All other writers sought their inspiration from the continent, and Mr. Cockle has therefore compiled a bibliography of foreign authors on the Art of War, in whose works the original material of books published on this side of the Channel is so often to be found. Any survey of the history of English warcraft would be incomplete without a notice of them. The labour involved in this part of the work is not less than that required for the construction of the English section: it is true that in the latter Mr. Cockle had no forerunners and was compelled to begin *ab initio*, whereas several good continental bibliographies already exist. But, on the other hand, the bulk of the foreign works is considerably larger, and the British Museum Library, in spite of its wealth, is naturally not so complete in its collection of books published overseas as in that of our national authors.

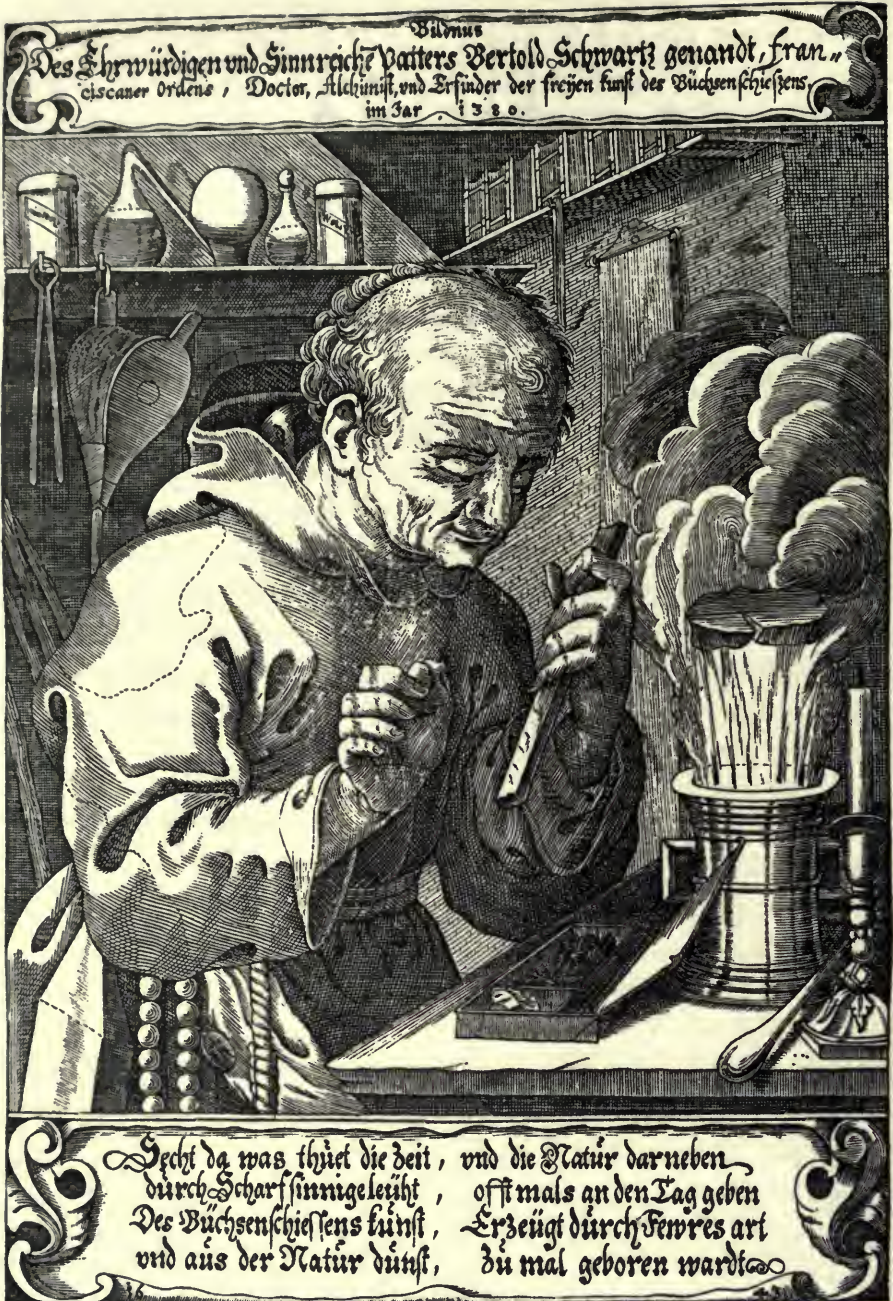
C. OMAN.

Oxford, July, 1900.



LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY  
OF  
CALIFORNIA

Faint text at the bottom of the page, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the document.



From the "Büchsenmeisterey" of Furtenbach, 1643.





## PREFACE.

**T**HE first steps in the study of a subject are often bibliographical. So well did Hulsius<sup>1</sup> understand this that for the benefit of his readers he made a list containing the short titles of the works used in preparing his treatises "Der Mechanischen Instrumenten" (Franckfurt-am-Mayn, 1604, 4°), prefixing it to Part I. Twenty, at least, of the hundred works mentioned may be classed as military; and starting from this index, with its recognition of the fact that some acquaintance with what had already been written should be a prelude to research, it will not be out of place to inquire here what further assistance has been given from time to time in this respect to the student of the art of war and its history. A brief notice of the books actually seen will suffice, for the ground has been covered already by Doisy,<sup>2</sup> who mentions about fifty lists, most of them very short, however, and occurring in general catalogues, or at the end of other works.

The "Syntagma de Studio militari" of Gabriel Naudé (Rome, 1637, 4°)<sup>3</sup> is commonly called the earliest military bibliography, but it is not correctly so described. It is, rather, a compendium, pointing out to the military student what books he should consult,

<sup>1</sup> See No. 945.

<sup>2</sup> "Essai de bibliologie militaire", Paris, 1824, 8°.

<sup>3</sup> This ed. is not in the British Museum.

those being recommended which had been written by successful generals. First there comes a short account of ancient military writers, and of the libraries in which certain MSS. in the Greek, Latin, Arabic, and other tongues, are to be found. Next, some modern authors are mentioned, who are divided into two classes, those who had written on the ancient, and those who had written on the modern discipline. Titles are rarely given, and dates never. Part of the essay was reprinted by Schubert at Jena, 1683, 12°; and Crenius has included it in his collection, "De eruditione comparanda . . . tractatus" (Leyden, 1699, 4°), enriching it with notes.

In 1697, Saint-Rémy, in his "Mémoires d'artillerie" (Paris, 4°),<sup>1</sup> printed a list of the twelve books on artillery that he considered most necessary for study. It has most remarkable omissions.

Leonhard Stürm, in the "Vade Mecum architectonicum" (Amsterdam, 1700, 8°), gives a list of books on fortification, in alphabetical order, under author's names, with short titles, place of printing and date, but not editions.

In 1738 appeared the first English list.<sup>2</sup> It was added by William Horneck to his translation of Bernard's "Nouvelle manière de fortifier les places" (London, 1738, 4°), under the heading, "An account of the rise and progress of Fortification from its Infancy to this June, and of the most noted Engineers who have wrote on that subject."

Next came Loen's "Bibliothèque Militaire" (Frankfort, 1743, 8°), in two parts, historical and technical. The latter (pp. 125-167) is in eighteen sections, each subdivided according to language.

The first Spanish military bibliography to be printed was Garcia de la Huerta's "Biblioteca Militar" (Madrid, 1760, 8°). Huerta, however, seems only to have published a manuscript which he found in the Biblioteca Nacional in Madrid, while librarian there.

F. von Nicolai, in 1765, issued the first number of "Nachrichten von alten und neuen Kriegs-Büchern" (Stuttgart, 8°); it

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted, Paris, 1707 (La seconde Ed.), La Haye, 1741 (La quatrième Ed.), and Paris, 1745, 4°. A pirated ed. of Amsterdam, 1702, 4°.

<sup>2</sup> Doisy. I have not seen the work.

was to have been in six parts, but the others were never printed.<sup>1</sup> The first part contains a list of writers on tactics, ancient and modern, with brief notices of some of them; short titles, and, in some cases, editions are given. The plan is far more extensive than Loen's, and it is to be regretted that the other parts were not published.

Not a bibliography, strictly speaking, is the admirable "Discurso sobre los illustres autores e inventores de artilleria" (Madrid, 1767, 12°, pp. 144) of Vincente de los Rios. Six authors, Tartaglia, Alaba, Collado, Lechuga, Ufano, and Firrufino, are treated of at length, while other writers on the subject are mentioned briefly.

An attempt at a general military bibliography was made by Conrad Walther in 1783, "Versuch einer vollständigen Militair-Bibliothek" (Dresden, 8°, pp. 376). This catalogue, in sixteen parts, is arranged according to subject, with an index to authors and subjects at the end. Though it is the most complete and best arranged that had so far been printed, on account of the confusion of titles and of the large number of printer's errors, mistakes in names, dates, etc., little dependence can be placed on it.

Hoyer's "Geschichte der Kriegskünste [und Wissenschaften]" (Gottingen, 1797-1800, 8°) is in seven parts. At the end of parts v., vi., and vii. are lists of military books printed between 1651 and 1798, the earlier writers being given in footnotes.<sup>2</sup>

The first Italian military bibliography is Guarnieri's "Breve biblioteca dell' architettura militare" (Milan, 1797 and 1803, 4<sup>os</sup>). This was amplified by Marini in his preface to the splendid reprint of Marchi's "Architettura militare" (Roma, 1810, fol.).

Rumpf's "Allgemeine Literatur der Kriegswissenschaften" (Berlin, 1824, 8°) is the best known of the German bibliographies. It is arranged chronologically according to subject, in sections, and these again split up according to size. Rumpf has based his catalogue on Walther, whose inaccuracies he has transported into his

<sup>1</sup> MS. note in B.M. copy.

<sup>2</sup> Hoyer wrote also: "Litteratür der Kriegswissenschaften und Kriegsgeschichte" (Berlin, 1832, 1840, 8°).

own work, adding countless others thereto. In a word, he is not to be relied upon.

General Mariano Ayala used Guarnieri's work as the basis of his "Bibliografia Militare Italiana" (Turin, 1854, 8°). Of this work, as of Almirante's, one can scarcely speak too highly. Wherever I have had an opportunity of checking descriptions with the books themselves, I have found them almost invariably accurate; and if here and there some evident discrepancy makes it as well to verify a date, it is probably the printer who is in fault. This bibliography, which includes MSS., is divided into seven parts according to subject; the number of each might with advantage have appeared in the margins to facilitate reference.

The "Bibliografía Militar de España" (Madrid, 1876, 8°) of Almirante is founded on the general Spanish bibliography of Antonio Nicolas (Rome, *circa* 1670), and on Huerta's catalogue. Almirante is accurate, and invariably gives his authorities for a book not seen by himself. The titles, with occasional notes, occupy more than nine hundred pages, and it would, perhaps, have been better had he separated the historical works, which take up the greater part of the book, from the technical. He admits, besides, many works that are not Spanish and many that have but a remote connection with the subject, and this, combined with the system of indexing, causes much unnecessary trouble.

I know of no French military bibliography. Brunet has an incomplete list, and Bardin's "Dictionnaire de l'armée" (Paris, 1841, 8°), under the heads, "Auteurs militaires" and "Noms propres," includes writers of all nations.

None of these bibliographers make much account of English works; Stürm has two upon his list, which Loen, coming after him, has taken. Walther catalogues about fifty,<sup>1</sup> and these Hoyer and Rumpf borrow, generally without corrections, adding a few more of their own finding; and as no Englishman has attempted to index them as a whole, the bulk of them remains, except in library catalogues and catalogues of recent books, quite unchronicled.

<sup>1</sup> This number does not include histories, etc.

But, although we have no general bibliography of English military books, we have several catalogues of works in all languages, on special branches, in which they figure; notably, Colonel Lefroy's list of works on Artillery,<sup>1</sup> Wirt Gerrare's "Bibliography of Guns and Shooting",<sup>2</sup> Capt. F. H. Huth's "Works on Horses and Equitation",<sup>3</sup> and Major Elliot's "Cavalry Literature."<sup>4</sup> Lefroy's list has few English books. Elliot's, however, has a section entirely devoted to them, with occasional notes of value to the military student, for whom the catalogue is intended. But the spelling of title-pages, which are rarely given in full, is not closely followed, nor is there any indication as to size or form; while many of the nine hundred works in English and French mentioned are taken from Huth.

In this catalogue I have included only the more important of the historical pieces, such as Hugo's "Siege of Breda", Grimston's "General History of the Netherlands", and Williams's "Wars of the Low Countries", which, though not technical, were too important to be omitted. The Wars of the Netherlands, the Civil Wars in France, and the Thirty Years' War, gave rise to a quantity of literature both in this solid form and in the more ephemeral form of pamphlets. The latter, which help to illustrate the technical writings, are, in many cases, letters written from the seat of war, sometimes dashed off between one engagement and another,

<sup>1</sup> Proc. Roy. Art. Inst., vol. ii., pp. 4-12.

<sup>2</sup> Westminster, 1895, 8°.

<sup>3</sup> London, 1887, 4°.

<sup>4</sup> Calcutta, 1893, 8°. Mr. B. H. Soulsby has in progress a "Catalogue of English Military Books published by the British Government." Vol. I. appeared London, 1894, 8°. The aim and object of catalogues of recent military books have been so fully stated by Major-General Maurice ["War . . . to which is added an Essay on Military Literature, and a list of books", etc. Macmillan & Co., London, 1891, 8°], and by Colonel von Gyzicki ["Ueber Kriegsgeschichte Studien", Berlin, 1881, 8°], that it is unnecessary to add anything upon that head.

and the writers would seem to have been employed by certain printers, John Wolfe in particular in the sixteenth century, and Butter and Bourne in the seventeenth, as war correspondents. Much of the importance of these slight productions lies in the fact that names of persons and details concerning actions are often to be found in them which may be sought for in vain elsewhere.

In the first instance I had intended to include all such histories and pamphlets bearing on military affairs; and finding how large a number of them was issued during the Civil Wars in England—thirty thousand, Oldys says,<sup>1</sup> on various subjects, but many of them, no doubt, relating to the wars in progress—I determined to break off at 1642. I see now that the list might have been better carried up to 1660, the date of the institution of the Standing Army, and of the final merging in it of the feudal militia.

Although the intention of the compilation was originally only to furnish an index of works treating of the art of war as practised by the English people, I soon found that a parasite such as our military literature was in its first period could not be reviewed independently and at the same time efficiently. Therefore I added the contemporary foreign works, arranged like the English in chronological order, but, unlike them, having this order subordinated to a classification according to subject, in order that the student, examining an English book, may see at a glance what was being written abroad, about the same time, on the same branch. This divergence in the plan is rather significant of the difference both in quality and number between native and foreign productions. The former do not lend themselves to subdivision until quite the close of the sixteenth century; with few exceptions they are nothing more than compendiums from some bulky foreign treatise, and, not content to confine himself to one branch, the English writer in one volume travels over the whole ground of the art, filching and plagiarizing without scruple, and without acknowledgment. An exact translation was not to his liking. In the century and a half between the English renderings of Christine de Pisan

<sup>1</sup> "Dissertation upon Pamphlets", London, 1731, 4°.

and de Rohan, I have found less than a score of translations of strictly technical works. Unwilling to forego the honours of authorship, he put together his patchwork with more or less skill, unhesitatingly claiming it on the title-page as his own entirely. Punishment sometimes followed in the shape of criticism from succeeding writers, but as a rule the practice seems to have been considered excusable. For at this period, a widely-diffused knowledge of Italian and Spanish among the class to whom these works were chiefly addressed, men who not only commanded the trained bands at home, but officered the bands of volunteers abroad, rendered mere translation to some extent superfluous. Then, again, what the Englishman wrote of was matter of common knowledge; and as he was usually a soldier whose professional training had been carried out entirely abroad, it would not be surprising if he should have confused the contents of the famous foreign text-books, and the lessons derived directly from them, with his own practical experiences, and have brought out the combination as wholly his own. At any rate, we have nothing so gross as the fraud of de La Treille, who, in 1556, published at Lyons a translation of Zanchi, pretending it was original, and who long continued to receive credit for another man's work.<sup>1</sup> Yet a slight acquaintance with the subject is sufficient to show that, however they might imitate foreign authors, the English writers were considerably behind the times, as is proved also by a comparison of the dates of originals and translations; a book might be in continual use on the continent for a quarter of a century and more, before it was thought necessary to "do it into English." It was not till their fighting days were over, that men found time and inclination to write for the instruction of their countrymen; thus, while the continentals were treating of things as they actually were, Englishmen were treating of things as they had been years before.

It is quite in keeping with all this that, while English writers were borrowing from the Spaniards, Italians, French, and Germans,

<sup>1</sup> Robins classes him with Alghisi, Marchi, Pasino, and Speckle ("New Principles", London, 1742, p. ix).

both by direct translation and by unacknowledged plagiarism, not a single English military book was thought of sufficient importance to be translated into a foreign tongue. The existence, even, of the English books seems to have been overlooked.<sup>1</sup> This was due, no doubt, in great part, not to an entire lack of merit in our writers, but to our isolated position, and also to English being a tongue almost unknown outside its own coasts. But these difficulties were not insuperable; indeed, we find that there was a work on military jurisprudence, Sutcliffe's "Practise, Proceedings and Lawes of Armes", which succeeded in overcoming them, and was studied in the original by the learned, at least, among foreigners.

Clearly then, the attempt to survey the military antiquities and military history of England without close reference to foreign works would be futile; and equally futile would be the study of the military antiquities of the continent, but above all of Italy, without recourse to the early manuscripts. For at first writers—especially Italian writers—on artillery and fortification, unwilling that the secrets of their arts should become public property, did not send their works to the press. In the printed books of the fifteenth century, and the first part of the sixteenth, particularly when the authors are touching on destructive weapons, such a remark as the following is often to be met with: "I could say such and such a thing, but refrain for fear the infidel [the Turks, who in those days hung threateningly over Christendom] should profit by it"; while certain Italians altogether condemned the practise of writing on fortification on the ground that foreigners, if they were left untaught in that art, would be forced to employ Italian engineers.<sup>2</sup> Thus information concerning the germ of these sciences remains locked up in the original manuscripts.

<sup>1</sup> Malthus and Davelourt, the only English-speaking military writers of this period entered in the foreign catalogues up to Walther's time, published their works in French.

<sup>2</sup> Promis, "Dell' arte dell' ingenere e dell' artigliere in Italia" (Torino, 1841, fol., p. 4); a fine work. Promis is the great authority on Italian military manuscripts, which have been fully catalogued in this work.



Besides the list of contemporary foreign works I have included one of the ancient technical writers, in chronological order, with notes. Although the writings of the latter are now of more service to the military historian than to the soldier, yet, as regards strategy, some of their teaching is still to be found in our text-books. It is in tactics that the great changes have taken place, and in that branch, therefore, there is little, perhaps, to be learnt from them. But it was not so during the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, or even in the seventeenth, up to the time of Gustavus Adolphus; who started a new system, and won his battles by movements entirely opposed to the ponderous and slow methods of handling troops handed down from ancient and from feudal days.

The editing and printing of these MSS., in the first instance, were carried on almost entirely abroad. The sole Englishman to put his hand to one of them was Sir John Cheke, who translated Leo's "Tactics" into Latin; and he was forced to send it to Basle to be printed, his own countrymen not being competent to the task. There are three editions of the work: Basle, 1554, 16°; Basle, 1595, 16°; and Leyden, 1612, 4°. Of the twenty-nine authors in the list whose treatises, or parts of them, are extant, the first to be sent to the press was Vegetius (1475), while the last was only recently published (1898); but with three exceptions all were in print by 1693. Ælian, Modestus, Frontinus, and Vegetius were often combined in one volume; the British Museum has eleven such collected editions, all issued between 1487 and 1670. Vitruvius was brought out in 1486; seven others, Xenophon, Orbicius, Apsyrus, Leo, Constantine, Polyænus, and Polybius appeared during the sixteenth century.<sup>1</sup> Hyginus, Æneas, and Hero the Elder followed between 1607 and 1616; Arrian and Maurice together in 1664. The fragments of Athenæus, Apollodorus, Philo, Bito,

<sup>1</sup> A Latin translation of Hero the Younger appeared in 1572.



and Julius Africanus, the Greek text of Hero the Younger, and another treatise of Hero the Elder, were first printed by Thévenot, sub-librarian of Louis XIV., in 1693, under the title, "Veterum Mathematicorum Opera", with Latin translations to all but the fifth and sixth. Thévenot used a MS. which contained also Ælian's "Tactics", Onosander's "Stratagems", and part of Maurice's "Stratagems." But his edition, which has not only become excessively rare, but is also obscure and inaccurate, is superseded by the "Poliorcétique des Grecs" of Wescher. The most important source of M. Wescher's edition is the tenth century MS., brought from Mount Athos in 1843 by Minoides Minas, comprising a collection of technical writings on the defence of places; namely, the treatises of Athenæus, Bito, Hero the Elder, Apollodorus, and Hero the Younger; to which are added sixteen extracts from the historians, Polybius and Dionysius, relative to famous sieges. It is supposed that the collection is a compilation made in Constantinople about the ninth or tenth century, probably by command of the reigning emperor. The discovery of this MS. enabled Wescher to fill up the gaps in the edition of Thévenot, and, with the help of other MSS. in various libraries of Europe, to make such substantial alterations as to render the readings in many cases entirely different.

There are few English translations of the Greek and Latin technical writers.<sup>1</sup> But, by 1632, Philemon Holland had translated twelve or thirteen of the histories. Until his time the rendering was made, almost without exception, through the French or Italian versions.

Of the technical writers of antiquity, the only one studied during the middle ages was Vegetius; and he was translated into French by de Meung in 1284. After the invention of printing, when other MSS. of the same class were disinterred, Frontinus, Modestus, and Ælian came to the fore, but none of them ever attained to equal popularity.

<sup>1</sup> There is a German translation of all Greek and Latin works on tactics, by Frankenthorn and Mannheim, 1779, 4°.

After Hero the Younger and Nicephorus Phocas there is a gap in military literature of over three centuries. The connecting link between antiquity and modern times is Colonna's "De Regimine Principum", composed in Latin in 1285, and translated into Italian in 1288. The latter part treats of manœuvring, the attack and defence of places, etc., so that he divides with de Meung the honour of being the first modern author to treat of military matters. But there is no trace of a new system to be found in the treatise; it is taken entirely from Vegetius, from whom, as well as from Polybius, Frontinus, Modestus, and Ælian, are compiled all the early books on tactics. They were written, moreover, not by soldiers, but by scholars, such as Robert Valtur; who, however, as Promis puts it, "had this advantage over men of the sword, that, versed in the history of the Greeks and Romans, they had, in theory, a far deeper acquaintance with the laws of discipline and strategy than had those Captains to whom war was not a branch of learning, but a profession."<sup>1</sup> Indeed, the title, "De re militari", so frequent during the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, sufficiently indicates how fully the ideas of the time had reverted to the ancient teaching. The first hint of change, so far as tactics are concerned, comes in with Macchiavelli, whose most worthy successors in this branch are Du Bellay (or rather de Fourquevaux) and de La Noue.

On mediæval machines of war the earliest authority is Robert Valtur. Paolo Santini may be said to be the first writer on artillery; his MS., which dates from the year 1450, containing drawings of ordnance, powder mines, and receipts for fire-balls and hollow balls filled with powder; while Lampo Birago is the second. The MS. of the latter, which was written in 1454, is the earliest known treatise exclusively on artillery, and contains an

<sup>1</sup> P. 35. By the word "discipline" was formerly understood training or skill in military affairs generally; military skill and experience; the art of war; drill.—See Murray's *Dict.*

interesting comparison between the crossbow and the hand-gun.<sup>1</sup> Like Santini's, it has never been printed. In 1452 Leonardo Da Vinci was born, and with him begins the true modern science of artillery. It is difficult to justly appreciate "the great pioneer of modern thought." Until recently, his works have been shut up in the original MSS., and, although these have now been edited, the suggestions and sketches relating to military affairs scattered through them have never been brought together. The range of his knowledge was wide beyond his time; while his contemporaries were stumbling in the old worn tracks, he had entered on the new paths. Half a century before Tartaglia he wrote on the flight of projectiles; in the theory of gunnery he was a hundred years in advance of his time.<sup>2</sup> And yet it is improbable that his manuscripts were ever in circulation, and the extent of his influence cannot be determined. In the Atlantic MS. alone are two hundred and seventy-five designs; the greater number corresponding exactly to what he offered to do for Lodovico il Moro in the way of engines of war, fortifications, etc.<sup>3</sup> One of them represents a mortar, and it may be that he was the inventor of this piece of artillery, or, at least, that he endeavoured to improve it.<sup>4</sup> He died in 1519. In the theory of gunnery the immediate successor of Da Vinci was Tartaglia, and of Tartaglia, the almost forgotten Spaniard, Alaba, whose tables, though they are very far from giving the true ranges of a projectile, are, nevertheless, better than any that could be formed on the principles of the Italian mathematician.<sup>5</sup> He, in his turn, gave place to Galileo, who was the third mathematician of note to write on the flight of projectiles, and the first to thoroughly take into account the resistance of the air. Between the printing of Tartaglia's "Nova Scientia" in 1537 and the establishment of

<sup>1</sup> Promis. Santini, in 1452, uses the same arguments in favour of the bow as Smythe uses in 1590.

<sup>2</sup> Capt. H. J. W. Jervis, "Our Engines of War", London, 1859, 8°, p. 45.

<sup>3</sup> Promis. The letter was written about 1483.

<sup>4</sup> Ayala.

<sup>5</sup> Vincente de los Rios, "Discurso sobre los illustres autores e inventores de artilleria", Madrid, 1767, 8°, p. 26.

the doctrine of Galileo, says Robins,<sup>1</sup> like the rest, ignoring Alaba, “many theories of the motions of military projectiles, and many tables of their comparative ranges at different elevations, were published; all of them egregiously fallacious and utterly irreconcilable with the motions of those bodies, although some of them were the labours of such who had spent the greatest part of their lives in employments relating to the Artillery. Such were the tables of Ufano, Galeus, of Ulrick, etc., taken notice of by Blondel.”<sup>2</sup> On reading Galileo’s treatise on the theory of projectiles, Evangelista Torricelli<sup>3</sup> developed many of the mechanical principles as first set forth by him; but it remained for Robins to supply what these two writers knew to be still wanting in their theories.<sup>4</sup>

There has been some argument as to who was the first to write on modern fortification. The Spaniards claim the honour for Escriva; but as the question turns on a lost MS., it is a difficult one to resolve; at all events, if not before Dürer, Escriva wrote at the same time.<sup>5</sup> But if, as Marini<sup>6</sup> believes, Macchiavelli, in the MS. entitled “Relazione d’una visita fatta per Fortificare Firenze” (*anno* 1526),<sup>7</sup> means by “torri” what we call “bastions,” the honour rests with him. Another remarkable MS. on the subject is Giangiacomo Leonardi’s, which was written about a quarter of a century after Macchiavelli’s, but, unlike his, was never published, however tardily. Leonardi is commended by Lanteri, and Promis calls him “one of those extraordinary men of whom Italy during the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries was so full.” Renowned in his own time, since his death he has been almost entirely forgotten.

<sup>1</sup> Benjamin Robins, F.R.S., “New Principles of Gunnery”, London, 1742, 8°, p. xlii.

<sup>2</sup> “L’Art de jeter les Bombes”, La Haye, 1685, 12°, bk. ii.

<sup>3</sup> In his work entitled “De motu gravium naturalitür descendentium et projectorum”, Florence, 1644, 4°.

<sup>4</sup> Wilson’s Preface to the 1805 ed. of Robins’s “Gunnery”, p. xxx.

<sup>5</sup> Almirante, “Bibliografia Militar”, p. 269.

<sup>6</sup> Introduction to Marchi’s “Architettura Militare”, Rome, 1810, fol., vol. i., p. 59.

<sup>7</sup> Not printed till 1782.

Of Italian printed works exclusively on fortification, the first was Zanchi's; while the French usually place earliest in the list of their writers on this branch Errard de Bar-le-duc; and although Promis states that he knows of one or two Frenchmen who wrote ten years before the latter, unfortunately he does not give their names. Towards the end of the sixteenth century there appeared many celebrated writers on the subject, Alghisi, Marchi, Aurelio di Pasino, and, above all, Daniel Speckle, "who was one of the greatest geniuses who has applied to this art."<sup>1</sup> The new military architecture was introduced into England by Pennacchi.<sup>2</sup>

The works on equitation and the veterinary art included here do not by any means represent the number printed. Though most of them were written with a view to the training and care of war horses, those only are entered which have parts, or chapters, written expressly to that end. In the same way, only the medical works which apply to the treatment of gunshot wounds are given.

I have made the addition of books on the laws of honour and single combat. They represent that spirit of chivalry which up to the close of the sixteenth century still retained vitality enough to overleap on occasion all strategical considerations.<sup>3</sup> In consequence of the great number of works more or less remotely connected with this subject, I have been compelled to some severity in rejecting those that did not keep strictly to the point. For example, Mutio's "Gentilhuomo", though on the laws of honour, only mentions single combat incidentally; his "Duello" is what the title implies—a treatise on the laws and usages of duelling. The first I rejected, the second include. There was another difficulty. Military law had no existence in the Middle Ages. The chivalric code, supplemented by temporary ordinances promulgated by individual commanders, took its place. Hence the associating of the two subjects by early writers, and the inexpediency of

<sup>1</sup> Robins, "New Principles", p. ix., ed. 1742.

<sup>2</sup> Promis.

<sup>3</sup> For a remarkable instance, see pamphlet entitled: "Journal . . . of the late service in Britaigne . . . under . . . Sir John Norreis", London, 1591, 4° (in Brit. Mus.).

grouping works on them except in one class. By the time they were entirely separated chivalry itself was no more.

And now as to the arrangement of this catalogue.

I have thought it inadvisable to hinge that on the accident of an author's name or initial. Placed in the chronological order, the title-pages alone form a military history in miniature. In reading through them as they occur here, we trace the descent of one book from another, we watch the military art at perhaps the most interesting phase of its development, when, unwilling to cut itself adrift from theories and practices consecrated by the conformity of wellnigh two thousand years, but forced on by the exigencies of the recently-invented artillery, it was painfully endeavouring to adapt itself to a new order which was to lead, step by step, to the system of the present day. Ranged among its contemporaries, "the most worthless book of a bygone age," says De Morgan,<sup>1</sup> "is a record worthy of preservation. Like a telescopic star, its obscurity may render it unavailable for most purposes, but it serves, in hands which know how to use it, to determine the places of more important bodies." The chronological order must be preferred, especially where it is a question of the value of a work and its influence, when it must be weighed against others of its own time, not against those of a later and more advanced stage. Though, for a view of the state of the theory and practice of artillery during the sixteenth century, the student would go to Firrufino rather than to Tartaglia, he would not, therefore, rank the intelligent summary of the one above the original treatise of the other, for all its fallacies.

One book, Vere's "Commentaries", written before 1642, but printed after that date, is placed in its chronological order at the end; circulating, if at all, in manuscript only, it would have had no appreciable influence when first written, and its value would, therefore, never have been other than historical.

<sup>1</sup> "Arithmetical Books", London, 1847, p. ii.

The English books have been treated more fully than the foreign books in the following respects :

1. To insure accuracy, the date is given in words, after the example of De Morgan ("Arithmetical Books"). It thus occurs in some cases three times ; before the title, in the imprint, and in the colophon.

2. *Title-pages* are given in full, with upright strokes to mark the turning of a line.

3. *Running headlines* are given as a means of identification if a title-page be missing ; besides, on account of the length of many early title-pages, it becomes necessary to adopt some fixed short title by which a work may be known, and, as a rule, it is best to take that chosen by the author. To the careless practice of making up short titles for oneself may be attributed the chronicling of one book under several titles. Amongst bibliographers, Rumpf is a great sinner in this respect.

4. The length of the *Preface* is stated. This is often an epitome of the whole book, containing many interesting details concerning the author and his work.

5. The name of the person to whom the Epistle Dedicatory is addressed is given.<sup>1</sup> "It is the custome," says Philip Jones, "or rather by custome the habite in men of industry to comēde their labours to persons of countenance and judgement, and for the most part to such as by their owne experience are able to speak of that argument, which the worke presented to them doth principally prosecute." This is certainly true of military writers. The patron, too, often bore the cost of producing a work.

In the first part the Signatures are given to all editions, in the second to one only. While the pagination of these books from being frequently faulty is not to be relied upon, the signatures, as the sets of letters and signs are termed which are printed at the bottom margin of a page to distinguish the sheets, afford a quick and sure means of ascertaining the number of the leaves without

<sup>1</sup> Ep. Ded. to his translation of Meier's "Instructions for Travellers." See No. 44.



counting them one by one. It is only necessary to multiply the number of sets by the number of leaves allotted to each, remembering that no more than twenty-three letters go to an alphabet. Thus \*, \*\*, in 2<sup>a</sup>, A-CCC in 4<sup>a</sup>, will give two complete alphabets and three odd letters, besides two signs; in other words, forty-nine sheets of four leaves each, and two of two leaves—in all, two hundred. Many of the foreign books, and especially of the Italian, are supplied at the end with registers of the signatures, a convenience which I have not remarked in any of the English books consulted.

The form of a book is given throughout according to the number of leaves to a sheet. As a rule, leaves having the same signature are taken to belong to the same sheet; but sometimes the wire-lines, combined with the shape and size, show that half-sheets have been used, or, and this is common in folios, that two or more sheets have been laid one upon another, or quired, and then folded, and the whole printed under one signature. A sheet folded once, with the wire-lines perpendicular, forms a folio; folded twice, with the wire-lines horizontal, it forms a quarto; and three times, with the wire-lines restored to the perpendicular, an octavo.

The terms *in 2'*, *in 4'*, etc., denote the number of leaves allotted to each signature. It is to be remarked that in the registers affixed to Italian books the printers sometimes use the corresponding terms, *duerni*, *quaderni*, etc., when, according to this explanation, they should say *quaderni*, *ottavi*, and so on. In these cases they are counting by double leaves, and not by single; starting from the folio as being composed of sheets folded once, giving one double leaf to a signature, the quarto is described as having two such leaves, the octavo, four. The folio of three sheets quired, giving as many double leaves to a signature, is said to be in threes (*terni*).

The abbreviations B.M., Bod., R.U.S.I., etc., denote the libraries in which copies are to be found. The British Museum is rich in early military literature. Of the English books mentioned in this catalogue, it has all but about twenty, most of the Italian, and fewer, though still a large number, of the Spanish. Of the

French I cannot speak, as there is no bibliography of these, and search through the General Catalogue of nearly nine hundred volumes was too great a task to be attempted. The authority for the inclusion of a book not seen by myself is always given.

The collector of these military works will in course of time become possessed of some fine specimens of typography, adorned with many beautiful engravings, and furnished with a vast store of interesting and valuable matter. For their rarity, the evidence of the bibliographers shows it to be unquestionable. There seem to be special reasons for this scarcity. In the first place, the demand was small, and few copies were printed. We know that the pay of the military man did not always find its way to his pocket, and where it did, it was not so liberal that he could afford to spend it on books so costly as these were; and thus a single copy might have much hard service laid upon it, and would be passed from hand to hand till worn out. Many other copies doubtless perished in the accidents inseparable from "the wandering, unquiet life of a soldier," a risk much increased in the case of Englishmen, who, seeing no service but on the continent, had to carry their text-books across the seas with them, whence they were probably never brought back. Again, on the appearance of a new work, as the soldier would be unable to carry a library about with him, the old technical treatise would be cast aside and lost. In this connection, Marini remarks that the scarcity of Italian works may also be accounted for on the supposition that foreign plagiarists, when they could lay hands on a copy, tore it up to hide their thefts.

To conclude, I may observe that it is as well not always to trust to the text fulfilling what is predicated of it on the title-page; as Doisy<sup>1</sup> remarks: "One author will boldly announce that his method of fortification is the best of all, although he may be in

<sup>1</sup> "Essai de Bib. Mil.", p. 9.

complete ignorance of the first elements of attack and defence; another professes to publish 'very curious' bits of information, as he phrases it, which are in reality merely trivial; a third adorns his ill-arranged compilation with the title of 'discoveries,' 'new methods,' etc.;" such claims having far less justification than Aconzio's<sup>1</sup> and Zanchi's, when they claim to be the first to write on fortification. Other titles, again, give not the slightest clue to the text, a remark which applies with special force to Barnaby Rich's "Farewell to Militarie Profession",<sup>2</sup> a collection of short stories translated from the Italian; to the "Specchio di Guerra"<sup>3</sup> of Francesco Panigarola, Bishop of Asti, a religious treatise; and to the "Bibliotheca Militum",<sup>4</sup> a satire against the Puritan army. However, they are, as a rule, sufficiently accurate to make an analysis of the contents unnecessary.

M. J. D. COCKLE.

July, 1900.

The compiler wishes to take this opportunity of thanking the Officers of the British Museum for the facilities accorded him in compiling this bibliography; the access granted to the Fourth Copies was of the greatest service. Both the compiler and the editor join in acknowledging the unfailing attention and courtesy received from the attendants.

<sup>1</sup> See Promis, p. 91.

<sup>2</sup> London, 1581 and 1606, 4<sup>os</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Bergamo, 1595, 4<sup>o</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> London. Sixteen-fifty-nine. "Bibliotheca Militum: or the Souldiers Publick Library. Lately erected for the Benefit of all that love the Good Old Cause, at Wallingford House, and already furnished with diverse excellent Treatises." 4<sup>o</sup>. Six pages. Reprinted in the "Harleian Miscellany," vol. vii., p. 334, from which the above title is taken. I have seen it described as a catalogue of military books.

Faint, illegible text at the top of the page, possibly a header or introductory paragraph.

1871

Second block of faint, illegible text, possibly a list or detailed notes.

Third block of faint, illegible text, possibly a concluding paragraph or signature area.



## LIST OF CATALOGUES CONSULTED.

The British Museum General Catalogue of Printed Books.

Catalogue of the Books in the Library of the British Museum printed in England, Scotland, and Ireland . . . to the year 1640. By George Bullen. London, 1884, 3 vols., 8°.

Bibliografía Militar de España. By José Almirante. Madrid, 1876, fol.

Bibliografia Militare Italiana antica e moderna. By Mariano d'Ayala. Torino, 1854, 8°.

A Transcript of the Registers of the Company of Stationers of London, 1554-1640. By Edward Arber. London, 1875-1894, 5 vols., fol.

Typographical Antiquities. Begun by Joseph Ames. Augmented by William Herbert. London, 1785, 3 vols., fol.

Typographical Antiquities. Begun by J. Ames. Augmented by W. Herbert. Enlarged by Thomas Dibdin. London, 1810, 5 vols., fol.

Handbook to the Popular, Poetical and Dramatic Literature of Great Britain. By W. Carew Hazlitt. London, 1867, 8°.

Collections and Notes. London, 1876, 8°. Bibliographical Collections and Notes. By W. Carew Hazlitt. London, 1882, 1887, 1889, and 1892. 4 vols. 8°.

Index Catalogue of the Library of the Surgeon-General's Office, U.S. Army. Washington, 1880-98, 20 vols., 8°.

Biblioteca dell' Eloquenza Italiana. By G. Fontanini. Edited, with Notes, by A. Zeno. Venezia, 1753, 4°.

Bibliografia Generale della Scherma. By Jacopo Gelli. Firenze, 1890, 8°.

Manuel du Libraire. By J. C. Brunet. Paris, 1860, 8 vols., 8°.

Complete Bibliography of the Art of Fence. By C. A. Thimm. London, 1890, 12°.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| Bod.            | Bodleian Library.                              |
| Bk.             | Book.  |
| B.M.            | British Museum.                                |
| B.M.C.          | British Museum Catalogue.                      |
| Chap.           | Chapter.                                       |
| Cts.            | Contents, Table of.                            |
| Col.            | Colophon.                                      |
| Ded.            | Epistle Dedicatory.                            |
| Ed., Eds.       | Edition. Another Edition. Other Editions.      |
| Err.            | Errata.  |
| f., ff.         | Leaf. Leaves.                                  |
| Fr.             | French.  |
| Ger.            | German.  |
| Ill., Ills.     | Illustration. Illustrations.                   |
| Ital.           | Italian.                                       |
| Ll. to p.       | Lines to a page.                               |
| Nums.           | Numerals.                                      |
| Orig.           | Original.                                      |
| p., pp.         | Page. Pages.                                   |
| Pref.           | Preface.                                       |
| Pt., Pts.       | Part. Parts.                                   |
| R.H.            | Running Headlines.                             |
| Roy. Art. Inst. | Library of the Royal Artillery Institute.      |
| R.U.S.I.        | Library of the Royal United Service Institute. |
| Sigs.           | Signatures.                                    |
| Span.           | Spanish.                                       |
| Tp.             | Title-page.                                    |
| Trans.          | Translation.                                   |
| V.              | Vide.  |
| W.O.            | Library of the War Office.                     |

I shall be most grateful for corrections, and for notices of books and editions omitted.

## PLATES.

Frontispiece. From the "Arte of Warre" of Macchiavelli, London, 1560, 1573, and 1588.

- I. Portrait. From the "Büchsenmeisterey" of Furtenbach, Augspurg, 1643.
- II. Facsimile of the first page of text of the "Book of fayttes of armes" of C. de Pisan, Westminster, 1489. *To face page 1.*
- III. Maps of the Battle of Musselburgh or Pinkie Cleugh. From Patten's "Expedicion into Scotlāde", London, 1548. These are the earliest military maps to be found in any English book. *Between page 8 and page 9.*
- IV. Title-page from the "Double-Armed Man" of Neade, London, 1625. *To face page 85.*
- V. From the German-French translations of the "Artilleria" of Ufano, Frankfurt, 1614. Engraved by J. T. de Bry. This plate reappears in the "Gunner" of Norton, London, 1628. *To face page 91.*
- VI. Portrait of Giorgio Basta, Count d'Hust. From the memoir annexed to the treatise, "Delle Macchine" of Tarducci. *To face page 97.*
- VII. Portrait of Barriffe. From the "Military Discipline", second edition, London, 1639. *To face page 103.*
- VIII. The Pike Exercise. From the "Principles of the Art Military" of Hexham, London, 1637. *To face page 107.*
- IX. The Musket Exercise. From the "Directions for Musters", London, 1638. *To face page 113.*
- X. Portrait of Sir Francis Vere. From the "Commentaries", London, 1657. *To face page 129.*
- XI. Two Bombards. From the treatise, "De re militari" of Valtur, Veronæ, 1483. These cuts also appear in a larger size in the edition of 1472. *To face page 133.*

- XII. From the "Artilleria" of Ufano, translated and illustrated by J. T. de Bry, Frankfurt, 1614. *To face page 175.*
- XIII. From "Der furnembsten, notwendigsten der gantzen Architectur" of Ryff, Nürnberg, 1547. *To face page 197.*

## TAILPIECES.

- I. The Device of John Kingston, printer. From Macchiavelli, London, 1560. *Page 129.*
- II. From the "Büchsenmeisterey" of Brechtel, Nürnberg, 1591 and 1599. *Page 246.*



## ANCIENT TECHNICAL WRITERS.

XENOPHON (b. *circa* B.C. 431) wrote two technical treatises, one on the "Hipparch", or Athenian General of Cavalry, which is the most important existing source of information on the tactics of the Attic cavalry of that time; the other on "Horsemanship", containing descriptions of the barbing, training, and treatment of horses, and of the arms and armour of the troopers. Much may be learned, besides, of the great principles of warfare, and of the organization and tactics of the Persians and Greeks from the "Cyrupædia", the "Anabasis", and "The Polity of the Lacedæmonians", which was written between B.C. 387 and 378.<sup>1</sup> The last contains information concerning the encampments, evolutions, etc., of the Lacedæmonians. There are English translations of the "Cyrupædia" by Philemon Holland, London, 1632, fol., and one of the "Anabasis" by John Bingham, London, 1623, fol. The two technical treatises were printed with the complete works, Florence, 1516, fol.

ÆNEAS, called Tacticus (*circa* B.C. 367-366), is generally considered the earliest technical military writer of whom we have any knowledge. From references in Polybius and Suidas, we learn that he lived at the commencement of the reign of Philip of Macedon, father of Alexander the Great. All that now remains of his work is one fragment, "A treatise on the defence of places", which, according to Ælian, has come down to us in a much abridged form. It was printed (with a Latin translation) in Casaubon's edition of Polybius, Paris, 1609, fol., and afterwards at Frankfort, 1610 and 1619, and Amsterdam, 1670, 8<sup>os</sup>; and with Ælian, Frontinus, and Vegetius, Leyden, 1644, 8<sup>o</sup>; also in Schryver's "Veteres de re militari scriptores", Vesaliæ, 1670, 8<sup>o</sup>. French translations by Beausobre, Amsterdam, 1757, 4<sup>o</sup>, and by d'Aiglun, with notes, Besançon, 1871-72, 4<sup>o</sup>. German translation

<sup>1</sup> H. G. Dakyn's "The Works of Xenophon", London, 1897, 8<sup>o</sup>, 4 vols.

by Koechly and Rüston, Leipsig, 1853, 8°. <sup>1</sup> Æneas is also said to have written on signalling by fire, or beacons (Polybius, bk. x.), "On Stratagems" (Suidas, p. 38, ed. Bernhardt), and he himself speaks of his books "On Castrametation", "On preparations of War", and "On Finances" (chaps. xxi., viii., xl., and xiv.).

PYRRHUS (b. *circa* B.C. 316, d. 272), one of the greatest generals of antiquity, was the author of works on tactics which were held in the greatest estimation by the ancients, and used by the Romans as text-books. They are praised by Cicero, and are mentioned by Ælian ("Tactics", chap. i.). They were in existence as late as the time of Plutarch (*circa* A.D. 30-117), but nothing now remains of them.

BITO (*circa* B.C. 300-200), a Greek mathematician, of whom little is known, is mentioned by Hesychius, Hero the Younger, and Ælian, who calls him Bion. His only remaining treatise is dedicated to Attila, King of Pergamos, and describes the stone-throwing machine of Charon of Magnesia, the moving tower of Damius of Colophon, the balista of Posidonius of Miletus, and another weapon for throwing missiles, a kind of arbalist. Printed in Thévenot's collection, Paris, 1693, fol., p. 105, etc., and in Wescher's "Poliorcétique", Paris, 1867, fol.

POLYBIUS (b. *circa* B.C. 214-204) wrote a treatise on tactics, two fragments of which are included in Book VI. of his history. For editions of these apart from the history, see No. 127. Both Arrian and Ælian mention the complete treatise in its separate form.

ATHENÆUS (*circa* B.C. 200), a Greek mathematician and contemporary of Archimedes, dedicated his treatise "On machines of war" to Marcellus. Printed by Thévenot; and also by Wescher, with the addition of many long passages hitherto unpublished.

CTESIBIUS (*circa* B.C. 200-150). Vitruvius refers to various books of Ctesibius, but none have come down to us. However, the treatise "Ctesibii Belopoica" of Hero the Elder probably incorporates a work of Ctesibius. According to Philo of Byzantium, a contemporary, Ctesibius was the inventor of an air-gun, closely resembling in principle the air-gun of the present day.

PHILO of Byzantium (*circa* B.C. 146). All but Books IV. and V. of his "Μηχανικὴ Σύνταξις" are lost. Book IV. is on the making of darts, balistas, catapults, and other machines, many of which were of his own in-

<sup>1</sup> Recent eds. of the Greek text: Berolini, 1870, 8° (two); Lipsiæ, 1874, 8°. A critical study, by A. Mosbach, Berolini, 1880, 8°.

vention. Printed by Thévenot, but as they are not included in the Minas MS. they are absent from Wescher's "Poliorcétique." Book V. is a treatise on fortification, and the attack and defence of places. A French translation of Book V., with notes, by A. de Rochas d'Aiglun, printed in the "Mémoires de la Société d'Emulation du Doubs", Besançon, 1872, vol. ii.

HYGINUS GROMATICUS (*circa* B.C. 103) introduced a chapter on castrometation into his book on surveying, which was published separately by Schryver, Leyden, 1607, 4°; by Hermann Rabod, Amsterdam, 1660, 4°; and by Grævius, Rome, 1694, fol., vol. x., p. 599.<sup>1</sup>

VITRUVIUS, POLLIO (b. *circa* B.C. 80), was personally known to Julius Cæsar, after whose death he was befriended by Augustus, on account of the services he had rendered the state as a military engineer. Vitruvius commences his account of machines of war in Bk. X., chap. xv., of the "Architectura" with a description of scorpions and catapults; the contents of the other chapters are as follows: Chap. xvi. Of the balistæ. Chap. xvii. Of the proportions of the balistæ. Chap. xviii. On the preparation of the balistæ and catapultæ. Chap. xix. Of machines for attack, and their invention. Chap. xx. Of the testudo, prepared for filling ditches. Chap. xxi. Of other kinds of testudi. Chap. xxii. Of things relative to defence. First printed Rome, 1486.<sup>2</sup>

ONOSANDER, the Platonic (*circa* 1st cent. after Christ), wrote on the "Office of the General." See No. 14.

APOLLODORUS of Damascus (b. *circa* A.D. 60), a celebrated architect and military engineer, dedicated his treatise on "Machines of War" to the Emperor Trajan. Published by Thévenot and by Wescher.

FRONTINUS, SEXTUS JULIUS (*circa* A.D. 40-103), besides the "Stratagemms" (see No. 3), wrote another work on the military art, mentioned by himself and also by Ælian (chap. i.), which is now lost.

ÆLIANUS TACTICUS (*circa* A.D. 100). See No. 88, and for editions with Vegetius, Frontinus, and Modestus, see No. 3.

HADRIAN (A.D. 76-138). Vegetius speaks of the "Constitutiones", or laws relating to military affairs, of Hadrian, placing them side by side with those of Augustus and Trajan, but it is now generally admitted that these "Constitutiones" are not the work of Hadrian.<sup>3</sup> Tillemont<sup>4</sup> remarks that

<sup>1</sup> An ed. of Leipsig, 1879, 8°. German translation, *ib.*, 1887, 8°. <sup>2</sup> Brunet.

<sup>3</sup> M. Georges Doublet, "Notes sur les œuvres littéraires de l'Empereur Hadrien", Toulouse, 1893, 8°.

<sup>4</sup> "Histoires des Empereurs", Paris, 1700-38, 4°, art. xviii.

in his time it was thought that Hadrian wrote the book on "Tactics", which, having for a long time remained unknown, was found in the reign of Anastasius I. (A.D. 430-518), and published by Maurice or Orbicius, who added something thereto.

ARRIAN (b. *circa* A.D. 90), a Greek historian and philosopher, was the author of the "Τεχνη Τακτικη", an abridged account of the military art as practised among the Greeks of his own day. It is one of the most trustworthy sources of information concerning ancient tactics that we possess. Guischartd highly commends this fragment, which was published for the first time by Scheffer, Upsaliæ, 1664, 8°, with Greek and Latin texts, and with notes. According to Brunet, this edition was reissued at Amsterdam, 1750, with a new title-page. There is an Italian translation by Racchetti, Milano, 1807, 8°, and a French translation by Guischartd<sup>1</sup> ("Mémoires Militaires", 1758, fol.).

HERO THE ELDER (*circa* A.D. 130-200), a Greek mathematician of Alexandria, living at the time of the Antonines, was a disciple of Ctesibius. The treatise put forth by Hero under the title "Ctesibii Belopoica" perhaps incorporates a work of Ctesibius. It was printed, Augsburg, 1616, 4°, by Baldi, with the Latin translation; also in Thévenot's and Wescher's collections, with the treatise entitled "Χειροβαλλιστρας χατασκευη και συμμετρία" ("De constructione et mensura manubalistæ"), which is Hero's own. It has been restored, annotated, and translated into French by Prou and Vincent, Paris, 1862 and 1866.

POLYÆNUS (*circa* A.D. 150) dedicated his "Stratagems of War" to the Emperors M. Aurelius Antoninus and L. Verus. The book, which he calls "a manual of the science of generalship," is illustrated by means of examples taken from the most ancient histories and from those of his own time. His materials were collected from sources many of which are now lost, so that his work is an important one, scanty as the details are. The plan of it is much the same as that of the work by Frontinus. Printed by Casaubon at Lyons, 1589, 16°, in Greek and Latin; by Maasvicius at Leyden, 1690, 8° (of which copies are to be found with the date 1691), with a reprint by Murinna, Berolini, 1756, 8°.<sup>2</sup> But the Preface to the Emperors Antoninus and Verus in the first book had been printed by Gemistus ("De Gestis Græcorum", Basilæ, 1540, 4°; reprinted by Koraes, Paris, 1809). German translation of the whole existing text by Seybold, Frankfort, 1793-94. French transla-

<sup>1</sup> Danish translation by P. F. Suhm, 1749, 4°.

<sup>2</sup> Recent eds. of Leipzig, 1860 and 1887, 8°.

tion: Paris, 1739, 12°. <sup>1</sup> Italian translation by Mutoni, Vinegia, 1552, 8°, and another by Carani of the same place, date, and size. <sup>2</sup> An English translation by R. Shepherd, London, 1793, fol.

MODESTUS (*circa* A.D. 200-300), a Latin author, is known to us by his short, but valuable vocabulary of terms used in the drilling and manœuvring of the phalanx, entitled “*Libellus de vocabularis rei militaris*”, and dedicated to the Emperor Tacitus. Modestus has been accused of having copied from Vegetius, who wrote a century later. First printed edition, undated, Rome [1474?], 4°. Others: Venice, 1474, 4°; Leyden, 1593 and 1612, 4<sup>oa</sup>; Basle, 1595, 12°; the two last, with Cheke’s Latin translation of Leo VI. For editions with Vegetius, Frontinus, and Ælianus, see No. 3.

AFRICANUS, SEXTUS JULIUS (3rd cent. after Christ). Great doubts have been expressed as to his being the author of the work entitled “*Κεῖροι*”, in which some military writings appear amongst others. Thévenot was the first to print the military fragments, which appeared again, Florence, 1746, in a collection made by Meursius. French translation, with notes, by Guischart, Berlin, 1773, fol., and Paris, 1774, 8°.

APSYRTUS, or ABSYRTUS (*circa* A.D. 322), a Greek writer on the veterinary art, according to Suidas accompanied Constantine in his expedition to the Danube, though which Constantine is not stated; but as Apsyrtus is spoken of by Vegetius, it was in all probability Constantine the Great. Only fragments of his treatise remain, which were printed by Ruellius in 1530 (Paris, fol.), and by Grynæus in 1537 (Basle, 4°). There are said to be translations in French, German, and Italian.

VEGETIUS (A.D. 375-392). The most popular of all ancient military writers. See No. 17.

ASCLEPIODOTUS (*circa* A.D. 450), who was a celebrated disciple of Proclus, wrote on tactics. A fragment of the work of Asclepiodotus was printed for the first time in the “*Spicilegium Romanum*” (Rome, 1840, 8°).

ORBICIUS (*circa* A.D. 500). Nothing is known of the private history of this writer, nor of the date of his writing; but a fragment of his military vocabulary, containing some words used in connection with the phalanx, is included in the “*Etymologicum Magnum*” (printed by Aldus, 1524, fol., <sup>3</sup> half a column on f. 77; and Basle, 1522, fol., edited by Curio), a dictionary said to have been drawn up as early as the tenth cent. The short treatise at the end of Onosander’s work is ascribed by some to the Emperor Hadrian,

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted Paris, 1851, 8°.

<sup>2</sup> Reprinted Milano, 1819, 8°.

<sup>3</sup> The first printed edition of the dictionary (Aldus, 1497) did not include this fragment.

by some to Maurice, and by others to one Orbicius, perhaps the compiler of this vocabulary. He must in that case have been living between A.D. 491 and 518, for in the treatise he recommends to Anastasius I. a new invention, in modern terminology, a "chevaux de frise," for enabling infantry to meet an attack by barbarian cavalry. There is a translation by Guischartd of the passage describing the invention ("Mémoires Militaires", La Haye, 1758, fol., pp. 104-106).

ANONYMOUS (*circa* A.D. 527-565). This anonymous Byzantine treatise is in thirty-three chapters. The name of the author is unknown, but from certain remarks in the text we learn that he lived in the reign of Justinian (A.D. 527-565), and that he was the author of another work on the defence of places. "The reader will notice especially in the eighth chapter," says d'Aiglun,<sup>1</sup> "how the military art had declined since the time of Philo; yet this anonymous Byzantine writer has some points of great interest to military engineers. In the remarks on the choice of sites of fortresses and on their strategical and tactical value in the defence of frontiers, he gives the only details that have come down to us on this subject from the technical writers of antiquity." This treatise was commented on for the first time in 1854, by Th.-Henri Martin,<sup>2</sup> in his dissertation on Hero, who has pointed out that it was one of the sources from which Hero the Younger had drawn. There is a German translation and notes, with Greek text, by Koehly and Rüston.<sup>3</sup> Contents: Chap. ii. On guards. Chap. iii. On signalling with torches or beacon fires. Chap. iv. On watch towers. Chaps. v. and vi. On fortification and the defence of places. Chap. xix. On the passage of rivers. Chap. xxix. On the construction and guarding of camps. The other chapters relate to the arming, organization, and manœuvring of troops, and to the conduct of wars in general. First printed by Wescher.

MAURICE, Emperor of the East (b. *circa* A.D. 539), was the author of the "Strategica", in twelve books, arranged as follows: Bk. I. On the division, exercising, arming, enlisting, and punishment of soldiers. Bk. II. On cavalry, their arms, exercising, equipment, etc. Bk. III. On the disposition of the "tagma." Bk. IV. On ambushes. Bk. V. On baggage. Bk. VI. The battle formations of the Scythians, etc. Bk. VII. On the duties of the commander in chief. Bk. VIII. Precautions to be taken prior to a battle. Bk. IX. On invasions. Bk. X. On sieges. Bk. XI. Battle

<sup>1</sup> "Mémoires de la Société d'Emulation" (vol. vi., p. 330).

<sup>2</sup> "Mémoires présentés à l'Académie des Inscriptions", Paris, 1854.

<sup>3</sup> "Griechische Kriegsschriftsteller" (Leipsic, 1853-55, 8°).

formations of the Persians, Turks, etc. Bk. XII. On points appertaining to a battle. LEO VI. may be said to have built up his work on this; he has borrowed the whole of Bk. II. First printed by Scheffer, with Arrian's "Tactics", Upsaliæ, 1664, 8°, Greek and Latin.

LEO VI., Emperor of the East (A.D. 866-912), wrote a famous book on tactics. He has been accused by Guischartd of borrowing from Onosander without acknowledgment,<sup>1</sup> and, by a translator of Vegetius, of copying from Julius Africanus; and there is no denying that he took extensively from the "Strategica" of Maurice.<sup>2</sup> Leo's work is, however, of the greatest value; his explanations, especially concerning battle formations, are well given, and on this point he has supplied us with information to be met with in no other writer. A Latin translation by Sir John Cheke, Basle, 1554, 16°; Basle, 1595, 12°; and Leyden, 1612, 4° (with the Greek text of Meursius), re-issued, *ibid.*, 1613, and reprinted, 1741, fol. Italian translation, by Pigafetta, Venice, 1602, 4°. French translation, by Joly de Maizeroy, Paris, 1771, 8°.<sup>3</sup>

CONSTANTINE VII. (A.D. 915-959), son of Leo VI., is supposed about A.D. 951 to have re-edited one of his father's treatises. His own treatise, entitled "Περὶ Θεμάτων", was printed Leyden, 1588, 8°; Paris, 1609, 8°; and by Banduri, Paris, 1711, and Venice, 1729, fols. All have Latin translations.

HERO THE YOUNGER (*circa* A.D. 950), also called Mechanicus, or of Byzantium, made a compilation on machines of war from the writings of Athenæus, Bito, Hero the Elder, and Apollodorus. It is in two parts, (1) On preparations for a defence, and (2) Examples from history to illustrate the first part, taken from Polybius, Arrian, Josephus, and others. The first part is of particular value, being derived from the lost writings of Æneas and Philo. First printed in a Latin translation by Barozzi, Venice, 1572, 4°; afterwards by Thévenot and by Wescher, and in Harles' edition of Fabricius. Re-edited by T. H. Martin, Paris, 1854. French translation by E. Caillemer ("Proc. Soc. d'Emulation", 1872).

NICEPHORUS PHOCAS, afterwards Emperor of the East (reigning A.D. 963-969), wrote a treatise, "Περὶ Παραδρομῆς Πολέμου" (De Velitatione Bellica), on Outposts and Frontier operations mainly in Asia Minor. Printed for the

<sup>1</sup> "Mémoires Militaires", vol. ii., p. 51.

<sup>2</sup> Maizeroy, "Institutions Militaires de l'Empereur Leon." Pref., p. xlvi.

<sup>3</sup> Another French translation, by Liskenne and Sauvan, Paris, 1851. A German translation, Wien, 1781, 8°. For remarks on Maurice and Leo, see "History of the Art of War", by Charles Oman, London, 1898, 8°, bk. iv., chaps. i.-iii.

first time, Paris, 1819, fol., with a Latin translation ; reprinted, Bonn, 1828, 8°. The important treatise, “Περὶ καταστάσεως ἀπλήκτων”, on the surveying and construction of camps, is also attributed to Nicephorus Phocas. It was only lately found, and published by Charles Graux, with a preface by A. Martin, Paris, 1898, 4°.



## ERRATA.

- Page 16, footnote. For "auteurs latin" read "auteurs latins."
- No. 53. For "*Printed at Caen | by E. A. |*" read "Printed at Caen | by E. A. |"
- No. 84, Collation. For "Aphorismes Lib. 1 [v.]" read "Aphorismes Lib. 1 [—v.]"
- No. 88, Collation. For "with monogram of R. D., the engraver," read "signed R. Mab."
- No. 106, Collation. For "Brydge's" read "Brydges'."
- No. 118, Contents. For "(Paris, 1650, 4°, and 1668, 12°; a 3rd ed. is mentioned by Douce, MS. 266, Bod. Lib.)" read "(Paris, 1650, 4°, and 1668, 12°; a 3rd ed. of Paris, 1681, 8°, is mentioned by Saint Remy and by Douce, MS. 266, Bod. Lib.)"
- No. 125, Contents, line 8. For "all printed by Butter and Bourne" read "all published by Butter and Bourne."
- No. 144, Contents (p. 115). For "The 'Torneo' of Pistofilo" read "The 'Orchesographie' of Tabourot."
- No. 645. For "Rohan, Henri de, Duc de" read "Rohan, Henri, Duc de."
- No. 670. Read in inverted commas after "rarity."
- No. 682. For "Ajello d'Ayello Santo" read "Ajello d' Ajello Santo."
- No. 721. For "Vol. ii., 2 ff., A—4th Q," read "Vol. ii., 2 ff., A—5th Q."
- No. 723 (p. 186). For "Gali" read "Galí."
- No. 785. For "G. D. Jarino" read "G. D. Tarino."
- No. 791. For "with a 6th Bk. added; portrait of Lorini, *et.* 70; same cuts" read "with a 6th Bk. added, portrait of Lorini, *et.* 70, and same cuts."
- No. 798. For "A. de la Ville" read "A. de Ville."
- No. 944. For "C. P." read "G. P."
- Page 247. For "Saint Didier, Henri" read "Saint Didier, Henri de."
- Page 248 (No. 5). Read in inverted commas after "cheval."





Here begynneth the booke of fayttes of armes & of Chyualrye/ And the first chapytre is the prologue/ in which xpyrystyne of pylfe excuseth hir self to haue dar enterpryse to speke of so hye matere as is conteyned in this sayd booke

¶ Capitulum primum

**B**y cause that hardynes is so moche necessaie to entrepryse hye thynges/ which without that shold neu be enpryses That same is couenable to me at this present werke to put it forth without other thyng/ Seen the lypthed of my persone/ which I knowe not digne ne worthy to treat of so hye matere/ ne durst not only thynke what blame hardynes causeth whan she is folyssh/ I thene nothyng moeued by arrogauce in folyssh presumpcion / but admonestred of veray affeccion & good desyre of noble men in thoffyce of armes/ any exported after myne other escriptures passed/ lyke as he that hath to foryn leten down many stroge edyfyces/ is more hardy to charge hym self desyre or to let down a castell or forteresse whan he feleth hym self garnysshed of couenable stufte thereto necessaie/ Thenne to entrepryse to speke in this presēt booke of the right honorable offyce of armes & of Chyualrye/ as wel in thynges which therto ben conuenient/ as in droytes whych thereto be appertenaunt/ lyke as the lalbes & dyuerse auctours declaren it/ to the purpoos/ I haue assēbled the maters & gadred in dyuerse bookes for to produce myne etenciō in this present volume/ But as it apperteyneth this matere to be more executed by fayt of dyligēce & witte/ than by subtiltees of wordes polissed/ and also considered that they that ben excersyng & experte in tharte of chyualrye be not comune ly clerkyes ne instructe in science of langage/ I entende not to treat/ but to the most playn and entendible langage that



## BIBLIOGRAPHY OF MILITARY BOOKS.

### ENGLISH.

i. Fourteen-eighty-nine. Pisan, Christine de.

Commences : " Here begynneth the table of the rubryshys of the | boke of the fayt of armes and of Chyualrye whiche | sayd boke is departyd in to four partyes. | " The postscript commences : " ¶ Thus endeth this boke whiche xp̄yne of pyse [Christine de Pisan] made & dre | we out of the boke named Vegecius de re militari & out of | tharbre of bataylles wyth many other thynges sett in to the | same requisite to Werre & battailles whiche boke beyng in frē | she was delyuered to me Willm Caxton by the most crysten | kyng & redoubted prynce my naturel & souerayn lord kyng | henry the | vij | kyng of englund & of fraūce in his palais of | Westmestre the | xxij | day of Januere the | iiij | yere of his re | gne & desired & wylled me to translate this said boke & reduce | it in to our english & natural tonge | . . . Per Caxton. | "

Black letter. Folio.

*Collation.* No tp., or pag.—30-31 ll. to p.—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, A-S; S6 blank; first two ff. unsigned. For further description see Blades, vol. i.

The copy described has Grenville's note : " This is an original and perfect copy : it came from the library of the Earl of Ferrers at Chartley. The copy in the Roxburgh Library sold for £356." Blades gives twenty as the number of known copies, of which three are in the B.M.

*Copies.* B.M.; Ashburnham.

*Contents.* "L'Art de Chevalerie," as the original is called, was written about 1412, and was first printed in Paris, 1488, fol. [See 503.] Caxton made his translation from a French MS. entrusted to him by Henry VII. (probably the MS. Royal, 15 E. VI., now in the B.M.), which was transcribed before 1453, and, like many MSS. transcribed during her lifetime, has the passage at the end of the prologue, present in the English printed ed., but omitted in the French, in which Christine apologizes for writing of wars and battles. Doubts have been expressed as to whether this really is Christine de Pisan's work, solely, it would seem, on account of her sex. But if she were capable of writing "Le Livre de Paix," why not this military compilation? Scholarship and conversation with eminent soldiers of her time would, in a work of this kind, be a sufficient substitute for personal experience.<sup>1</sup> Many French bibliographers have ascribed the authorship to Jean de Meung, but what the author of the "Romaunt de la Rose" really did was to translate Vegetius' "De re militari" into French in 1284, by command of Jean, Count of Eu, which translation is alluded to by him in the dedication of his translation of Boetius. It is this passage which has misled the bibliographers. But now, since the publication of de Meung's version (Paris, 1897, 8°), there is no longer any excuse for ascribing the other to him. Antedating the Italian translation of Colonna's compilation from the same ancient writer by three years, it is, of course, a work of the greatest interest. It is coloured throughout by the mediæval spirit; the military terminology of the Romans is translated into the chivalric terminology of the Middle Ages. Since there were no equivalents in his language for the Latin words, de Meung simply impressed those used in chivalry, and thus fixed the military vocabulary of Western Europe for two hundred years; and, not content with merely translating, he amplified the text with all sorts of interpolations—comments, personal reflections, historical examples, and explanations of what did not seem quite clear. See Introduction by M. Ulysse Robert, Paris, 1897.

2. [No date.] Anonymous.

[Begin fol. 2 recto.] Heere foloweth the | ordre or Trayne  
of War | re, that a Prynce, or a | heed Captayne, ought | to  
take, that wyll Con- | quere, or assege a place, or kepe or  
defen- | de a place, where he dwteth to be assay | led in his  
owne countree, or to marche | or trauers the countree of his  
enemyes | or to make gwerre gwerreable | .

<sup>1</sup> There is an interesting essay on Christine de Pisan by Thomassy, Paris, 1838, fol.

Black letter. Octavo.

*Collation.* A1 missing.—Woodcut of battle-scene and title below, A2.—Text begins A2<sub>2</sub>.—Col., G4: “¶ Imprynted by me Robert Wyer | dwellynge in | seynt Martyns parysshe at | Charynge | Crosse. | Imprynted for Iohn Gowgh | Cum priuilegio Regali, | Ad imprimendum solum.” | —Wyer’s large device, G4<sub>2</sub>.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-G.—Without preliminary matter, pag. or R.H.

Very rare. Mr. Plomer<sup>1</sup> had not seen a copy. Ames describes one in the collection of Mr. Thomas Martin of Palgrave, Suffolk, of which the first leaf was missing, as in the case of the copy I have examined, which was sold by auction in London, Feb., 1898, for £25 10s. A MS. note places its date at between 1525-30. Robert Wyer is thought to have ceased publishing in 1556.

3. Fifteen-thirty-nine. Frontinus, Sextus Julius.

“§ The Stra- | tegemes, Sleygh- | tes, and policies of warre, | gathered togyther, by | S. Julius Fronti- | nus, and tran- | slated into | En- | glyshe, by Rycharde | Morysine. | ¶ | Anno. M.D.XXXIX. |

Black letter. Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., a1.—Ded. to Henry VIII., a2-6<sub>1</sub>.—Cts., a6<sub>2</sub>-8.—Col.: “Londini in ædibus Thomę Ber- | theleti typis impress. | Cum priuilegio ad imprimen- | dum solum. Anno. M.D.XXXIX.” N8.—R.H.: “Sex. Iul. Front. Liber. . . .”—No pag.—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, a, A-N.—26 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M. (two).

*Contents.* This trans. is from the French version of Paris, 1536, fol. To fill up some blank pages at the end, the printer has added some “general rules of war, taken out of Vegetius.”

The “Stratagems” had been preceded, as Frontinus says himself in his Preface, by another work on the military art, now lost, which Ælian<sup>2</sup> had seen. The work is not so much a treatise on war as a collection of anecdotes, made “in order that readers might have under their hands examples of address and prudence which might be of use to them in planning and carrying on in an emergency similar stratagems.” The three books give instances respectively of what should be done, before, during, and after a battle; they are each subdivided into twelve or thirteen short chapters. The fourth book contains anecdotes illustrating military virtues. At the Renaissance Frontinus was only less a favourite than Vegetius. Besides the numerous Latin



<sup>1</sup> Henry R. Plomer’s “Robert Wyer.” (London, 1897, 4<sup>o</sup>.)

<sup>2</sup> “Tactics,” chap. i.

impressions of his writings (see list below), there are many translations in French, German, and Italian, and, in addition to this, large parts of them were worked into early books relating to military affairs. During the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, the works of Vegetius, Frontinus, Modestus, and Ælian were usually printed together.

The collected eds. are: Romæ, 1487, 4°; Romæ, 1497, 4°; Bonnoniæ, 1495-6, fol.; Bonnoniæ, 1504-5, fol.; Basileæ, 1532, fol.; Basileæ, 1535, 8°; Parisiis, 1553, fol.; Colonia, 1580, 8°, with notes on Vegetius by Modius; Lugduni Batavorum, 1592, 8°, with commentaries on Vegetius by God. Stewechius; *ibid.*, 1607, 4°, containing also the "Castrametation" of Polybius and Hyginus, an anonymous treatise, "De rebus bellicis," and the "Leges Militares" of Ruffus; Vesaliæ, 1670, 8°, containing also Polybius' "Castrametation" and the "Poliorceticus" of Æneas. French trans. from the texts of Budæus and Beroaldus, Paris, 1536, fol.

4. [Fifteen-forty to fifty-five.] Anonymous.

¶ An order / | whych a Prince in | battayll muste ob- | serue,  
and kepe, yf | he entende to sub- | dewe, or passe | thoroughe  
| his ene- | myes lan- | des. |  \*  |

Black letter. Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, enclosed in woodcut.—Col.: "● Imprinted at Londō in saynt | Andrews paryshe besyde | Baynards castell by | Thomas Ray- | nold and Wyl | liam Hyll. |"—No preliminary matter.—R.H.: "A necessary order to be obserued in battaile."—No pag.—22 ll. to p.—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, A-C4.

Published between 1540 and 1555, during which time Reynold was printing.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Contains "rules" to be observed in battle, in besieging or defending places, and in quelling mutiny. Taken from Vegetius.

5. Fifteen-forty-two. Basille, Theodore.

Thenew | pollecye of warre, wherin | is declared not only  
how y<sup>e</sup> | mooste cruell Tyraunt the | great Turke maye be  
ouer | come, but also all other ene | mies of the Christen  
pu- | blique weale, lately de | uised by Theo- | dore Ba- |  
sille. | . . . .

Black letter. Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, enclosed in woodcuts.—Prologue, A2-B6.—Col.: "¶ Imprynted at | London in Botulphe lane at the | sygne of the whyte



Beare, | by Johñ Maylerre | for Johñ Gough. | Anno Dñi. | 1542. | Cum  
priuilegio ad imprimendum solum. | Per Septennium." (L2.)—R.H.: "The  
Polley of Warre."—No pag.—Woodcuts.—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, A-L2.—23 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

Reprinted in 1543 under a new title: "The true defēce | of Peace, wherin  
is | declaredde the cause of all | warres now a dayes, and | how they may be  
pacifi- | ed, called before the Pol- | lecy of warre, | deuysed & lately  
recognised | by Theodore | Basille. | . . ." 29 supplementary pp., with  
nums. to ff. and R.H.: "The true defence. Of Peace."; otherwise the two  
eds. would be hard to tell apart.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* A religious dissertation. A MS. note in this copy states that  
"Theodore Basille" is the name assumed by Thomas Becon, no doubt the  
better to conceal himself in those dangerous times. In 1541 he was in  
trouble on account of his writings; his books were burnt and he was obliged  
to recant at Paul's Cross. This copy, bound up with another work, also by  
Basille, was bought at Ratcliffe's sale, in 1776, by Captain Franklin, for  
6s. 6d.

6. Fifteen-forty-four. Porcia, Giacomo, Count.

The preceptes of Warre set forth by James the Erle of  
Purlilia, and translated into Englysh by Peter Betham. 1544.  
*Imprynted at London, in the Olde Jewery, by Edwarde Whyt-  
churche. Cum priuilegio ad imprimendum solum. These bookes  
are to be solde at the West dore of Pauls, by William Telotson.*

Black letter. Octavo.

100 leaves. Dedicated to Sir Thomas Audeley. Running headlines, "Of  
feates of warre."—Brydges' "Censura Literaria," vol. vii, p. 67.—A copy  
in the Bod. Meyrick (Archæol., vol. xxii., p. 67) mentions having seen the  
original ed. of 1527 in the Library of the Advocates at Doctors' Commons.  
[V. orig. 510.]

*Copies.* B.M.

7. Fifteen-forty-four. Anonymous.

The late | expedicion in | Scotlande, | made by the Kynges |  
hyghnys armye, under the conduit | of the ryght honorable  
the | Erle of Hertforde, the | yere of oure Lorde | God | 1544.  
| Londini. | Cum priuilegio ad imprimendum | solum. |

Black letter. Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Col.: "Imprynted at London in Powls churchyarde

by Reynolde Wolfe, at the sygne of y<sup>e</sup> Brasen serpent. Anno. 1544. Cum privilegio ad imprimendum solum."—24 and 25 ll. to p.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-D. —Text begins on A1.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Grenville's note to this copy runs: "This account of the Protector Somerset's expedition into Scotland while he was still Erle of Hertforde is perhaps the rarest of the Scotch historical pieces, and was sold at the Roxburgh Sale for 30 guineas; since that time I have not seen another copy." The book was addressed to Lord Russel, Lord Privy Seal, by a friend of his, serving with the King's army during the expedition. The artillery used by the English was drawn by men. In the first engagement it killed only two of the enemy, whose ordnance, however, was still more ineffective, merely wounding two of the English. Archers and harquebussiers were employed in conjunction, and did good service, the former shooting down the Scotch gunners before they could fire off their guns once. The work is not equal in interest to Patten's. Reprinted in Arber's "English Garner," vol. i., pp. 113-119; also with No. 10, Edinburgh, 1798, 4<sup>o</sup>.

8. Fifteen-forty-four.

Statutes and | ordynances for | the warre. | *Londini.* | *Anno.*

M.D.XLIIII.

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, enclosed in woodcut, signed T. B.—Col.: "Imprinted at London in Fletestrete by Thomas Barthelet printer to the kinges highnes, the .xx. day of June, the yere of our Lorde. M.D.XLIIII. Cum Privilegio Ad Imprimendum Solum."—No pag.—Sigs. A (4 ff.) and B (6 ff.).—36 ll. to p.

*Contents.* These orders, drawn up shortly before the invasion of France by Henry VIII. in 1513, were issued for the governance of the English army during that expedition, and, according to Collier, were first printed in the same year by Pynson. The preamble is on verso of title-page; there are 53 clauses, one of them being as follows: "That every man of the King's army bear a cross of St. George, sufficient and large, upon pain of imprisonment and punishment"; in the absence of uniforms, a necessary regulation.

9. Fifteen-forty-five. Ascham, Roger.

Toxophilus, | The schole of shootinge | conteyned in two  
| bookes. | To all Gentlemen and yomen of Englande, | plea-  
saunte for theyr pastyme to rede, | and profitable for theyr  
use | to folow, both in war | and peace. |

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Frontis., A1, has Royal Arms and Verses in Lat. and Eng.—More Lat. Verses, A1<sub>2</sub>.—Ded. to Henry VIII., A2-3.—Pref., A4-a2.—Title, a3.—Cts., a3-4.—Col.: “Deo gratias. | Londini. | In ædibus Edouardi Whytchurch, | Cum priuilegio ad impri- | mendum solum. | 1545.” | R.H.: “Toxophilus. A. The schole of shoting [spelt in various ways].”—Nums. to ff.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A, a, B-Y.—31 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.; Ashburnham (4 copies); Bod.

Second Edition. Fifteen-seventy-one.

Toxophilus, | The schole, or partitions of | shooting con-  
tayned in ij. bookes, | writtē by Roger Ascham. 1544. | And  
now newly perused. | Pleasaunt for all Gentle- | men, and  
yomen of England | for theyr pastime to reade, and | profitable  
for their use to folowe | both in warre and peace. | Anno. 1571.  
| *Imprinted at London in | Fletestreate neare to Saint | Dunstones  
Churche by Tho- | mas Marshe. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., \*i, enclosed in woodcuts.—Ded., \*ii-iii.—Tables, \*4.—Col.: “Imprinted at London in Fletestreate neare to S. Dunstones Churche by Thomas Marshe Anno Domini (1571).”—R.H., same as 1st ed.—Nums. to ff.—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, \*(2 ff.), A-H7.—37 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

Third Edition. Fifteen-eighty-nine.

Toxophilus: | The Schoole, or partitions of Shoo- | ting . . .  
. . . *At London, | Printed by Abell Ieffes, | by the consent of H.  
Marsh. | Anno. 1589. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., ¶¶ I, enclosed in pieces.—Ded., ¶¶ 2-4.—Cts., ¶¶¶ 1-2.—Col.: “¶ At London, Printed by Abel Ieffes, dwelling in Philip Lane, at the Signe of the Bell. Anno Domini. 1589.”, H7<sub>2</sub>.—Printer’s device, H8.—R.H., same as 1st ed.—Nums. to ff.—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, ¶¶, ¶¶¶ (2 ff.), A-H.—37 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.; Ashburnham; Bod.

*Contents.* The most renowned of works on Archery. Reprinted both separately, and with the complete works, in London in 1761, 1815, 1856,

and 1869; and in Wrexham in 1788 and 1821. The First Part contains a history of the weapon, the Second, instructions for its use. Ascham advises "all the Gentlemen and yeomen of England not to change the long-bow for any other thing."

10. Fifteen-forty-eight. Patten, William, Sir.

☞ The | Expedition into Scot- | lāde of the most woorthely  
for- | tunate prince Edward, Duke | of Soomerset; uncle unto  
our | most noble souereign lord y<sup>e</sup> kī | ges Maiestie Edward  
the.VI. | Gouuernour of hys hyghnes | persone; and Protectour  
of hys | graces Realmes, dominions & | and subiectes: made  
in the | first yere of his Ma- | iesties most pros- | perous reign,  
| and set out | by way | of diarie, by | W. Patten Lon- | doner.  
| Vivat Victor. |

Black letter. Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., 1<sup>r</sup> i.—Ded. to Sir William Paget, 1<sup>r</sup> 1<sub>2</sub>-4.—Pref., 1<sup>r</sup> 4<sub>2</sub>-D<sub>2</sub>.—Err., P<sub>7</sub><sub>2</sub>-8.—Col.: "Imprinted in Londō, the last d[ai]e . . .] in the second yere of the reigne of our souereigne lorde Kyng Eduuard the VI: by Richard Grafton, printer to his moost royall Maiestie, in the yere of our lord. M.D.XLVIII. ¶ Cum preuilegio ad imprimendum solum.", P<sub>8</sub><sub>2</sub>.—Diags.—R.H.: "The expedition into Scotlande."—No pag.—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, 1<sup>r</sup> 1<sub>2</sub>, a-d<sub>2</sub>, A-P.—22 ll. to p. J. West's autograph, and his note to the effect that this copy [B.M.] sold in 1729 at Dr. Grey's auction for £4 5s.

*Copies.* B.M.; Lambeth.

*Contents.* A journal of the expedition of 1547, from the Protector's arrival at Newcastle on Aug. 17th, to the breaking up of his camp before Rokesborough, Sept. 29th; in all, thirty-three days. The writer, who had formerly belonged to the household of the Earl of Arundel, seems to have afterwards entered that of Sir William Paget. At the breaking out of this war, he and a certain William Cecil were appointed judges of the Marshalsea, and in that capacity they accompanied the army to Scotland. Their daily duties in the courts-martial concluded, they had liberty "to ride and see things that were done, and leisure to notice occurrences as they came." Cecil afterwards gave his notes to Patten.

This is the second in point of time of our printed military narratives, and is very well written. Patten gives full descriptions of the composition of both the Scotch and English armies, and especially of the arming, clothing, quartering, manner of fighting, etc., of the former. There are three rough diagrams to assist the reader in understanding the account of the battle of Pinkie Cleugh. Made use of by Grose. Reprinted in Arber's "English Garner," vol. iii., and in "Fragments of Scottish History," Edinburgh, 1798, 4°.



**C** The expolitiō of þ letters of this table.

- A. Signifieth the place we camped in bes  
foze the battaile.  
B. Our rerewarde.  
C. Our battaile.  
D. Our fozewarde.  
E. The square close.  
F. The foot of the hylles syde.  
G. My lorde Protectours grace.  
H. The master of the ordinaunce.  
I. Our hoysmen.  
K. The slough.  
L. The lane and the ff. turf walles.  
M. Their fozewarde & hoysmē by þ same.  
N. Their battaile.  
O. Their rerewarde.  
P P. The ff. hilloches befoze the church.  
Q. Saint Michels of vnderke.  
R. Huskelbozowe.  
S. Their hoysmen at the ende of faur sides  
Way.

TTTT. Their retues of tentes.;

V. The turf wall toward the frish.

VV. Our cariages.

X. the marish.

Y. Our galley.

Z. Edinbozow castell.

**C** The significaciō of certein oþher notes.

• Signifieth a footman.

○ A hoysman.

† A hakbutter a foot.

© A hakbutter on hoysback.

♠ An archer.

| A footman slayn.

§ A hoysman slayn.

||. The fallowe felde, whereon their armye  
Rode.

**2d** Thys secunde Table sheweth the placinge of our footmen, the slaughter of Edward Shelleys and the oother, the Retzre of oure bande of hoysmen vp to the hil, and the breach of array of the straglers from thē.

But touchyng the exposition of the notes and letters,

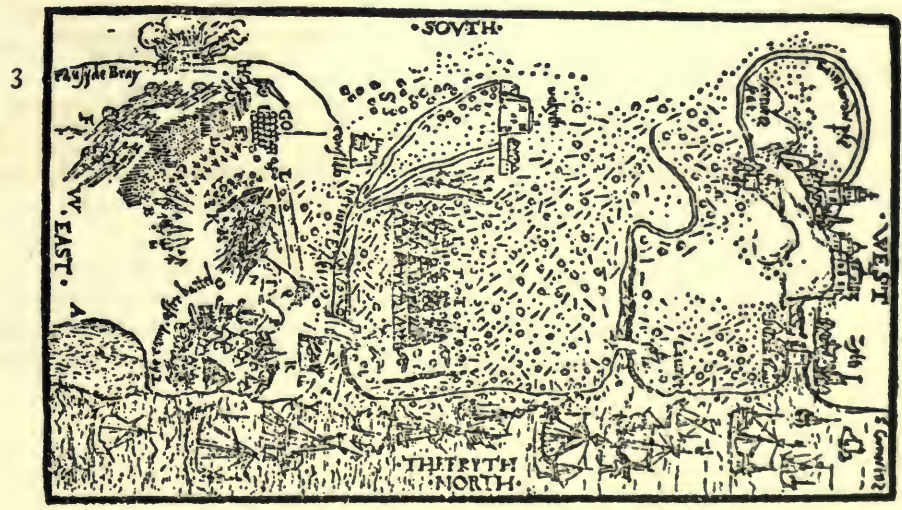
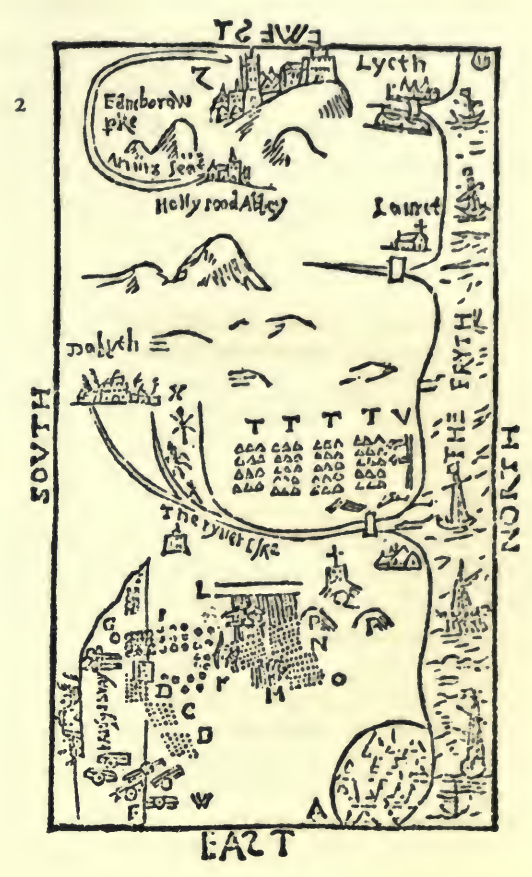
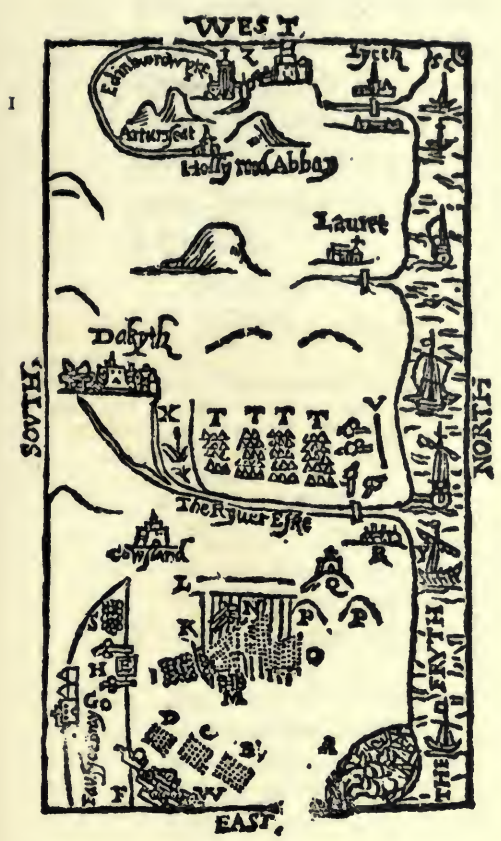
I refer the reader to the Table befoze.

(?) **C: D** (?)

**2d** Thys thyrde Table sheweth the cummyng into array of oure hoysmen vpon the hil agayn, the placinge of the hakbutters against the enemye, the thoryng of our archers, and then the cummyng doune of our hoysmen after about the chase and slaughter of the enemye. **C: D**

M. Signifie the pykes and weapons set fall by the Scottes in the place they rode in. Also the oother characters & notes, I refer the reader agayne to the first Table.

*Keys to maps of the Battle of Musselburgh, or Pinkie Cleugh.*



Maps of the Battle of Musselburgh. From Patten's "Expedicion into Scollade," 1548.





11. [Fifteen-sixty?] Grisone, Federico.

¶ A newe booke | containing the arte of ryding, | and  
breaking greate Horses, toge- | ther with the shapes and Figures,  
of | many and diuers kyndes of Byt- | tes, mete to serue diuers  
mou | thes. Very necessary for all | Gentlemen, Souldy- |  
ours, Seruingmen, | and for any man | that deligh- | teth in  
a | horse. |

Black letter. Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Lord Robert Dudley, A2-5.—Cts., &c.,  
A6-B4.—Col.: “¶ Imprinted at London by Willyam Seres dwellinge at  
the West ende of Poules, at the signe of the Hedgehog.”, (2nd F<sub>42</sub>).—R.H.:  
“The . . . booke of the art of Riding.”—51 woodcuts of bits (26 ff.).—  
Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, A-B, A-M, A-F, A-D2.—1st B and 2nd F in 4<sup>s</sup>.—24-26  
ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The cuts are copied from those of the Italian eds. Abridged  
from Grisone by Blundeville, at the suggestion of John Astley.<sup>1</sup> It is the first  
work in English on equitation, and after its publication, teachers of riding,  
who before, says Bedingfield, “were not of much knowledge,” improved so  
much, that by 1584, through their industry and skill, the number of service-  
able horses and horsemen had much increased. Some of the credit for this  
change is due, no doubt, to individuals, such as “old Alexander, the earliest  
riding-master to the esquires and riders of the Queen’s stable,” who had been  
a pupil of Grisone. Blundeville’s remained the most popular book on the  
subject until the publication of Markham’s “Soldiers Accidence;” for  
Bedingfield, in his abridgment of Corte (v. 30), avoided going over the same  
ground as his predecessor.

Chap. XIX. is headed “How to make your horse abide both staffe, sworde,  
great noyse, gonshot, or any other thing.” [V. Orig. 707.]

12. Fifteen-sixty. Macchiavelli, Niccolo.

The Arte of warre, | written first in Italiã | by Nicholas  
Machiauell, and set | forthe in Englishe by Peter | White-  
horne, student at Graies Inne: | with an addiciõ of other like  
Mar- | cialle feates and experimen- | tes, as in a Table in the

<sup>1</sup> Author of another “Art of Riding” (London, 1584, 4°). This, like Thomas  
Blundeville’s original work of the same title (London, 1597, 4°), and his “Foure  
chiefest Offices belonging to Horsemanship” (London, 1565-66, 4°; 1580, 4°; and  
1609, 4°), having no specially military interest, is not included here.

| ende of the Booke | maie appere. | *Anno. M.D.LX. | Menss. Iulii.* |

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, enclosed in fine woodcut border, reproduced as frontispiece to this catalogue.—Ded. to Queen Elizabeth, a2-4.—Cts., Gg2<sub>2</sub>-Hh1.—Device of the printer, John Kingston, Hh1<sub>2</sub>.—R.H.: “The first [-seventh] booke.”—Nums. to ff. i-cix.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, a, A-Z, Aa-Hh2, which is blank.—37 ll. to p.—Tailpiece representing a sleeping camp, Ee1; tables and diagrams, Ee1<sub>2</sub>-Gg2.—For Col. v. the “Addition” (No. 13, 1st ed.).

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

### Second Edition. Fifteen-seventy-three.

¶ The | Arte of Warre, | . . . . *Newly imprim- | ted with other ad- | ditions. | An. M.D.LXXIII. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* A reprint of the 1560 ed.—The border of tp. and diags. are from the plates of 1st ed., but there is no tailpiece on Ee1, and no device; the woodcut initials, too, are different.—Table ends on Gg4.—Nums. to ff. in roman.—36 ll. to p.—For Col. v. No. 13 (2nd ed.).

*Copies.* B.M.; W.O.

### Third Edition. Fifteen-eighty-eight.

¶ The | Arte of Warre, | . . . . *Newly imprim- | ted with other ad- | ditions. | 1588. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* A reprint of the 1573 ed.—Tp. has the borders of the previous eds.—New woodcut initials, and the tailpiece of 1st ed. absent.—Nums. to ff. in arabic.—36 ll. to p.—This has an addition of a folding diag. of the embattling of an army.—For Col. v. No. 13 (3rd ed.).

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.; Bod.

*Contents.* The title, “Art of War,” is a common one in these early books, and it usually indicates that the work gives information on all branches—tactics, fortification, artillery, etc. The treatise in question takes a high place amongst contemporary works, and remained in use as a text-book for a long period; it was a favourite book of Frederick the Great. On this alone of the foreign writings mentioned here was conferred the honour of a translation twice reissued. Macchiavelli’s knowledge of his subject is all the more remarkable when we take into account that he was not by profession a soldier, but a diplomatist.

Soldiers have attacked his description of a battle on the ground that it is the work of one who had never seen what he describes, but the account is too circumstantial to have been drawn from the imagination, and Macchiavelli

must have gathered his information from men of practical experience in war; it is clear, too, that he had carefully studied the most important military literature of antiquity. A prominent feature in the work is the desire of the author to improve the status of the infantry, which, owing to the aristocratic prejudice in favour of cavalry, and the exaggerated opinion held of the merits of the latter arm, had been suffered to fall into a condition of neglect, bordering on disorder.

Book VII. is on the defence of fortified places. The Harquebus is spoken of as a "new instrument," which must mean that it had only just come into general use, for Philip de Comines mentions it in his account of the Battle of Morat in 1476. For nearly a century after the invention of fire-arms writers speak disparagingly of them, and, indeed, their effect gave a moral, rather than a physical, superiority to the side using them. Giacomo Purlilia, writing about this time, recommends soldiers to "stop their ears with something, so that they might not be terrified by the sound of these weapons," and Macchiavelli regards them as profitable only to frighten the country people. His statement, that the introduction of ordnance did not render it necessary to make any change in the dense formations derived from the ancients, goes to show that the improvements made in artillery during the first two hundred years were insignificant, although the remark leads us to infer that certain soldiers were beginning to realize that a change was becoming necessary. [V. Orig. 507.]

13. Fifteen-sixty-two. Whitehorne, Peter.

Certain Waies | for the order yng of Souldiers in bat- | telray,  
 & setting of battailes, af- | ter diuers fashions, with their maner  
 | of march yng: And also Fy gures of | certaine new plattes for  
 fortifi- | cacion of Townes: And | more ouer, howe to | make  
 Saltpeter, | Gunpoulder, | and diuers | sortes | of Fireworkes  
 or wilde Fyre, | with other thynges aper- | taining to the  
 warres. | Gathered and set | foorth by Peter | Whitehorne.

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, enclosed in woodcut, has no imprint—Postscript, N1<sub>2</sub>-2.—Cts., N2<sub>2</sub>-3.—Col.: "¶ Imprinted at London, By Ihon Kingston: for Nicholas Englande. Anno salutis, M.D.LXII. Mense. Aprilis", N4.—Kingston's device, N4<sub>2</sub>.—Diags.—R.H.: "The order yng of Souldiers in battelraie", "Plattes of fortificacion", "The mak yng and refinyng of Saltpeter", "The making of Gunpowder", "The making of Artillerie", "Of Muynes", "Of Fireworks", and "Of sending aduice"—Nums. to ff.—Sigs. in 4°, A-N.—36 and 37 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

Second Edition. Fifteen-seventy-three.

So Certaine | wayes for the ordering [G reversed] of | Soul-  
diours in battelray, and setting | of battayles . . . ¶ *Imprinted*  
*at London by | W. Williamson: for | Ihon Wight. | Anno. 1573.*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* A reprint of the ed. of 1562.—Tp., A1, has piéces at top and bottom.—Col.: “¶ *Imprinted at London, by W. Williamson: for Ihon Wight. ¶ Anno salutis. M.D.LXXIII. Mense. Septembris*”, N4, verso blank.—No device.—The same plates as in 1st ed., but different woodcut initials.—Nums. to ff.—36 ll. to p.—Unlike the 1st ed., this has tailpieces.

*Copies.* B.M.; W.O.

Third Edition. Fifteen-eighty-eight.

Certaine Waies | for the ordering of Souldi- | ours in  
battelray, and setting of bat- | tailes, . . . ¶ *Imprinted at*  
*London by | Thomas East: for | Ihon Wight. | 1588. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation* as in 2nd ed.; but there is no Col., N4 being blank.—This ed. is distinguished from both the 1st and 2nd by the absence of the abbreviation “Fol.” before the num. on each f., and from the 2nd by the form of the tailpieces, which in that consist of two short pieces laid one above the other, and in this are diversified.—35 and 36 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.

*Contents.* A treatise printed at the end of the eds. 1560, 1573 and 1588 of the author’s trans. of Macchiavelli. (V. No. 12.)

Owing, perhaps, to its having been brought out merely as a supplement to the “Art of War,” Whitehorne’s book has almost been lost sight of as a separate work. It supplies information on the subjects not treated of by Macchiavelli, that is to say, on Fortification, and the manner of making gunpowder, saltpeter, fireworks, etc. This information is collected chiefly from Italian writers; nevertheless Whitehorne must be allowed the honour of being the first Englishman to write on these subjects, though, as regards “Fireworks,” it is Bourne (see No. 24) to whom the credit is usually given. There is an interesting chapter on signalling, based on the ancient systems of Æneas Tacticus and Polybius.

14. Fifteen-sixty-three. Onosander.

Onosandro Platonico, of | the Generall Captaine, and of |  
his office, translated out | of Greke into Italyan, by | Fabio  
Cotta, a Ro- | mayne: and out of I- | talian into Eng- | lysh,

by Peter | Whyte- | horne | (.:) | ¶ Imprinted at London, by  
| Wyllyam Seres. | ¶ Cum priuilegio ad impri- | mendum solum.  
| Anno. 1563: |

Black letter. Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Thomas, Duke of Norfolk, A2-4.—Cts., K1-3.—Col.: “¶ Imprynted at London, by Wyllyam Seres, dwellinge at the West end of Paules, at the sygne of the Hedgehogge (.:) ¶ Cum priuilegio ad imprimendum solum. Anno 1563.”, K4.—R.H.: “Onosandro Platonico.”—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, A-K4.—30 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

*Contents.* Strangely varying opinions have been held of Onosander; Guischartd calls him a foolish dreamer, and considers that he must have lived in the time of Vegetius, for the sole reason that, had he written after that author, he would most certainly have copied from him; on the other hand, Marshal Saxe regarded him with the greatest reverence. “It is only just,” says Almirante, in reviewing these opinions, “to allow to Onosander the Platonic a priority in treating military affairs from a moral and elevated or, as one might say, from a philosophic point of view; for which it is not indispensably necessary to have passed one’s life in a camp; and this being granted, we may tolerate a few technical errors, as well as some confusion in chronology.”

Onosander was first put into a modern tongue by Fabio, or Tobia, Cotta in 1546; and it is this translation<sup>1</sup> that Peter Whitehorne turned into English. Whitehorne had gained some military knowledge while in Turkey, by looking on at the “martiall affayres and doings of the Turks.” In his version, Onosander’s suggestions for a sham fight run as follows: “I woulde deuide [the army] in two partes, and then without weapon bring them close together to fayght, distributinge the light dartes, and the slite partisans: and if paraduventure there shalbe nere some plowed felde, lette theym faight wyth the cloddes of earth, and let the souldiers use harnes of Bulles lether, if they may haue it.” The contents of the treatise may be put under the heads: choice of the general; councils of war; declaration of war; marches; camps; drilling; forages; spies; guards and sentries; sacrifices; pursuit; gaining information; hours for meals; encouraging troops; battle formations; signals to be used in reconnoitring; preparations for, and after, a battle; sieges.

Earliest printed eds.: in Gr. and Lat.—Romæ, 1494, 4°; Parrhisijs [1506], 8° (the Pref. of this ed. bears date 1506 and the Col., 1504, probably that of trans.); Basileæ, 1541, 8°; *ibid.*, 1558, 8°; Noribergæ, 1595, 8°; Lutetiæ Parisiorum, 1598-99, 4°: in Fr.—Paris, 1546, fol.; Paris, 1605, 4° (by de Vigenère): in Germ.—Meintz, 1532, fol.: and others more recent.

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted, Milano, 1862, 8°.

15. Fifteen-sixty-three. Gale, Thomas.

An | excellent | Treatise of wounds made with Gonneshot,  
| in which is confuted bothe the grose | errour of Jerome  
Brunswicke, John Vigo, | Alfonse Ferrius, and others: in that  
they make the | wounde venemous, whiche commeth through  
the | common powder and shotte: And also there is | set out  
a perfect and trew methode of curyng | these woundes. Newly  
compiled and pu- | blished by Thomas Gale Maister | in  
Chirurgerie. | *Printed at Lon- | don by Rouland Hall, for |*  
*Thomas Gale. | 1563. |*

Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., A<sub>1</sub>, has Hall's device; A<sub>12</sub>, woodcut of a man wounded by bullets, arrows, knives, etc.—Portrait of Author, A<sub>2</sub>.—Pref., A<sub>3</sub>.—R.H.: "A treatise of Gonneshotte."—Nums. to ff. 1-19.—Sigs. in 8°, A-C; C<sub>7</sub><sub>1</sub> and 8<sub>1</sub>, woodcuts.

This is one of 4 treatises included in a volume printed by Rowland Hall, with the title, "Certaine Workes of Chirurgerie newly compiled . . . by Thomas Gale . . ." It was included also in the collected ed. of John Vigo's works, London, 1586, 4° (Thomas East).

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Thomas Gale was the first Englishman to write a treatise on gun-shot wounds. As early as 1497 a German, Brunswick, had mentioned a treatment for such wounds, and Vigo, some years later, another; but Paré's is the first monograph on the subject.

16. Fifteen-seventy-one. Digges, Leonard, and Thomas.

A Geometrical | Practise, named Pantometria, | diuided  
into three Bookes, Longimetra, | Planimetra and Stereometria,  
containing Rules manifolde | for mensuration of all lines,  
Superficies and Solides: with | sundry straunge conclusions  
both by instrument | and without, and also by Perspective  
glasses, to | set forth the true description or exact plat of | an  
whole Region: framed by Leonard | Digges Gentleman,  
lately finished | by Thomas Digges his | sonne. | Who hath  
also thereunto adioyned a Mathematicall treatise | . . . *Im-*  
*printed at London by Henrie Bynneman | Anno. 1571. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., +1, has coloured woodcut.—Arms of Bacon, +1<sub>2</sub>.—Ded. to Sir Nicholas Bacon, +2 and A1.—Pref., A1<sub>2</sub>-4.—Arms of Digges, li<sub>2</sub>.—Col.: “Imprinted at London by Henrie Bynneman, dwelling in Knightriders streat, at the signe of the Mermaid. Anno Domini. 1571.” with device, li<sub>2</sub>.—Diags. and ills.—R.H., varied.—No pag.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, + (2 ff.), A-Z, Aa-li<sub>2</sub>.

*Copies.* B.M.; own copy.

Second Edition. Fifteen-ninety-one.

A Geometrical Practicall | Treatize Named Pantometria, |  
. . . At London | Printed by Abell Jeffes. | Anno. 1591. |

Folio.

*Collation.* A1, blank.—Tp., A2.—Arms of Bacon, A2<sub>2</sub>.—Ded., A3.—Pref., A3<sub>2</sub>-A4.—Arms of Digges, Cc3<sub>2</sub>.—Err., Cc4.—Diags. and ills.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Z, Aa-Cc.

*Copies.* B.M. (two).

*Contents.* Bk. I., “Longimetra,” is on Topography. There is a full explanation of the construction and use of the gunner’s quadrant, and of the theodolite, which is practically the same as the “cosmodolite” of Norton. On the derivation of the word “theodolite” see De Morgan (“Arithmetical Books,” p. 24).

The 2nd impression, besides an addition of fifty “Theorems concerning the new Science of great Ordnance, resolving the greater part of the Artillery Questions in the ‘Stratoticos,’” has a supplement consisting of forty “Diffinitions, taken out of my [first and] third Book of Pyrotechnie Militarie, and great Artillerie;” and twelve “Geometrical Problems for understanding the other treatise of Architecture Military and Nautical and great Artillery.” (V. No. 25 for these unpublished works.) Thomas Digges, who was not a gunner, adopted a nomenclature of his own, which Norton, in his “Art of Great Artillery,” London, 1624, translates into the technical terms used in gunnery. Thomas speaks in the Pref. of Leonard’s invention of “Proportional Glasses,” by means of which one could see what was being done at a distance of seven miles, and could fire powder and discharge ordnance at a distance of half a mile and more. In the “Stratoticos” (p. 359, ed. 1590), he says that it was partly an “old written book” of Roger Bacon’s experiments that suggested the idea of these glasses to his father, alluding, no doubt, to the “Mirror of Alchemy,” written in Latin about the middle of the thirteenth century, and printed in 1541,<sup>1</sup> which contains several passages relating to perspective glasses for military purposes, and to gunpowder.

“Leonard Digges, the father of Thomas, was famous for his mathematical

<sup>1</sup> English trans., London, 1595, 4<sup>o</sup>.

learning, and died about 1574. The eldest son of Thomas was also very learned: he was Sir Dudley Digges, and was Master of the Rolls to Charles I. He died about 1639."—(MS. note in compiler's copy.) Thomas himself, who was one of the first mathematicians of his age, was Muster-Master General to the English forces in the Netherlands, a post obtained for him by his patron, Leicester. It was thus he gained his knowledge of military organization.

17. Fifteen-seventy-two. Vegetius, Flavius.

The Foure bookes of Flavius Vegetius Ranatus, briefely contayninge a plaine forme, and perfect knowledge of Martiall policie, feates of Chiualrie, and whateuer pertayneth to warre. Translated out of lattine, into Englishe, by Iohn Sadler. Anno. 1572. Imprinted by Thomas Marshe.

Quarto. Herbert, 862.

*Contents.* Vegetius dedicated his work, "De re militari, lib. v", to Valentinian II. He himself states that it is derived from the commentaries of Cato, Celsus, Trajan, Hadrian, and Frontinus. "His gravest defect is that he confounds periods and usages, the ancients with him signifying sometimes the Romans in their early days, sometimes in the palmy days of the Republic, and sometimes in the times immediately before his own."<sup>1</sup> But he is considered a great authority on what concerns the Romans, and no writer has written of that system without mentioning him. "He is, as it were, an immense bridge," says Almirante, "uniting antiquity with modern times. Notwithstanding grave defects, he has had the good luck and the glory of surviving the shipwreck of the middle ages, and of being reverently imitated during the renaissance, being one of the few classics that have come down to us complete." It was Egidio Colonna who, in 1284, first brought Vegetius into vogue, by taking him as his model and guide in the "Principium Regimine," which may be called the first modern work on the military art, while, in the same year, by command of Jean, Count of Eu, Jean de Meung translated him entirely. For 250 years after this revival he remained one of the most popular of writers. [V. No. 1.] The five books are thus divided: Bk. I. On the levying and training of recruits.—Bk. II. On the legion, its organisation, rank of officers and men, and their arms.—Bk. III. On tactics; the last chapter of this book consisting of thirty-two "maxims of war."—Bk. IV. On fortification and the attack and defence of places; on machines of war.—Bk. V. On the navy.

<sup>1</sup> Nisard's "Collection des auteurs latin," Paris, 1851.



Eds. [For collected eds. v. No. 3.] Utrecht, 1475, 4°; Parisiis, 1535, fol.; Lugduni Batavorum, 1644, 12°.—Fr. trans., Paris, 1488, fol.; Paris, 1527, 8°; Paris, 1536, fol.; Francfort-sur-le-Main, 1616, fol.—Ger. trans., Ulm? 1470? fol.; Erffurt, 1511, fol.; Augsburg, 1529, fol.; [Augsburg] 1534, fol.—It. trans., Venesia, 1525, 8° (trans. by Gaetano); Venetia, 1540, 8°; Vinegia, 1551, 8° (trans. by Ferrosi). The "Commentary" of Stewechius on Vegetius is first found in the 1592 ed. of the collected works. It was printed separately by the Plantin Press, 1606, 4°, and again Vesaliæ, 1670, 8°.

There is an English trans. of Vegetius among the Lansdowne MSS. (285.47.), dating from 1408. The colophon runs: "Here endeth the boke that Clerks clepith in Latyn Vegesius de Re militari, the boke of Vegesy of dedis of knyghthode, which boke was translatid and turnyd frō Latyn into Englishe at the ordenaunce and bidding of the worthy and worshupful Lorde Sir Thomas of Berkeley . . . , the turnyng of this booke into Englissh was wryten and endid in the vigill of Allhalowe, the yere of our Lorde a thousand cccc and viii, the x yere of the reigne of Kyng Herry the fourthe. : . ." Mr. Douce's note (Cat. MSS. Lansd.) is as follows: "It was supposed that Ebesham was the translator; but this is a mistake: he was merely the transcriber, and received for his trouble the sum of ten shillings. The real translator's name appears at the end of another copy [Mr. Douce's], on vellum, in this form: 'This is his name that turned this book frō Latyn to Englishe ☐ toñ,' which rebus or device is to be interpreted 'Clifton.'"

18. Fifteen-seventy-three. Drury, Sir William.

[Regulations to be observed by the English army marching to besiege Edinburgh Castle]. *Printed by Robert Lekprevik, Edinburgh.*

Single sheet.

Arber, v. 89.

19. Fifteen-seventy-four. Cataneo, Girolamo.

¶ Most | briefe ta- | bles to knowe redily howe | manye ranckes of footemen armed | with Corslettes, as vnarmed, go to the ma- | king of a iust battayle, from an hundred vnto | twentye thousande. | Next a very easye, and ap- | proued way to arme a battaile with Harkabuzers, | and winges of horsemen according to | the vse at these daies | Newlye in-

creased, and largelye | amplified both in the tables, as in the  
declarations of | the same, by the Au<sup>c</sup>thour himsefe. | Giro-  
lamo Cataneo Novarese. | Tourned out of Italion into English  
by H. G. | ¶ *Imprinted at London, by | W. Williamson: for |*  
*Iohn Wight. | Anno. M.D.LXXIII. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Aloigi Avogardo, dated from Brescia,  
5 July, 1563, A2.—Pref. to the reader, A3.—Col.: “¶ *Imprinted at London*  
*in Paules Churchyarde, by W. Williamson for Iohn Wight. Anno. 1574.*”  
—Diags.—R.H., varied.—No pag.—Sigs. in 4°, A-I1; A has 6 ff., E, 2 ff.—  
34-36 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.; W.O.

Second Edition. Fifteen-eighty-eight.

¶ *Most | briefe tables | . . . ¶ Imprinted at London, by |*  
*Thomas East: for Iohn Wight. | 1588. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., a1.—Ded., A2.—Pref., A3.—Diags.—R.H., varied.—  
No pag.—Sigs. in 4°, A-I1; A has 6 ff., E, 2 ff.—34-36 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.; Bod.

*Contents.* The first few pages of text explain the Table, which is arranged  
in sixteen columns, showing at a glance the number of men in each rank,  
and the number of ranks, and parts requisite for any given formation, etc., for  
a force numbering from 100 to 20,000 men. Cataneo observes, however,  
that it is almost impossible that so many men should be engaged all at once;  
the usual number would be from 10,000 to 12,000. Sent out with No. 12.

[V. Orig. 529.]

20. Fifteen-seventy-four. Baker, George.

The Composition or | making of the moste excellent and  
pre- | tious Oil called Oleum Magistrale. | First published by  
the commaundement of the | King of Spain, with the maner  
how to apply | it particulerly. The which Oyl cureth these  
diseases folowig. That is to say, Woūds | Contusiōs, Har-  
gubush shot, . . . Also the third look of Galen of curing or  
| pricks and wounds of Sinowes . . . Faithfully gathered  
and translated | into English by George | Baker Chirurgicalian.  
| 1574. |

Black letter. Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Arms of Vere, A1<sub>2</sub>.—Ded. to Edward Vere, Earl of Oxford, A2-B4.—Verses, C1-2.—Prefs., C1-D4.—Err. and Col.: “Imprinted at London at the long shop adioyning unto Saint Mildreds Church in the Pultrie, by Iohn Alde.”, R4.—R.H., varied.—29 ll. to p.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A, B, C (2 ff.), C-R.—Rare.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* This oil, called “Magistral Oil,” was introduced into Spain in 1566 by a Moor, and its composition was for a long time kept secret; “but at this present day,” says the author, “the whole realm of Spain useth none other medicines what manner of hurt or wound soever it be.”

21. [Fifteen-seventy-seven.] [Polman, John.]

All the famous Battels that haue bene fought in our age throughout the worlde, as well by sea as lande, set foorth at large liuely described, beautified and enriched with sundry eloquent Orations and the declaratiōs of the causes, with the fruites of them. Collected out of sundry good Authors, whose names are expressed in the next Page. *Imprinted at London by Henrye Bynneman [for] Francis Coldocke. [1586.]*

Black letter. Quarto.

Title on A1.—Dedicated to Sir Christopher Hatton by the printer—Hazlitt, “Handbook,” 474; and Herbert, 922 and 989.—Licenced to Henry Bynneman 1 July. 1577. xij<sup>d</sup>—Arber, ii. 313.—For Pt. II. v. No. 34.

22. Fifteen-seventy-eight. Rich, Barnaby.

Allarme | To England, foreshew- | ing what perilles are  
pro- | cured, where the people liue | without regarde of  
Marti- | all lawe. | With a short discourse contey- | ning the  
decay of warlike discipline, con- | uenient to be perused by  
Gentlemen, such as are | desirous by seruice, to seeke their  
owne | deserued prayse, and the preseruacion of their | countrey.  
Newly deuised and writ- | ten by Barnabe Riche | Gentleman.  
| Malui me diuitem esse quam vocari. |

Perused and allo[wed]. | 1578. |

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., \*1, enclosed in woodcut.—Three deds., the first to Sir Christopher Hatton, \*2-4.—Verses, \*\*1-\*\*4.—Col.: “¶ Imprinted at London by Christopher Barker, Printer to the Queenes Maiestie.”—R.H.: “Of warre”, “Of Souldiers”, “Of the time”, and “The Decay on Martiall discipline.”—No pag.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, \*, \*\*, A-K2.—36 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another ed. of this year (1578), with a narrower ornamental border to tp., and Col.: “¶ Imprinted at London, by Henrie Middleton, for C[hristopher] B[arker].”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, \*, \*\*, A-L3.—34 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Rich, like so many other writers, laments the decay of martial discipline in England; yet it was only necessary, he says, “to look into the Tower of London to see that neither ordnance, shot, powder, pike, caliver, armour, nor any other furniture convenient for the wars were one whit lacking”; but these things would avail little if men were not exercised in their use. The corrupt practices of the officers and the manner of recruiting were at the root of the evil. A chief Constable of a county had the power of enlisting whomsoever he chose, and he often made use of it for the purpose of getting rid of any person obnoxious to him: “but if Maister Constable be in love and charitie with his neighbours, then some odd fellow must be picked out that doth least good in the parish, it is no matter for his condition, they thinke he can not be too ill to make a souldier of.”

23. Fifteen-seventy-eight. P[rocter] T[homas].

Of the knowledge | and conducte of warres, two bookes, |  
latelye wrytten and sett foorth, profi- | table for suche as delight  
in Hys- | toryes, or martyall affayres, | and necessarye for |  
this present | tyme. |

¶ Virtuti pariter cunctis contendite neruis:

Ignaua (vt scopulos) otia diffugite.

Seeke vertue, noble youth betymes,

Which breadeth honour true:

Base idlenesse, and all her baytes,

Euen as a rocke eschue.

¶ *In ædibus Richardi Tottelli. vij. die | Iunij. Anno Domini.*  
1578. | ¶ *Cum priuilegio ad imprimen- | dum solum.* |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., ¶1.—Procter's arms, ¶2.—Pref., ¶3-5.—Err., ¶5, shows

a set off on to next page.—Cts., ¶6.—R.H.: “The first booke”, “The seconde booke.”—Nums. to ff.—Sigs. in 4°, ¶ (6 ff.), A-M.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.

*Contents.* According to Meyrick, this book contains the earliest account of the “Currier,” a piece of which the first mention is to be seen in a letter respecting the defence of Calais, addressed to Queen Mary by Lord Wentworth. It has been called the first technical military book written by an Englishman; but it is otherwise of little importance, all the information being extracted from the ancients, and no modern writer mentioned save Macchiavelli, and he, only in the Preface. However, leaving Whitehorne’s out of the question [No. 13], there is a still earlier treatise than this deserving to be called technical, namely, John Shute’s epistle to his translation of “Andre Cambine of the Turkishe affaires” (London, 1562, 4°). This is the earliest English composition, not a translation, on military discipline, as we now understand the word. Here again it is chiefly Vegetius who is drawn upon, although a page or two is given to Du Bellay’s account of crimes punishable in continental armies with death. Shute insists on the necessity of training and obedience in soldiers, and of study in officers.

24. Fifteen-seventy-eight. Bourne, William.

Inuentions | or Deuses. | Very necessary for all Ge- | neralles  
and Captaines, or Lea- | ders of men, as wel by Sea as | by  
Land: Written by | William Bourne. | *An.* 1578. | *At London*  
| *Printed for Thomas Woodcock | dwelling in Paules Churchyard,*  
| *at the signe of the black | Beare. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., ¶1, enclosed in woodcut.—Ded. to Lord Howard of Effingham, ¶2.—Pref., ¶3-2.—Cts., \*3-A4.—R.H.: “Rare inuentions and strange Deuses.”—Sigs. in 4°, ¶, \*, A-O2.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The inventions are chiefly of Bourne’s own making, or are claimed as such by him. The first twenty-six are connected with naval warfare; with the twenty-seventh commences the part which has to do with ordnance and other branches of the military art. Some of the contrivances, such as that of John Skinner for elevating or depressing the muzzle of a piece by means of a screw underneath the tailpiece as a substitute for “coynes” or wedges, are of practical utility. In the time of Tartaglia the elevation of a piece was given by lowering the trail into a hole, more or less deep, dug to receive it.

25. Fifteen-seventy-nine. Digges, Thomas.

¶ An Arithmeticall Militare Treatise, named | Stratioticos : | Compendiously teaching the Science of Nūbers, | as well in Fractions as Integers, and so much of the Ru- | les and Æquations Algebraicall and Arte of Numbers | Cossicall, as are requisite for the Profession of a Soldiour. | Together with the Moderne Militare Discipline, offices, Lawes and | Dueties in euery wel gouerned Campe and Armie to be obserued : | Long since attēpted by Leonard Digges Gentleman, | Augmented, digested, and lately finished, by | Thomas Digges, his Sonne. | Whereto he hath also adioyned certaine Questions of great Ordinaunce, | resolued in his other Treatize of Pyrotechny and great | Artillerie, hereafter to bee published. | Vivet Post Fvnera Virtus. | *At London :* | *Printed by Henrie Bynneman.* | *Anno Domini 1579.* |

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, has an illustration of a Ruyter's encampment.—Arms of Dudley, A1<sub>2</sub>.—Ded. to Robert, Earl of Leicester, A2.—Pref., A3-4, a1-2, concludes “finished the 13 of Oötober. 1579.”—Cts., a3, and a list of books begun by the author “hereafter to be published,” a4.—Arms of Digges, to face Bk. III., k4<sub>2</sub>.—Col.: “Imprinted at London, by Henrie Bynneman, dwelling in Thames Street, neere unto Baynardes Castle. Anno. 1579.”, 6<sup>4</sup>.—2 folding diags.—Sigs. in 4<sup>ns</sup>, A, a-z, 6<sup>s</sup>.—35 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

Second Edition. Fifteen-ninety.

An | arithmetical | warlike treatise | named | Stratioticos | . . . Aswell concerning the Science or Art of great Artillerie, as the Of- | fices of the Sergeant Maior Generall, the Muster Maister Generall, | the Coronell Generall, and Lord Marshall, with a conference | of the English, French, and Spanish Disciplines, | besides sundry other Militarie Discourses | of no small importance. | *At London,* | *Imprinted by Richard Field.* | 1590. |

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A2, without illustration of encampment.—Ded., A3.—Arms of Digges, A4.—Col., A4<sub>2</sub>, “Imprinted at London by Richard Field dwelling in the Blacke-Friers neere Ludgate. 1590.”, with printer’s device above.—Sigs. in 4°, A-Z, Aa-Pp.—35 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.; Trin. Coll. Camb.; R.A.I.; Lambeth.

*Contents.* One of the best of the military works of the time. De Morgan (“Arithmetical Books”) says of the first part, “There is a brief and good treatise on Arithmetic, and some Algebra of the school of Recorde and Scheubel.” Book II., chaps. 10-13, contains calculations for the use of officers. Digges describes in full the duties of officers of all ranks, and also the precautions to be taken preparatory to forming a camp, giving the method of encamping as practised by the Ruyters. On p. 376, ed. 1590, he recommends that the horses of Argolotiers should be strong enough to carry in addition a “footshot,” or musketeer, a suggestion which may be taken as fore-shadowing the employment of Mounted Infantry. A list is given of 35 offences punishable with death “in everie armie”; also the Laws and Ordinances issued by the Prince of Condé during the Civil Wars in France; and, in the 2nd ed., a reprint of those issued by Leicester in 1586 (v. No. 33). In chap. 7 of Bk. III. are propounded “Certain Questions in the Art of Artillery, by Mathematical Science, joined with experience, to be debated and discussed,” for answers to which see the “Pantometria” (2nd ed., p. 181), and Norton’s “Art of Great Artillery” (London, 1624).

The impression of 1594 has two supplements: (I.) “An Addition to Stratoticos concerning great ordnance,” a fragment of a larger work never printed, in which five errors in the science as propounded by certain gunners are pointed out; and (II.) “Another addition concerning Invasion. . . . A briefe Discourse what orders were best for repulsing of forraigne force, if at any time they should invade us by sea in Kent, or elsewhere,” reprinted in a pamphlet compiled by Thomas Adamson in 1680, fol. The second “addition” is said to have been written in opposition to two communications on the same subject presented in MS. to the Privy Council by Sir Walter Raleigh,<sup>1</sup> and was answered by Sir John Smythe. Just before and immediately after the Armada, appeared a considerable number of these pamphlets on the best means of repelling invasion. The majority were never printed, but the MSS., or transcriptions, of many are to be found in the B.M.

Digges criticises Santbech, Ruscelli and others, who, he says, attempted to write on the science of gunnery, without having a knowledge of mathematics. On the other hand, Tartaglia, although an excellent geometer, failed even in the first principles, and so in his whole discourse, from want of practical experience; as, for example, in his statement that the greatest range was to be obtained with an angle of 45°, which is true only if the projectile were fired “in vacuo;” and, also, in his theory that the final arc described by a

Bibliog. of Sir W. Raleigh, by J. N. Brushfield. Plymouth and Exeter, 1886.

bullet in its course is a "section circular." His calculations showing the different ranges of bullets with all degrees of elevation, Digges pronounces incorrect in practice.

The titles of two works by Digges, which, through time wasted in "law-brables," he was unable to complete and publish:—"A Treatise of Great Artillerie, and Pyrotechnye, conteyning sundrie Demonstrations Geometrical, and Instruments exactly to shoote in all sorts of Peeces at all degrees of Randons, both by day and night *etc.* begon by his Father"; "A Treatise of Fortification of Townes, Forts, and Campes, by a Methode clean repugnant to anye hitherto practised *etc.*"

26. Fifteen-seventy-nine. Gates, Geoffrey.

The | Defence of Militarie | profession. | Wherein is eloquently shewed | the due commendation of Martiall | prowesse, and plainly prooued | how necessary the exercise | of Armes is for this | our age. | *Imprin- | ted at London by Hen- | ry Middleton, for | Iohn Harison. | 1579. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, enclosed in pieces.—A1<sub>2</sub>, Arms of Vere.—Ded. to Edward Vere, Earl of Oxenford, dated Dec. 23, 1578, and subs. "Geoffrey Gates", A2-4.—R.H.: "The defence of Militarie profession."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-H.—36 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The same class of book as Rich's "Alarm to England" [v, 22]. The author served under Sir John Norris in Friesland.

27. Fifteen-eighty-one. Blandy, William.

¶ The Castle, or picture of pollicy | shewing forth most liuely, the face, body and | partes of a commonwealth, the duety, | quality, profession of a perfect and ab- | solute Souldiar, the martiall feates | encounters and skirmishes late- | ly done by our English na- | tion, vnder the con- | duct of the | most noble and famous Gentleman M. Iohn Noris Ge- | nerall of the Army of the states in Freisland. The | names of many worthy and famous Gentle- | men which liue and haue this present | yeare. 1580. ended their liues | in that Land most | honorably. | Handled in manner



of a Dialogue betwixt | Gefferay Gate, and William Blandy, |  
Souldiars. | Faber est quisque fortunæ suæ. | ¶ Anno 1581. |  
¶ At London | Printed by Iohn Daye, dwelling | ouer Alders-  
gate. |

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, enclosed in pieces.—Ded. to Mr. Philip Sidney, A2.—  
Letters and Verses, A3-4.—“Envoy” and Col.: “At London | Printed by  
Iohn Daye dwel- | ling ouer Aldersgate. | Anno. 1581. | Cum Priuilegio  
Regiæ Majestatis.” | I2.—R.H.: “The Castle of Pollicye.”—Nums. to ff.—  
Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-I2.—35 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

*Contents.* The writer was the William Blandy who figures as one of the  
interlocutors in the dialogue, the other, Geoffrey Gates, being the author of  
“The Defence of Military Profession.” Between ff. 18-21 the conversation  
turns on soldiers, and the ideal qualities of officers; then Blandy begs his  
friend “to convert his pen to the displaying the brave and worthy actions  
done by our nation in Friesland.” It is in this connection that one of the  
most renowned of Elizabethan soldiers, Sir John Norris, is introduced. Born  
in 1548, Norris was the son of Henry, Lord Rycot, and the second of six  
brothers, “all martial men.” His best monument is in the military and  
historical writings of his time; from 1577 to his death in 1597, the pam-  
phlets of news are filled with his name, and for some years later the technical  
writings also make frequent reference to him.

28. [Fifteen-eighty-one.] Styward, Thomas.

The | Pathwaie To Marti- | all Discipline, deuided into two  
| Bookes, verie necessarie for young | Souldiers, or for all  
such as loueth | the profession of Armes: latelie | set foorth  
by Thomas | Styward Gen- | tleman. | The First Booke |  
Entreateth of the Offices from the highest to the | lowest, with  
the lawes of the Field, arming, muste- | ring and training of  
Souldiers, with the imbat- | tailing of such numbers, to the  
greatest force | of the like Regiments. | The Second Booke |  
Entreateth of sundrie proportions and training of | Caleeuers,  
and how to bring Bowes to a | great perfection of seruice,  
with imbattailling of | greater Regiments: also how to march  
with | a Campe Royall: likewise how to encampe the | same,  
with diuers Tables annexed | for the present making of your

battells, | as otherwise to know how | manie paces they re-  
quire in | their march & battells from | 500. to 10,000. |  
*Imprinted at London By | T. E. for Myles Jfenyn[gs . . . ] | in*  
*Paules Chu[rchyard] at the signe | [of the Bible. 1581].*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A<sub>1</sub>.—Arms of Howard, A<sub>12</sub>.—Ded. to Lord Howard of Effingham, A<sub>2-3</sub>.—Pref., A<sub>32-4</sub>.—Verses, A<sub>42</sub>.—Cts., Z-Z<sub>2</sub>.—Diags. and Tables, 6 folding.—R.H.: “The . . . Booke of Martiall Discipline.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Z<sub>2</sub>.—36 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another copy (in B.M.) has the name, T. East, in the imprint, substituted for the initials, T. E.; in both, the imprint is partly defaced. Ames (p. 1013) gives an ed. of 1582, “Now imprinted, and devided into three books. Whereunto is added, the order and use of the Spaniards in their martiall affairs: which Copie was lately found in the Fort in Ireland, where the Spaniards and Italians had fortified themselues.—The third Book comprehendeth the very right order of the Spaniards, how to traine, march & encampe, with diuers Tables therein contained. *Londini excudebat T. E. Impensis Milonis Jfenyngs.*”

Another ed.: “*Pathway to Martiall Discipline. Entered to Thomas Cadman 13 May. 1588. vj<sup>s</sup>.*”—Arber, ii. 490.

*Contents.* A compilation from many sources, Italian, German, French, and English, brought up to date. The contents may be gathered from the title-page. The numerous diagrams are taken chiefly from other works.

29. Fifteen-eighty-two. Gutierrez de la Vega, Luis.

A Compendious Treatise, entitled De re militari, containing principall orders to be obserued in Martiall affaires . . . Newlie Translated into English, by Nicholas Lichefield. *Ianuarij primus. 1582. Imprinted at London by Thomas East.*

Quarto.

A-Z<sub>2</sub> in fours. Dedicated to Master Philip Sydney.—Hazlitt, iii. 60. “27<sup>o</sup> Die Novembris [1582]. Entred to Thomas Easte . . . A Treatise Concerning principall orders to be obserued in martiall affaires . . . vj<sup>d</sup>.”—Arber, ii. 403.

30. Fifteen-eighty-four. Corte, Claudio.

The | Art of Riding, containing di- | uerse necessarie in-

structions, demon- | strations, helps, and corrections ap- | per-  
 teining to horsemanship, not | heretofore expressed by | anie  
 other Author : | Written at large in the Italian | toong, by  
 Maister Claudio Corte . . . . | Here brieflie reduced into  
 cer- | teine English discourses to the | benefit of Gentlemen  
 etc. | *Imprinted at London by | H. Denham. | 1584. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Henry Mackwilliam, subs. T. Bedingfield, A2-3; another, A4.—Pref., ¶1-2.—Diags.—R.H.: “The Art of Riding According to Claudio Corte.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A, ¶, B-P; ¶ has 2 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* A trans., by T. Bedingfield, of Bk. II. of Corte’s “Cavallerizzo.” Chap. xxviii., p. 93, is on the manner of using and training horses for war. [V. Orig. 709.]

31. Fifteen-eighty-four. Lingham, John.

A true Relation of all English Captains and Lieutenants as have been slain in the Low Countries, together with those now living : as also of such as are fled to the enemy. *Printed by Roger Ward.*

Octavo.

—Arber, v. 135.

*Copies.* Lamb. Lib.

32. Fifteen-eighty-five. Whetstone, George.

The | honorable | repvtation | of a Souldier : | With a  
 Morall Report, of the Vertues, | Offices, and (by abuse) the |  
 Disgrace of his profession. | Drawen out of the liues, docu-  
 ments, and disciplines, | of the most renowned Romaine,  
 Grecian, | and other famous Martialistes. | By George Whet-  
 stone, Gent. | Malgre de Fortune. | *Imprinted at London, by  
 Richard Jones : dwel- | ling neere unto Holburne Bridge. 1585. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, has woodcut of a man in armour.—Ded. to Sir William Russell and Verses, A2-4.—R.H.: “The honorable Reputation of a Souldier.”—No pag.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-F2.—32 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another Edition. Fifteen-eighty-six.

The | Honourable | Reputatyon of | a Souldier. | . . . . By  
George Whetstone, Gent. | De | Eerweerdighe | Achtbaer-  
heyt Van | Een Soldener. | . . . . *Tot Leyden, | By Jan Paedts  
Jacobszoon, ende Jan Bouwenszoon. | Anno M.D.LXXXVI. | Men  
vintse te coop by Thomas Basson Boeckvercoper | woonende tot |  
Leyden opte breede-straet | by de Blauwe steen. | Met Privilegie  
van zes Iaren. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A<sub>1</sub>.—Imprimatur, A<sub>1</sub>.—Deds., A<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>.—Verses, C<sub>4</sub>.—  
Envoy, I<sub>4</sub>.—Letterpress in double columns, English on left, Dutch on right.  
—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-I. There is a 2nd pt., sigs. K-N, with separate pag. and pref.,  
consisting of a “Short introduction to English speech”, with the Dutch  
translation. This ed. is rare; the copy described is imperfect.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The 1st pt., the author calls “a compilation,” and he describes  
it as meddling “no whit with Millitarie execution, but altogether with Morall  
government, necessarie for a perfect soldier,” exemplified from the lives of  
famous generals, Greek and Roman. It is, he says, “a member or small  
parcell” of a larger book, entitled “The English Mirour,” too voluminous  
for speedy publication.

33. [Fifteen-eighty-six.] Dudley, Robert, Earl of Leicester.

Lawes | and Ordinances, | set downe by Robert | Earle of  
Leycester, | the Queenes Maiesties | Lieutenant and Captaine  
| General of her armie | and forces in the Lowe | Countries :  
| Meete and fit to be obserued by all such as shall serue her  
| Maiestie vnder him in the said Countries, | and therefore to  
be published and | notified to the whole Armie. | *Imprinted at  
London by Christo- | pher Barker, Printer to the Queenes | most  
excellent Maiestie. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A<sub>2</sub>.—Royal Arms, A<sub>2</sub>.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-B<sub>3</sub>.—Rare.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* I have placed the date of printing at 1586, the year after  
Leicester was sent to the Low Countries; his “ordinances,” says Digges,  
were first printed in Leyden, January, 1586 (v. No. 25). In the commission  
of a commander-in-chief, it was usual to insert a clause, authorizing him to

make such rules for the maintenance of discipline among the forces under him as he thought fit. Rymer gives many such commissions; e.g., one to Sir Horace Vere dated Feb. 16, 1622, and another to Thomas, Earl of Arundel, Aug. 29, 1640. These "ordinances" are most interesting as showing the gradual development of our military law.<sup>1</sup> We hear of them for the first time in 1189, when Richard I. drew up regulations for the putting down of quarrels amongst his followers on their way to the Holy Land.<sup>2</sup> Many of the ordinances of Spanish and French generals were issued in MS. only.

34. Fifteen-eighty-seven. [Polman, John.]

The Second | part of the booke | of Battailes, | fought in  
our age: | taken out of the | best authors and writers in sun-  
| drie languages. | Published for the profit of those that |  
practise armes, and for the pleasure | of such as loue to be  
harmlesse | hearers of bloudie | broiles. | *At London | Printed*  
*for Gabri- | ell Carwood. | 1587. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, enclosed in pieces.—Pref., A2-3.—Err., A3<sub>2</sub>—Cts., A4.—R.H.: "The second booke of Battailes."—Nums. to ff.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Y, Aa-Cc2.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The First Part of "The Book of Battles" was entered to Bynne-  
man (Arber, ii. 313; v. No. 21); but so "maimed, mangled and marred by  
the Printer" was it, says the author in the Second Part, that he would not  
permit his name to be put to it. His name is withheld in the Second Part  
also, but Arber gives it as John Polman, I do not know on what authority.  
The battles described here were fought between the printing of the two  
parts, with the exception of the battles of Dreux (1562) and Lepanto (1572).  
All the descriptions, except the last, are from foreign sources, and the name  
of its original author is prefixed to the account of every battle. I know of  
no copy of the First Part.

35. Fifteen-eighty-seven. Bourne, William.

The Arte of shooting in great | Ordnance. | Contayning  
very necessary matters for all sortes of | Seruitoures eyther by  
Sea or by Lande. | Written by William Bourne. | *Imprinted*  
*at London for | Thomas Woodcocke. | 1587. |*

<sup>1</sup> For a history of them, see "Manual of Military Law," chap. ii., by Lord Thring.

<sup>2</sup> Rymer's "Foedera;" and a translation by Grose in the "Military Antiquities,"  
vol. ii. p. 63.

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Dudley, Earl of Warwick, A2.—Pref., A3-6.—Cts., N4.—Col.: "At London, Imprinted by Thomas Dawson for Thomas woodcocke. An. Dom. 1587."—Diags.—R.H.: "The Arte of shooting in great Ordnance."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-N; A has 6 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.

Another Edition. Sixteen-forty-three.

The | Arte | Of | Shooting | In Great | Ordnance. | Con-  
taining Very | Necessary Matters | for all sorts of Servitours  
either | by Sea or by Land. | Written by William Bourne. |  
*London, | Printed in the yeare, 1643. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

With this ed. was combined:

Sixteen-forty-three. Norton, Robert.

The | Gunners | Dialogue | With The Art Of | Great  
Artillery. | By | Robert Norton | Enginier and Gunner.  
*| London, | Printed in the yeare, 1643. |*

*Collation.* Tps., A1 and K1.—Deds. to Ambrose Dudley, Earl of Warwick, A2, and to the Duke of Buckingham, K2.—Cts., A3.—Pref., B1-2.—Diags.—Tables (3 folding).—R.H.: "The Art of shooting in great Ordnance" and "The Gunners Dialogue."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-N1.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.

*Contents.* As the first Englishman to write on gunnery, Bourne deserves great credit, although little is to be found in his work that was not taken from foreign books. Until it appeared, there was nothing printed in our language, in a connected form, whereto a gunner could go for instruction, and as he remarks, Englishmen had no knowledge of gunnery but what they had learned of the Dutch and Flemings in the time of Henry VIII. According to Robins ("New Principles of Gunnery") he was the second writer to test by experiment the theories of Tartaglia, Collado being the first. Bourne mentions "ricochet fire," but does not advocate its use against works; it remained for Vauban, just a hundred years later, to make practical rules for its employment, and to use it, with more or less success, at the sieges of Phalsbourg and Mannheim in 1688, and of Aeth in 1697.

36. Fifteen-eighty-seven. Rich, Barnaby.

A Path-way | to Military practise. | Containinge Offices, |

Lawes, Disciplines and orders to | be obserued in an Army,  
 with sun- | dry Stratagems very beneficiall | for young Gentle-  
 men, or any o- | ther that is desirous to haue | knowledge in  
 Martiall | exercises. | Whereunto is annexed a | Kalender of  
 the Imbatteling of | men : Newlie written by Barnabe | Rich  
 Souldiour, seruaunt to | the right honorable Sir Chris- | topher  
 Hatton Knight. | Malui me diuitem esse quam | vocari. |  
 Perused and allowed. | *At London | Printed by John Charle-*  
*wood, for | Robert Walley. 1587. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tps., A1 and I4, enclosed in pieces.—Royal Arms, A12.—Two  
 Deds., the first to Queen Elizabeth, A2-4.—Pref., B1-D3.—Err., L4.—No  
 pag.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-L.—34 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.; Lambeth.

*Contents.* The 2nd tp. is prefixed to the “Kalender of the Imbatteling  
 of men.” Rich speaks of “the ‘shot on horseback,’ or, as they have been  
 recently called, ‘Carabines.’” Meyrick says that “Carabines” are first  
 mentioned in “The extraordinaries of war in Picardie,” Henry II. of France  
 employing them as light cavalry, in that province, in 1559. They carried  
 a carabin, whence their name, and either a pistol or petronel. The  
 “stratagems” are merely quotations, taken chiefly from ancient writers.

37. Fifteen-eighty-seven. La Noue, François de.

The | Politicke And | Militarie Discovr- | ses Of the lord |  
 De La Nowe. | Whereunto are adioyned cer- | taine obserua-  
 tions of the same Au- | thor, of things happened du- | ring the  
 three late ciuill | warres of France. | With a true declaration  
 of ma- | nie particulars touching the | same. | All faithfully  
 translated out of the French by | E. A. | *At London | Printed*  
*for T. C. and E. A. by Thomas | Orwin. 1587. |*

Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, enclosed in pieces.—Ded. to George, Earl of Cum-  
 berland, A2-3; another to Henry of Navarre, A4-7.—Table, A7,8.—  
 Col.: “Imprinted At London by Thomas Orwin for Thomas Cadman and  
 Edward Aggas, 1588.”—R.H.: “Politicke and Militarie Discovrses.”—Sigs.  
 in 8<sup>s</sup>, A-Z, Aa-Gg7.—40 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* A standard work of the time. It was published without the knowledge or permission of the author, being collected and digested into one volume, out of a heap of waste paper, by his friend, M. de Fresnes, whom the troubles in France had enforced to keep company, for eight or nine months, as a banished man, with de La Noue, during his captivity in the Low Countries. Liberty had been offered to the great general by Philip II., if he would, by consenting to the putting out of his eyes, render himself incapable of ever again serving against Spain. These terms were rejected, and de La Noue wiled away some of the hours of his five years' imprisonment in writing these Discourses, which, esteemed by himself as mere scribbles, not worth the reading, have gained him an assured place among the writers of his century.<sup>1</sup> La Noue was nicknamed by his contemporaries, "Bras de fer."

Discourses: XIII. pp. 169-176. On the necessity of a standing army of, at least, four regiments of foot. XIV. pp. 177-184. Of the French Legionaries; their numbers, pay, composition, training and choice of officers. XV. pp. 184-190. On Cavalry; their arms, formations, etc.; the necessity of forming them into squadrons for fighting purposes. XVI. pp. 190-194. On "Camarades" or special followers of Captains. XVII. pp. 194-197. On rewards to soldiers. Discourse XVIII. (pp. 198-203) contains Four Military Paradoxes: I. That a squadron of Reisters should beat a squadron of spears; II. That 2,500 Corselets and 1,500 Harquebusiers may more easily retire three French leagues in a plain than 2,000 spears; III. That it is expedient for a Captain to have sustained an overthrow; IV. That daily experience have taught such means to fortify Holds, as are more profitable in respect of the small charge thereof, and no less defensible than such stately ones as the Engineers have aforesaid invented. Page 346 to end. Certain observations of divers things that happened in the three first troubles of France, with a true report of the same.

Three more French technical treatises of about this time have been unfortunately lost. They were written by Sully, the minister and "maître d'artillerie" of Henry IV. (1553-1610), and were entitled "Traité de la guerre", "Le Maréchal de Camp", and "Instructions de milice et de police." —Karcher, "Ecrivains Militaires."

Edward Aggas, who was a stationer, translated many French pamphlets. [V. Orig. 560.]

### 38. Fifteen-eighty-eight. Tartaglia, Niccolo.

Three | bookes of Colloquies con- | cerning the arte of shoot-  
ing in | great and small peeces of artillerie, variable | randges,

<sup>1</sup> For an account of de La Noue see "Correspondance de François de la Noue," by Philip Kervyn de Volckersbaersbeke, Paris, 1854.



measure, and waight of leaden, yron, and marble stone pellets,  
| minerall saltepeeter, gunpowder of diuers sortes, and the  
cause why some sortes of | gunpowder are corned, and some  
sortes of gunpowder are not corned : Written in Italian, | and  
dedicated by Nicholas Tartaglia vnto the Royall Prince of  
most famous me- | morie Henrie the eight, late King of  
England, Fraunce, and Ireland, de- | fender of the faith. &c.  
And now translated into English by Cypri- | an Lvcар Gent.  
who hath also augmented the volume of | the saide Colloquies  
with the contents of euery Colloquie, | and with all the Co-  
rollaries and Tables, that are in | the same volume. | Also the  
saide Cyprian Lvcар hath annexed vnto the | same three  
bookes of Colloquies a Treatise named Lvcар Appendix col-  
lected | by him out of diuers Authors in diuers languages, . . .  
*Printed at London for John Harrison. 1588. |*

Folio.

#### Second Titlepage.

A treatise | named Lvcар Appendix, | collected by Cyprian  
Lvcар gen- | tleman, ovt of diuers good avthors | in diuers  
languages : | To shewe vnto the Reader the properties, office,  
and dutie of a | Gunner, and to teach him to make, and refine  
artificiall Saltpeter : to | sublime brimstone for gunpowder, to  
make coles for gunpowder, to make gunpowder of di- | uers  
sorts & of diuers colours, to make gunmatches, touchwood  
and firestones, to know the | waight and measure of any pellet,  
to make carriages, ladles, rammers, scourers, and cartred- | ges  
for any great peece of artillerie, to know the proportioned  
length, due thickness, and | waight of euery great peece of  
artillerie, to know what number of men, horses, or Oxen wil  
| drawe any great peece of artillerie, to make platformes for  
great ordinance, to make gabbi- | ons of earth for the defence  
of gunners in time of seruice, to charge euery great peece of  
| artillerie with his due charge in serpentine gunpowder, and

also in corne gunpowder, | to shoote well at any marke within point blanke, to shoote well at any marke vpon a hill, | or in a valley without poynt blanke, to shoote well at a marke in any darke night, to mount | mortar peeces to strike any appointed marke, to tell whether a thing seene farre of doth | stand still, come towards him, or goe from him, to make and vse diuers Trunkes, and many | sortes of fire workes, to make mynes, to measure altitudes, longitudes, latitudes, and pro- | fundities, to draw the true plat of any place, and to do other commendable things which not | onelie in time of warre, but also in time of peace may to a good end be practised. | . . . | *Anno domini*. 1588. |

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp., .:1.—Arms of Dudley, .:1<sub>2</sub> and G<sub>5</sub>.—Harrison's Ded. to Robert, Earl of Leicester, .:2-3.—Tartaglia's Ded. to Henry VIII., .:3<sub>2</sub>-4.—Verses, .:4<sub>2</sub>.—Arms of Lucar, G<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>.—2nd title, G<sub>5</sub>.—R.H.: "The first (-third) booke of Colloquies" and "Lucar Appendix."—Col.: "At London | Printed by Thomas Dawson, for Iohn Harrison the elder, | at the Signe of the Greyhounde in Paules Churchyarde, | And are there to be solde. | 1588. | ", R<sub>6</sub>.—Err., R<sub>7</sub>.—Separate pag. to each treatise, but continuous sigs., .:(4 ff.), A-Q in 6<sup>s</sup>, and R (8 ff., the last blank).

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.; W.O.

*Contents.* A translation of Bks. I., II., and III. of the "Quesiti et Inventioni Diverse" of Tartaglia. I append a translation of the headings of Bks. IV., V., and VI., which have not been turned into English; Bks. VII., VIII., and IX. do not deal with military matters. Bk. IV. Concerning the ordering of armies in battle in various and diverse forms and the manner of dividing them while on the march. Also . . . a new way of suddenly changing a square formation into a "wedge" without disarranging the first order, with other particulars. Bk. V. On drawing correctly with the compass places, districts, and also the plans of cities, with the manner of making the said compass in two ways; which science by Ptolemy is called Choregraphy. Bk. VI. On the manner of fortifying cities in these days, so as to withstand the heavy blows of artillery by the strength of the outline, with other ingenious particulars, never till now heard of or even thought of. Tartaglia's first work, the "Nuova Scientia," of which the "Quesiti" is an enlargement, is in three Bks. [V. 658]; the headings of two more appear in the Table of Contents, but these were never published: Bk. I. On falling bodies and projectiles. Bk. II. On the flight of projectiles. Bk. III. On the measurements of heights and distances. Bk. IV. was to be on the laying of guns, and Bk. V. on Fireworks.

Tartaglia's father, a letter-carrier of Brescia, of surname unknown, but who, on account of his low stature and occupation, was commonly called Little Michael the Courier, died when Nicholas was six years old, leaving his family no other heritage than a good name. At the sack of Brescia in 1512, Nicholas fell into the hands of some French soldiers, who wounded him frightfully on the skull, fracturing his jaw. His mother, having no money to buy ointments, cured him by washing the wounds continually with water; in later years he was obliged to wear a beard to hide the monstrous scars, and, being unable to speak plainly on account of the injury to his jaw, he was nicknamed by his playmates "Tartaglia" (the Stammerer). He was almost entirely self-taught. He relates how, when he was about fourteen years old, he put himself to school. The agreement was that he should pay one-third of the fee beforehand, one-third when he had learnt half the alphabet, and the remainder when he had learnt it all. At the end of a fortnight he had learnt the letters to K, and then, being unable to pay the last instalment, he quitted the school, having first obtained, for self-instruction, copies of the complete alphabet, and some letters written by his master. From that day he had no other teacher than "a certain daughter of Poverty named Industry." His attention was not directed to military matters until 1531; up to that time he took no delight in such things, nor ever thought to do so. He had not even remarked the plan of the defences of the fortified towns in which he had resided. A question asked him as to what elevation should be given to Artillery in order to obtain the greatest range first induced him to write on the science of gunnery; but, becoming convinced that it was wrong to study to improve an art intended for the destruction of human beings, he ceased his investigations, and burnt all his papers. However, in 1537, on the rumour spreading that Soloman II. of Turkey was preparing for an attack on Christendom, he hastily re-wrote and published them, some in lectures and some through the press, the latter under the title of "Nuova Scientia." This work aroused great interest. In estimating the value of his writings so far as concerns gunnery, it must be borne in mind that Leonardo da Vinci's notes on that subject were in MS., and therefore unknown, save perhaps to two or three persons. Tartaglia's researches were thus, at that time, with reason termed a "new science," and questions concerning them came to him from all sides. With the aid of the memoranda he had made of these questions, and of his answers to them, he wrote the "Quesiti," which was published in 1546. This account is given by Tartaglia himself in the 6th book of the "Quesiti," and in the Preface to that and to the "Nuova Scientia." He died in Venice in 1557, famous and much esteemed.

Tartaglia was the first to inquire into the nature of the curve described by projectiles. His claim to the invention of the Quadrant is disputed by Collado, who quotes a passage from Santbech's edition of Regiomontanus (1561) in support of this view, wherein the elevation of a piece to an angle

of 45° is said to give the greatest range. But even if this passage is actually Regiomontanus', and not, as some think, Santbech's, it does not interfere with Tartaglia's claim, which is not so much to the discovery of the correct elevation to give to a piece as to that of the instrument for determining that elevation. By means of lines, Tartaglia shows the diameters of various cannon-balls then in use. In measuring these according to our present standard, one must not omit to take into account various accidental circumstances, such as the shrinkage of paper, etc.<sup>1</sup> Many of his theories strike us now, of course, as ludicrous, as, for instance, one in Coll. IV., which is, that if two consecutive shots are fired from a piece, the second will travel further than the first, because "it doth find the air not only wholly stirred with the pellet of the first shot, but also much tending or going towards the place to which it is shot." He tells an absurd story of "how a piece that had been oft-times charged and discharged, drew into its concavity a little dog; which by chance did in going by, smell the mouth of it."

[V. Orig. 660.]

39. Fifteen-eighty-eight. Lucar, Cyprian.  
 A Treatise | Named Lucar Appendix | . . . |  
 V. Tartaglia, Nicholas, No. 38.
40. Fifteen-eighty-eight.  
 The martiall shewes of horsemen before her maiestie at  
 Sainct James.  
*Entered to John Wolf, 7 Sept. 1588.*—Arber, ii. 499.
41. Fifteen-eighty-nine. Fourquevaux, Raimond de Beccarie de  
 Pavie, Sieur de.  
 Instructions for | the warres. | Amply, learnedly, and poli-  
 tiquely, | discoursing the method of Militarie | Discipline. |  
 Originally written in French by that rare and | worthy  
 Generall, Monsieur William de Bellay, | Lord of Langey,  
 Knight of the order of | Fraunce, and the Kings Lieute-  
 nant in Thuriñ. | Translated by Paule Iue, Gent. | *At London*  
 | *Printed, for Thomas Man, and | Tobie Cooke. 1589. |*  
 Black letter. Quarto.

<sup>1</sup> De Morgan ("Arithmetical Books") goes fully into this.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to William Davison, A2.—Verses, A3-4.—Author's pref., B1-b2.—Cts., b2.—Diags., one folding.—R.H.: "The . . . Booke of Militarie Discipline."—Sigs. in 8°, A, B (2 ff.), C-Y4; A and B in 4°.—38 and 37 ll. to p. (See No. 42.)

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* One of the most famous, most widely read, and most widely quoted of sixteenth century books on the military art. The titlepage of the 4th ed. of the original (Rigaud, Lyons, 1592), states that the work was "first executed and compiled by the author from what he had read in Ancient and Modern writers, such as Polybius, Vegetius, Frontinus, Cornazan and others, as well as from what he had seen and done in the armies and wars of his time." For a century de Fourquevaux's work was ascribed, almost without question, to Du Bellay, such writers as Brantôme<sup>1</sup> and Naudé<sup>2</sup> helping to perpetuate the mistake; and even now, it is commonly, for convenience' sake, spoken of as Du Bellay's. Grudé de la Croix Dumaine,<sup>3</sup> indeed, doubted his claim, on the ground that the author praises himself for his learning and soldiership. "Had he read the work attentively," Bayle remarks, "he would have found other and stronger proofs." At last, in 1643, J. Du Brai sent to the press François de Fourquevaux's MS., "Les Vies de plusieurs capitaines françois,"<sup>4</sup> written many years before, in which François states the "Instructions" to be his father's work, and proves it historically impossible that Du Bellay should have written it. The mistake arose through the finding among Du Bellay's papers of a MS. of the original, which had been sent to him by the author, that he might pass judgment upon it, and had never been returned. "If the Author's kinsman had acquainted the public with the truth of this fact," says Bayle,<sup>5</sup> "before the Sieur de Naudé had published his Syntagma de Studio Militari, it is probable that this Syntagma would not have contained the common error." De Fourquevaux's claim, however, is not uncontested; some, like Voltaire, attributing the work to Francis I.

Raimond de Fourquevaux (1509-1574), a Gascon belonging to a family of the robe, was engaged in many of the campaigns of his time, and also in various diplomatic missions to Italy, Germany, and Spain.

"The Instructions" consists of three books of 12, 7, and 5 chapters respectively, dealing with recruiting, arming, exercising and manoeuvring of troops, cavalry, marches, victualling, encampments, crimes and punishments, rewards for good service, etc. De Fourquevaux has taken his description of a battle (Bk. I., chap. xi.) from Macchiavelli.

[V. Orig. 515.]

<sup>1</sup> "Mémoires des grands capitaines François," Leyde, 1666, 12°.

<sup>2</sup> "Syntagma de Studio Militari," Rome, 1637, 4°.

<sup>3</sup> "Bibliothèque," Paris, 1584, fol.

<sup>4</sup> Paris, 1643, 4°, pp. 331-334.

<sup>5</sup> "Dictionnaire Historique," Rotterdam, 1720, fol., vol. i., p. 497.

42. Fifteen-eighty-nine. Ive, Paul.

The | Practise | of Fortification : | wherein is shewed the  
manner of | fortifying in all sorts of scituations, with | the  
considerations to be vused in delining, | and making of royal  
Frontiers, Skon- | ces, and reinforcing of ould | walled Townes.  
| Compiled in a most easie, and compendious method, | by  
Paule Iue. Gent. | *Imprinted at London by Thomas Orwin, for  
Thomas | Man, and Toby Cooke. 1589. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., Aa1.—Ded. to Sir William Brooke, Lord Cobham, Aa2.  
—Diags. (one folding).—Err., Gg2.—R.H.: “The practise of Fortification.”  
—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, Aa-Gg2.—Aa, a 2<sup>n</sup>.—36 and 37 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.; W.O.

*Contents.* Printed for publication either separately, or with the “Instruc-  
tions for the Warres” [No. 41]. Chaps.: I. On choice of position for a  
fort. II. Ground in relation to forts. III. On the delineation or trace of  
a work. IV. On earthworks. V. On fortifying old walled towns.

43. Fifteen-eighty-nine.

Policies of War Collected out of sundry Authors.

*Entered to Master Gawwood warden 4 Sept. 1589. vj<sup>d</sup>.—Arber, ii. 529.*

44. Fifteen-eighty-nine. Meier, Albert.

Certaine briefe, and | speciall Instructions for Gen- | tlemen,  
merchants, students, souldiers, | marriners, etc. Employed in  
seruices | abrode, or anie way occasioned to | conuerse in the  
kingdomes, and | gouernementes of | forren Princes. | *London,  
| Printed by John Woolfe, | 1589. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Sir Francis Drake, subs. Philip Jones,  
A2-3.—Lat. verses, A4 and D4.—Cts., B1.—R.H.: “Instructions for  
Trauellers.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-D.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Lowndes says that he saw a copy of this extremely rare book  
entered in a bookseller’s catalogue as being dedicated to Sir Walter Raleigh;  
but the catalogue was probably in error. The original was written at the

command of Henry Kanyon, Lord of Bredenberg, Councillor to Christian III., King of Denmark. The translation, being published just before the expedition of Drake and Norris to Lisbon, was dedicated to the former at the suggestion of Hakluyt. It has been considerably amplified from the original. Of the twelve sections, the fifth, entitled "Topographie, or the portraiture of particular places," is for the use of soldiers, and contains a full list of points to be noted in making a reconnaissance.

[V. Orig. 561.]

45. Fifteen-ninety. Williams, Sir Roger.

A | Briefe discourse of | Warre. | Written by Sir Roger Williams | Knight; With his opinion concer- | ning some parts of the | Martiall Disci- | pline. | *Imprinted at London, by Thomas Orwin, | dwelling in Paternoster Row, ouer a- | gainst the Signe of the Checker.* | 1590. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Robert, Earl of Essex, A2.—Pref., A3-4.—Err., I4.—No R.H.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-I.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another edition: "Two editions of this year."—Arber, v. 158.

*Contents.* An account of the Spanish discipline as practised during the wars in the Low Countries up to 1590; describing the divisions of the cavalry and infantry, order of marching, conduct of sieges, and touching on the system of fortification. Williams had a great opinion of the value of Light Horse, and he draws three comparisons: one between Lancers and Men-at-arms, or Heavy Cavalry, one between Lancers and Argoletiers, and a third between Lancers and Pistoliers. Lancers, he says, in charging "should enter resolutely and keep close together," not heeding the breaking of their lances. The work, though short, contains much information that at the time of publication was new in England; it succeeded in establishing a case for the new system of warfare against that advocated in England by the elder generation of military men, headed by Sir John Smythe, who maintained that the bow was at least as good, if not better, than any fire-arm, and that the adoption of the system of Williams and his school could end only in disaster to the country.<sup>1</sup>

[V. No. 46 and 93.]

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Julian Corbett has pointed out to me that it was this book of Williams' that finally put an end to the use of the long-bow in the English service. In working on the sequel to his "Drake and the Tudor Navy" (London, 1898, 8°), he has, he says, found clear evidence that this was so. In corroboration of this, I may add the

46. Fifteen-ninety. Smythe, Sir John.

Certain | Discourses, written | by Sir John Smythe, Knight :  
 | Concerning the formes and effects of | diuers sorts of weapons,  
 and other verie | important matters Militarie, greatlie mis-  
 taken by | diuers of our men of warre in these daies ; and |  
 chiefly, of the Mosquet, the Caliuier and the Long-bow ; | As  
 also, of the great sufficiencie, excellencie, and | wonderful  
 effects of Archers : With many notable | examples and other  
 particularities, by him presen- | ted to the Nobilitie of this  
 Realme, & published for | the benefite of this his natieue  
 Countrie of England. | *At London, | Printed by Richard Iohnes,*  
*at the signe of | the Rose and Crowne neere Holburne | Bridge.*  
 1. Maij. 1590. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., \*1.—Ded., \*2-4, \*\*, \*\*\*, A, (a)1 ; 16 ff.—Authors con-  
 sulted, (a)2.—Err., (a)2.—Pious ejaculation on last page, in large roman  
 type: “Honor & gloria in excelsis Deo, | omnipotenti, sempiterno, & |  
 incomprehensibile. | Amen.” | —R.H.: “Certen Discourses, written by Sir  
 John Smythe, Knight.”—Nums. to ff.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, \*, \*\*, \*\*\*, A, (a), B-  
 O2 ; (a) has 2 ff.—The suppression of this book within a fortnight of its pub-  
 lication has made it rare. I have seen a copy in a bookseller’s cat. of 1889  
 described as “a fine copy, binding by Bedford,” price £2 2s.

There is another copy in the B.M. identical in all respects, save that the  
 “Ejaculation” is in italic; “amen” in roman. The pag. in both copies is  
 faulty, but with the exception of p. 32, numbered 23, the mistakes do not  
 occur on the same ff.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.; Lambeth.

*Contents.* This is commonly called the “Book on Weapons.” Smythe,  
 in the Proëme, attacks the disorderly proceedings of certain officers at home,

following: among the records of the city of Leicester is an order from the Lord  
 Lieutenant of the county, the Earl of Huntingdon, dated April 29th, 1598, for levying  
 forty men; which order states, that in the time of the former Earl “for the 500  
 trayned soldiars in this Countie Levyed, the Town of Leicester was then charged w<sup>th</sup>  
 the furnishing of ffortie men, viz. xij Calivers, iiij Muskits, xj ‘Bowes and Arrowes’,  
 viij Corsletts and pikes and v bills; Nowe their Lordships’ pleasures are that all the  
 Bowes and Arrowes and bills generally must be refused, and supplied only with mus-  
 ketts, and viij Corsletts w<sup>th</sup> pikes.” (See “Proc. Leicester Lit. and Phil. Soc.,” 1855.  
 Paper by Wm. Kelly.)



and in the Low Countries, and, while disclaiming any private hatred or malice, declares that all abuses are to be traced to the rise of the "detestable new discipline;" and he accuses the followers of Leicester, in particular, of dishonesty and greed of gain, especially in the advice they gave the Queen's favourite during his command in the Low Countries in 1585-6, and in England in 1588. His account of the state of affairs is corroborated by Digges in the "Paradoxes," and by others, although the corruption is traced by them to a different cause. The whole treatise is a protest against the changes in the military art, which, since Smythe's youth, had gradually been gaining ground, and were now being tested in the Low Countries. He sets his face against any alteration, whether in training or arming. Even as regards fire-arms, though, in his opinion, all are inferior to the Long Bow, yet those in use in his time are to be preferred to those of more recent invention. For example, he considers 'that harquebusses, by many miscalled calivers, though as good fifty years ago as at the time of writing, were better than muskets; which, being of greater length and height of bullet, and more ranforced, were heavier; and, moreover, required to be fired from rests; a necessity which precluded their employment in skirmishes.' "All the . . . imperfections [in the loading of harquebus and musquet]" he goes on "are the causes that upon many great skirmishes that have been verie hot, and continued many hours, with new supplies on every side, it hath often happened, that in discharging on both sides many thousand of bullets within three, four, or five scores, and nearer, there hath not been on both sides slain and hurt with bullets, thirty men." As regards the maximum effective range of the musket, the Spaniards, he says, put it at 8 to 10 score,<sup>1</sup> a statement which Barwick, however, contradicts. When one considers the imperfections of the fire-arms of that age, one can understand how it was that old soldiers like Sir John should be prejudiced in favour of the bow, which had proved so effective in times past. He was not alone in his prejudice, as we may learn from Barwick, in the Preface of his reply to this book; and thirty years later (1634) Markham was advocating the raising of bands of archers as auxiliaries to the trained bands.

Sir John Smythe was the son of a sister of Jane Seymour, and consequently first cousin to Edward VI. He had studied the military art abroad, under Maximilian II. and other princes,<sup>2</sup> and became eventually an accomplished soldier. In 1576 he was sent by Elizabeth to Philip II.,<sup>3</sup> in order to intercede on behalf of the Netherlands; but the Queen's favour was later on withdrawn, and no further employment was given him; a reverse

<sup>1</sup> Throughout this treatise, the word "yard" or "yards" is to be understood after these calculations.

<sup>2</sup> "Instructions and Orders Mylitarie" [No. 60] (¶¶¶4).

<sup>3</sup> Egerton MSS. 2790. Instructions on his mission to the King of Spain.

in fortune that he ascribed "to the malicious and false reports of Leicester." This fact would account for the feelings of personal animosity displayed in his book on Weapons<sup>1</sup> against the adherents of Leicester, and it probably increased his bitterness against the followers of the "new discipline," who, having learnt their art, as the Queen's favourite (now dead) had done, in the "tumultuarie and disorderly" wars of the Low Countries, and in France, affected to despise old soldiers, who, like Sir John himself, had gained their experience in "the well ordered wars of Emperours and Kings." This party now used their influence at Court to obtain the suppression of the book, and having gained their end,<sup>2</sup> they spread the report that its circulation was prohibited on account of its falsehood and foolishness, and that its author "was judged by her Majesty and her council" to have been for some years in his dotage; and they threatened still further vengeance. Smythe affirms that the instigator of this persecution was "a couninge, malicious and skillfull deviser and practicer who, in truth, being the first and cheaf inventor, beginner and practiser of the newe detestable discipline in the lowe countries so plainly mentioned in my booke, doth find himselfe so touched in his guiltie conscience, that underhand, with all the malicious skill that he hath, he doth invent, procure and force others of his owne discipline (not so guiltie as himself) to iniure me both by worde and writings." This anonymous enemy I believe to have been Sir Roger Williams.<sup>3</sup> Indignant that his book, so well liked, as he says, by all the better sort of men in the realm, should be suppressed "so greatly to his reproach and shame," Smythe wrote repeatedly<sup>4</sup> to the Lord Treasurer Burleigh, praying that the restraint might be taken off, or that he might be allowed to reprint it with corrections; on one occasion enclosing a letter to the Queen, in order that the Treasurer "might see he was determined to stand by his book." But it does not appear that his request was granted; and this may be the cause of the grudge he bore the Lord Treasurer, to which he confessed some years later. In 1596 he was again in trouble; this time for a turbulent speech made to the militia, training near Colchester. Being brought before the Star Chamber, he confessed, and was committed to the Tower, whence he sent a submissive letter to Burleigh, offering to write an apology for publication, and praying that his punishment might consist in confinement to his own

<sup>1</sup> Written in 1589, the year following Leicester's death.

<sup>2</sup> It was suppressed by warrant, May 14, 1590.

<sup>3</sup> Lansdowne MSS. lxiv. 65. Reasons ascribed for his quarrels with Sir Roger Williams.

<sup>4</sup> Lansdowne MSS. lxiv. 43, 45, 52, 57; lv. 62. Letters concerning the suppression of his book. In another letter (Lansd. lxxx.), dated Mar. 1, 1591, he asks that two of his books, one "an old book which he has amended," and another on "Arithmetical Tables," may be printed.

house.<sup>1</sup> On Feb. 6th, 1597, he was still in the Tower. On July 13th, 1598, he wrote again to the Lord Treasurer, from Little Baddow, "My poor house and prison," as he calls it, expressing himself as "content within his restraint, as though he had all England and Europe to travel in at his pleasure."

In a letter of May, 1590, Smythe speaks of four or five little books that he had written, all treating, more or less, on matters of arms. Among the Harleian MSS.<sup>2</sup> in the British Museum is preserved a transcription of an unpublished treatise of his, entitled "A Military Discourse, whether it be better for England to giue an Invador present Battaile, or to temporize and deferr the same." It was written in answer to Thomas Digges' letter to Leicester, entitled "A briefe discourse what orders were best for repulsing of forraigne force, if at any tyme they should invade us in Kent or elsewhere."<sup>3</sup>

47. Fifteen-ninety. Valdes, Francisco de.

The Serieant Maior. A Dialogue of the Office of Sergeant Maior. . . . Translated into Englishe, by Iohn Thorins. London. Printed by John Wolfe. 1590.

Quarto.

A-H in fours, and a leaf of I. Dedicated by Thorins to Sir John Norris, President of Munster.—Hazlitt, iii. 63.

The ed. of the original, Brussels, 1589, is always accompanied by the "Discurso sobre la Disciplina militar" of Londoño, and, indeed, one work is the complement of the other. Valdes and Londoño were eminent soldiers who managed equally well the baton, the sword, and the pen. "El Espejo," as Valdes' work is entitled in the Spanish, like the "Disciplina," was written, probably, about 1568. It is in dialogue, a form much affected by these early writers, the speakers being Vargas and Londoño; and describes the office and duties of the Sergeant Major, an officer corresponding to the modern adjutant, concerning whom the following description is given in the opening pages: "The Sergeant Major is an officer, the minister general of the whole regiment, superintending the Sergeants of the same: through whom the Master of the Camp, or Colonel, gives the orders necessary for right government and ordering in marching, quartering, and fighting, and things thereunto appertaining." "Everything is admirably explained," says Almirante, "and the rules laid down are most sensible."

[V. No. 48 and Orig. 562.]

<sup>1</sup> Lansd. MSS. lxxxii. 65, 66, 67, 71. Sedition and Confession.

<sup>2</sup> Harl. MSS. 4685.

<sup>3</sup> Included in the 2nd ed. of the "Stratoticos," 1590.

48. Fifteen-ninety. Londoño, Sancho de.

Military Discipline. "*John Wolf. 5 Decembris. [1589]. Entred for his copyes . . . a booke entitled military discipline sett forth in Spanish by Don Sancho De lomdonno maestro Del Campo. and one other booke entitled the office of the Sergeant maiour : done by the same Auēthor. xij<sup>a</sup>.*"—Arber, ii. 536.

For "The Office of the Sergeant Major," see No. 47. By "author" is meant the translator, John Thorins. I have neither seen, nor heard, of any copy of this translation. [V. Orig. 563.]

49. Fifteen-ninety. Segar, Sir William.

The Booke | Of Honor | and Armes. | *At London, | Printed by Richard Ihones, dwelling at the signe of | the Rose and Crowne neere Holburne | Conduit. 1590. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* The frontispiece (unsigned) has the following title, enclosed in woodcuts: "The Booke | Of Honor | and Armes. | Wherein is discoursed the | causes of Quarrell, and the na- | ture of Iniuries, with | their re- pulses. | Also the meanes of satisfac- | tion and pacification ; with di- | uers other things necessarie to | be knowne of all Gentlemen | and others professing | Armes and Honor. | Fortes & magnanimi sunt habendi, | non qui faciunt, sed qui propulsant | iniuriam. | "; on verso arms of Sir Christopher Hatton.

Tp. (unsigned).—Ded. to Sir Christopher Hatton, A<sub>1</sub>, subs. Rich. Jhones.—Pref., A<sub>2</sub>-3.—Cts., A<sub>3</sub>-4.—Woodcuts of the Insignia of the orders of knighthood, and of single combats on foot or horseback.—R.H.: "The . . . Booke of Honor and Armes."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, 2 ff. unsigned, A-N, nn, O-Z<sub>2</sub>.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

*Contents.* A treatise on the rules of heraldry regarding single combats, tournaments, and knighthood. Chap. IV., Bk. IV., on "the priviledges due to all men professing arms," closes with the remark that "no man under the degree of gentleman ought to be received or allowed for a Man-at-Arms on horseback." In Chap. IV., Bk. III., the rule has been laid down that "Men-at-arms may not be refused to fight with any private Captain of footmen."

Grenville's note runs: "Sir E. Brydges in his 'Censura,' like many others, attributes this work to the printer, chiefly on account of the dedication, but Anstis, in 'Register of Garter,' ll. 399, asserts the claim of Segar the Herald to this work as well as to that of 'Honor Military and Civil.'—Monte. Bib. Herald, p. 37. It is of rare occurrence." As to authorship, v. No. 75.

50. Fifteen-ninety. Du Chesne, Joseph, called Quersitanus.

The Sclopetarie of J. Quercetanus . . . or his booke containing the cure of Woundes received by shot of gunne or such like engines of warre. Published into English by I. Hester. *R. Ward for J. Sheldrake.*

Octavo.

Copies. B.M.

Second Edition. Fifteen-ninety-six.

. . . Also the Spagericke Antidotarie for | Gunne-shot of Iosephus | Quirsitanus. | Collected by Iohn Hester. | *London* | *Printed by Vallentine Sims dwelling | on Adling hill at the signe of the | white Swanne. | 1596. |*

Quarto.

Copies. B.M.

This ed. is included in Hester's ed. of the "Hundred and fourteene Experiments and Cures" of Paracelsus, otherwise Bombast von Hohenheim, pp. 54-82. Quersitanus' was one of the most popular of the treatises on gunshot wounds. [V. Orig. 851.]

51. Fifteen-ninety-one. Clayton, Gyles.

The Approued order of Martiall discipline, with euery particuler Offycer his offyce and dutie: with many other stratagemes adioyning to the same. Whereunto is adioyned a second booke, for the true ordering and imbattelling of any number so euer, with the proportions of euery Battell, which best serueth in these our dayes of seruice. Newlie written by Gyles Clayton. *London I[ohn] C[harlewood] for Abraham Kitsonne. 1591.*

Black letter. Quarto. 44 leaves.

Sinker's "Catalogue of English Books . . . in Trinity Coll., Cambridge." (367.)

Another edition: *Printed for Simon Waterson, same size and date.*—Herbert, 1222.

52. Fifteen-ninety-one. Loque, Bertrand de.

Discourses Of | Warre And | single Combat, | Translated  
out of French by | I. Eliot. | *London* | Printed by *John Wolfe*,  
and are to be solde at his shop | right ouer against the great South  
doore of | *Paules*. 1591. |

Black letter. Quarto.

Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-K2.—2nd Tp., G2. [V. Orig. 900.]

A religious treatise on war and duelling.

Copies. B.M.; Bod.

53. Fifteen-ninety-one. Aggas, Edward.

Ordinances | Set foorth by the King, | for the rule and  
gouverne- | ment of his Maiesties | men of warre. | Read and  
published at Caen the | 30. of March. 1591. | Faithfully  
translated out of the | French Coppie Printed at Caen | by  
*E. A.* | *London* | Printed by *John Wolfe*, and are to be solde at  
his | shop right ouer-against the great south | doore of *Paules*.  
1591.

Black letter. Quarto.

Collation. Tp., A1, has Wolfe's device.—4 ff.

Copies. B.M.

Contents. These ordinances prove the almost incredible licence prevailing in foreign armies of the period. They were issued by Henry IV. of France on account of the complaints made "of the infinite oppression" of the peasantry by "men of war," and are intended for the governance of troops in time of peace. Translated by Edward Aggas, the stationer.

54. Fifteen-ninety-one. Garrard, William.

The Arte of | Warre. | Beeing the onely rare booke of  
Mylli- | tarie profession: drawne out of all our late and for-  
| raine seruices, by William Garrard Gentleman, who serued  
the | King of Spayne in his warres fourteene yeeres, and died  
| Anno Domini. 1587. | Which may be called, the true  
steppes of | warre, the perfect path of knowledge, and the  
playne | plot of warlike exercises: as the Reader heereof

shall | plainly see expressed. | Corrected and finished by Cap-  
taine | Hichcock. Anno. 1591. | *At London,* | *Printed for*  
*Roger Warde, dwelling at | the signe of the Purse in the Olde-*  
*balie.* | *Anno. M.D.XCI.* |

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Robert Devereux, Earl of Essex, subs.  
Thomas Garrard, A2-3.—Pref. by Robert Hitchcock, dated 1590, A4.—  
Err., A5.—R.H.: “The Art of Warre.”—Numerous diags., two folding.<sup>1</sup>  
—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Z, Aa-Yy, Aaa-Bbb.—39 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Written in the Low Countries. Returning to England,  
Garrard, shortly before his death, sent the MS. to his near kinsman, Sir  
Thomas Garrard, the writer of the Dedication, by whom it was passed on  
to Hitchcock. The work consists almost entirely of extracts from some of  
the best known military writers of the day, and is not, as the title would  
lead one to suppose, written mainly from practical experience. It is in six  
parts: Bk. I. On the private and corporal, together with the martial laws  
of the field and other necessary matters. Bk. II. On Sergeants, Ensign  
Bearers, Lieutenants and Gentlemen of the Band. How to train, skirmish  
and discover (pp. 56-138). Bk. III. Observations on the government of  
bands, squadrons, and battles; on Captains, Colonels and Sergeant-Majors  
General (pp. 139-224). Bk. IV. On the duties of the “General of Horse-  
men,” Scout-Master, and Marshal of the Field or Camp. In this book are  
shown various battle formations with diagrams, taken from Digges, Styward,  
and Du Bellay. For encampments Cataneo, Digges, Styward, and Du Bellay  
are drawn upon. Bk. V. On the Master of Artillery, and Master Gunner;  
with some general notes on the attack and defence of places, and on fortifica-  
tion (pp. 273-331). Bk. VI. On the High Treasurer, Master of the  
Victuals, Purveyor, Muster Master, General-Captain or Lieutenant, and  
Warlike Councillors of an Army. The Master of Intelligences must be  
conversant with the sending of secret messages, as set out in “Naturalis  
Magia, Cardane Alexix, and others.”

55. Fifteen-ninety-one. Hitchcock, Robert.

A generall proportion and order of prouision, for a yeere of  
three hundred, three-score and fue dayes, to victuall a Garrison  
of one thousande Souldiours.

<sup>1</sup> Herbert, p. 1194, says, “six are on folding sheets.”

Added to Garrard's "Art of Warre" (pp. 353-368). Hitchcock thus describes the contents: "Within this generall proportion, I doe declare first for Bread and Beere, the Bakehouse and Brewhouse, the Grayners for store, the Windmilles, the Horsemylles, with theyr implements: the caske and other necessary things, the charges of men, horses, and carryages to the same belonging, with theyr wages and allowance for theyr trauaile and seruice. How thys proportion is to be prouided, vsed, deliuered and spent, in reading ouer thys little worke following, you shall find very short and playne." This is the first list of its kind to be found in a military book. Reprinted in Arber's "English Garner," vol. ii.

56. Fifteen-ninety-one. Clowes, William.

A prooued practise for all | young Chirurgians, concerning  
| burnings with Gunpowder, and | Sword, Halbard, Pike,  
Launce, | or such other. | Wherein is deliuered with all  
faith- | fulnesse, not onely the true receipts of such | Medi-  
cines as shall make them bolde, but also | sundry familiar  
examples, such as may | leade them as it were by the hand,  
| to the doing of the | like. | . . . Published for the benefite  
of his | Country, by William Clowes, | Maister in Chirurgery.  
| Newly corrected and augmented. | Seene, and allowed,  
according to the | order appoynted. | ¶ *Printed by Thomas  
Orwyn, for | Wydow Broome. 1591. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., enclosed in pieces, ¶.—Ded., ¶2-31.—Arms of Clowes, ¶32.—Ep. to the Reader, etc., ¶4, A-C.—Cts., Ff1-2.—R.H.: "To all the young Practizers of Chirurgerie."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, ¶, A-O, P (32 ff.), Q-Z, Aa-Ff2.—36 ll. to p. The author's own copy, with MS. notes.

*Copies.* B.M.

Second Edition. Fifteen-ninety-six.

A Profitable And Necessarie | Booke of Obseruations, for  
all those that are burned with | the flame of Gun powder, etc.  
and also for curing of | wounds made with Musket and Caliuer  
shot, and other | weapons of war commonly used at this day  
both | by sea and land . . . | . . . *Imprinted at London by  
Edm. Bollifant, | for Thomas Dawson. | 1596. |*



Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded., A2.—R.H.: “Observations for curing of Gunshot.”—41 ll. to p.—Woodcuts.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-S.

*Copies.* B.M.

Third Edition. Sixteen-thirty-seven.

A | Profitable And | Necessarie Booke Of | Observations,  
for all those that are bur- | ned with the flame of Gun-powder,  
&c. and | also for curing of wounds made with Musket and  
| Caliuer shot, and other weapons of warre. . . . The third  
Edition. | London, | Printed by M. Dawson, and are to be sold  
by Benjamin | Allen and Peter Cole. 1637. |

Black letter. Quarto.

57. Fifteen-ninety-three. Sutcliffe, Matthew.

The | Practice, Pro- | ceedings, And | Lawes of armes,  
described out of | the doings of most valiant and ex- | pert  
Captaines, | and confirmed both | by ancient, and moderne  
exam- | ples, and præcedents, | by Matthew Sutcliffe. | . . .  
*Imprinted At Lon- | don by the Deputies of Christopher | Barker  
Printer to the Queenes most ex- | cellent Maiestie. | 1593. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to the Earl of Essex, A2-C1.—Pref., C2-4.—  
Err., Zz4<sub>2</sub>.—R.H.: “The right practice, proceedings, and lawes of Armes.”  
—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Z, Aa-Zz.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.; W.O.; Roy. Art. Inst.; R.U.S.I.; Lambeth.

*Contents.* Sutcliffe, who was a Doctor of Divinity and a Judge Marshal, was, in his own times, much esteemed for his character and writings. This work, which was well known both at home and abroad, urges the importance of military studies. In our time, Colonel von Gizycki and General Maurice have been amongst the foremost in pointing out the necessity of this sort of reading. Sutcliffe's examples and precepts are drawn chiefly from the ancients. He had not much regard for modern soldiers and their writings, and he is one of those who accuse Macchiavelli of presumption in writing of matters of which he had never had experience. Like Digges, he has much to say concerning the evil system of recruiting then in force.



58. Fifteen-ninety-three.

A survey of the new pretended Discipline. *Entered to John Wolf 5 March. 1593. vj<sup>d</sup>.s.*—Arber, ii. 627.

This is, perhaps, by a partisan of Sir John Smythe.

59. [Fifteen-ninety-four?] Barwick, Humfrey.

A Breefe Discourse, | Concerning the force | and effect of  
all manuell weapons of fire, | and the disability of the Long  
Bowe or Ar- | chery, in respect of others of greater | force  
now in vse. | With sundrye probable reasons for the | verri-  
fying therof: the which I haue doone of | dutye towards my  
Soueraigne and Country, | and for the better satisfaction of all  
such | as are doubtfull of the | same. | Written by Humfrey  
Barwick, Gentle- | man, Souldier, Captaine, | Et Encor plus  
oultre. | *At London. | Printed for Richard Oliffe, and are to be  
solde in | Paules Churchyard at the signe of the | Crane. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Henry Carey, Lord Hunsdon, A2-A3.—  
Pref., A4-B3.—Err., L2.—One folding plate.—R.H.: “Certain discourses  
of warre and vse of weapons.”—Nums. to ff.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-L2; L2<sub>2</sub>,  
blank.—35 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Written to refute the arguments used in favour of the long-  
bow in Smythe’s book “On Weapons.” The first ed. appeared soon after  
that book and Williams’, but, as appears from the “advertisement” on folio  
35, it was suppressed and burnt almost immediately, so that Barwick was  
another sufferer in the great controversy. About 1594 the ban was taken  
off, and this ed. was published; the date of which is fixed approximately by  
the death, in 1596, of Lord Hunsdon, to whom it was dedicated. Barwick  
criticises Williams somewhat jealously; and can find in his book “no new  
device, either in government or orders, saving the great number of muskets.”  
For Smythe’s answer, see MSS. Harl. 135.

In pronouncing in favour of the musket, Barwick speaks from long ex-  
perience in the use of all weapons; for when, in 1549, at the age of eighteen,  
he joined the army of Edward VI., the English forces were composed prin-  
cipally of archers; the harquebussiers in a troop, when there were any at all,  
did not exceed fifteen in every hundred of other weapons. Sir Peter  
Mewtas’ band of five hundred was the first armed entirely with fire-arms.

At the time of writing there were 20 calivers, 35 pikes, 30 muskets, and 15 bills, halberds, and partisans in every body of 100. According to this writer the first-named were the invention of Francis, Duke of Guise, uncle of Mary Queen of Scots. He gives some interesting information regarding his pay whilst in the service of his own and foreign princes.

60. Fifteen-ninety-five. Smythe, Sir John.

Instrvctions, | Obseruations, and | Orders Mylitarie. | Requisite for all Chieftaines, Captaines, | and higher and lower men of charge, and Officers | to vnderstand, knowe, and obserue. | Composed by Sir John Smithe Knight, 1591. | And now imprinted. 1595. | *Imprinted at London by Richard Jobnes, at the signe of | the Rose and Crowne next aboue S. Andrewes | Church in Holborne. 1595. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., unsigned.—Cts., A1-2.—Err., A2<sub>2</sub>.—Ded., ¶-¶¶¶¶¶ 1 (13 ff.).—R.H.: “Instruotions and Orders Militarie” and “Instruotions for enrolling and Mustring.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A (2 ff.), ¶, ¶¶, ¶¶¶, ¶¶¶¶ (1 f.), B-Y, Aa-Ee, and 1st f. unsigned.

Herbert, p. 1049, gives the 1st ed.: “And now first Imprinted, 1594. Imprinted at the Rose & Crowne, neer to Saint Andrewes church in Holborne, 1594.”

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

The agitation caused by his first work having subsided, Smythe now returns to the attack. He repeats much of what was contained in the book on Weapons, that is to say, he is still about fifty years behind the times. His manner of embattling a force of 28,000 men might have been that of Somerset at the battle of Musselburgh in 1547. Indeed, it is only the mention of musketeers that distinguishes him from Patten, and from the writings of the two it is possible to gather a good general idea of the state of the army in England in the middle of the sixteenth century. The directions to harquebussiers while skirmishing show how lengthy was the process of loading the harquebus. The book concludes with a chapter on recruiting, with instructions as to arming, clothing, etc. So conservative is the author, that he would reject any man for an archer who should draw his bow with two fingers, after the new fashion, instead of with three, after the old.

61. Fifteen-ninety-four. Grassi di, Giacomo.

Giacomo | Di Grassi his true Arte of Defence, | plainlie teaching by infallable Demonstrations, | apt Figures and per-

fect Rules the manner and | forme how a man without other  
 Teacher or | Master may safelie handle all sortes of | Weapons  
 aswell offensive as defensive : | With a Treatise | Of Disceit  
 or Falsinge : And with a waie or | meane by priuate In-  
 dustrie to obtaine | Strength, Iudgement and | Actiuitie. |  
 First written in Italian by the fore- | said Author, And Eng-  
 lished by | I. G. gentleman. | *Printed at London for I. I. and*  
*are to be sold | within Temple Barre at the Signe of | the Hand*  
*and Starre | 1594. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., ¶1.—Ded. to Lord Borrow, subs. Thomas Churchyard,  
 ¶2.—Author's Ded. and Pref., ¶3-4.—“Advertisement” to the Reader,  
 ¶¶1-2.—20 woodcut ills.—R.H., varied.—No pag.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, ¶, ¶¶  
 (2 ff.), A-R2, Aa-Ee. Very rare.

*Copies.* B.M.; Ashburnham; Bod.

*Contents.* Di Grassi was employed in Treviso as a fencing master. He had intended, he says in his Ep. Ded., to write a treatise on the use of arms on horseback, but I am not aware that he actually did so. This translation was the first book printed in England on the Art of Defence. The unknown writer of the “advertisement” states that fighting with the sword and buckler had been lately discontinued in England, the sword being not much regarded save by serving-men. The rapier was generally used instead, being a weapon more feared, because most perilous. The following is a summary of the contents as given on ¶¶2<sub>2</sub>: The single Rapier, or single Sworde. The rapier and dagger, etc. The rapier and Cloak, etc. The sword and buckler. The sword and square target. The sword and round target. The case of rapiers. The two-handed sword. The weapons of the staff, as the bill, partisan, halberd, javelin. Part II. is on “Falsing,” *i.e.*, on delivering blows and thrusts, intended, not to hit home, but to put an opponent off his guard.

The greater number of books on the sword, especially of the Spanish, are extremely rare; for as text-books on an art necessary for all gentlemen, they were in continual use, and the impressions were soon bought up and thumbed to pieces.<sup>1</sup> Of many of those mentioned by bibliographers there are now no copies in existence, and they are known only by notices in later authors. This has been the fate of the works of Jaime Pons de Perpignan, Pedro de la Torre, and Francisco Roman among the Spaniards, and of Moccio (1509) and Luca (1500-1532) among the Italians; the writings of others again remain to this day in MS. Marozzi's is thus the earliest book of fence ex-

<sup>1</sup> Enrique de Leguina's “Libro de Esgrima,” Madrid, 1891, 8°.

tant, and of the 1st ed. of that only one copy is known. [V. note to Marozzi, 744, and Orig. 746.]

62. Fifteen-ninety-five.

The absolute souldier or the pollicie of armes. Arber, ii. 294: *Entred to Ponsonby 26 March 1595, vj<sup>d</sup>.*

63. Fifteen-ninety-five. Saviolo, Vincentio.

Vincentio | Saviolo | his Practise. | In two Bookes. | The first intreating of the vse of the Rapier | and Dagger. | The second, of Honor and honorable | Quarrels. | London | Printed by Iohn Wolfe. | 1595. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tps., A2 and O1.—Title of Bk. II. runs: “Of | Honor And | Honorable | Quarrels. | The second Booke. | London, | Printed by Iohn Wolfe. | 1594.” | —Ded. to Robert, Earl of Essex, A3-4.—Prefs., B-B3<sub>2</sub> and O2.—Ills.—R.H.: “Vincentio Saviolo his Practise. The first Booke” and “Vincent. Of Honor and honorable Quarrels. The 2 Booke.”—Ff. 1-20 only are numbered.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Z, Aa-Mm; Mm4 blank: between H4 and I1, 12 ff. signed *20, 2020, 202020*, have been inserted, and between Gg4 and Hh1, 2 ff. signed ¶.—Bk. II. is dated a year earlier than Bk. I. Very rare.

*Copies.* B.M.; Ashburnham; Bod.

*Contents.* The author, a well-known and capable instructor in fencing, concerning whom some anecdotes will be found at the end of George Silver's book, resided for thirty years in England, and during that time acquired sufficient knowledge of our language to write this, the first English book on the subject.<sup>1</sup>

64. [Fifteen-ninety-five?]

Mars | His | Feild | or | The Exercise | of Armes. | *And are to be sold by | Roger Daniell at the | Angell in lombard streete.* |

Quarto.

<sup>1</sup> The privilege of printing “Billes for pryses at fencing as masters pryses and Scholars pryse” was granted by the Stationers' Company to Thomas Purfoot.—Arber, ii. 477.

Half-title to Pt. II. : "The | perfect | manner of hand- | ling  
| The sword and | Target | Set forth in Liuely | Figvres |  
with the words of | Command and Breife | Instructions cor-  
res- | pondent to euery | Posture. | "

Emblematic frontispiece, with title "The Military Discipline." The volume consists of 46 engravings, of which the 32 in Pt. I. illustrate the "postures" taken in exercising with the pike and sword.

Another Edition. Sixteen-eleven.

Mars His Feild or The Exercise of Armes, wherein in lively figures is shewn the Right use and perfect manner of Handling the Buckler, Sword and Pike. With the wordes of Command and Breife instructions correspondent to every Posture. *And are to be sold by Roger Daniell at the Angel in Lombard Streete.*

Duodecimo.

According to Mr. Egerton Castle, there is a copy of "Mars his Field" with this title in the Bodleian, but I cannot find it in the Catalogue of that Library.

Sixteen copperplates, with explanatory legends. No text.

65. Fifteen-ninety-five. Hurault, Jacques d', Sieur de Vieul.

Politicke, Moral, | And Martial | Discourses. | Written in French by M. Iaques Hurault, lord of | Vieul and of Marais, and one of the French | kings priuie Councill. | Dedicated by the Author to the French- | kings Maiestie : | And translated into English by Arthur Golding. | *London, | Printed by Adam Islip. | 1595. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to William, Lord Cobham, A2-6; another to Henry IV. of France, by the Author, A6<sub>2</sub>-7.—Cts., A7<sub>2</sub>-8.—R.H., varied.—Sigs. in 8<sup>o</sup>, A-Z, Aa-li.

*Copies.* B.M.; Trin. Coll., Camb.

*Contents.* A collection of essays on various subjects. Pp. 198-211 dis-

cuss "The Justice of war, or Law of Arms." Bk. III. treats of military matters under the following headings: Of Leagues: Of Governors: Of a Lieutenant: The ancient ordering of a Battle: Of Defence: Where or when it is best to fight: Of pitching a Camp: How to encourage soldiers: Of Skirmishes: Of policies in Battle: Of the pursuing of victory: Of the returning of an army: Of ambushes: Of the taking of towns: Of the Defending of towns: Of divers policies and sleights.

The original is unknown to Brunet [v. 579].

66. Fifteen-ninety-six. S., R.

A Briefe Treatise, | To prooue the neces- | sitie and excel-  
lence of the | vse of archerie. | Abstracted out of ancient and  
Moderne | Writers. By R: S. | Perused, and allowed by  
Aucthoritie. | *At London, | Printed by Richard Iohnes, at the  
Rose and Crowne; next | aboute S. Andrewes Church in Holburne.*  
1596.

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., B1.—Ded., "To the Nobilitie and Gentlemen of Eng-  
lande", B2.—R.H.: "The necessitie and Excellencie of Archerie."—31 ll.  
to p.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, B (2 ff.), C, D (2 ff.).

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.; Lambeth.

*Contents.* The author was a disciple and admirer of Sir John Smythe, whose book on Weapons he quotes with approval, due, one may suspect, to his having suffered financially from the decline of archery. The work was written, perhaps, at the instance of the bowyers and fletchers, whose trade was declining as fire-arms were improving.

67. Fifteen-ninety-seven. Mendoza, Don Bernardino de.

Theorique | And Practise | of Warre. | Written to Don  
Philip Prince of Castil, | by . . . | Mendoza. | Translated  
out of the Castilian tonge into Englishe, | by Sr. Edwarde  
Hoby | Knight. | Directed to Sr. George Carew | Knight.  
| 1597. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Translator's Ded., in Spanish, to Sir George Carew, A2-3.—Author's Ded. to Prince of Castile, A3-4.—Imprimatur, dated "At Madrid. the 12. of May, 1595", Y3-2.—R.H.: "Theorique and | Practise of

Warre.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Y. The B.M. copy bears the autograph “W. Bayntun Grays Inn”; also a MS. note: “see the stratagemms & art of war both at land & sea from pag: 18 to end of y<sup>o</sup> book.”

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The author, who had served in the Netherlands under Alva, gives a clear and succinct account of that general's system. In an interesting passage on cavalry, he pronounces for the lance against the pistol, and describes the manner of handling the former arm. Mendoza was the inventor of a piece of artillery made of metal, firing a shot of one pound weight, which, he says, would pierce a two-foot wall; but neither the range nor charge is given. Pp. 82-147 are on sieges; pp. 148-165 on naval matters. There is another trans. amongst the MS. Harl. (4138).

Bernardino de Mendoza was the son of Don Alonso, third Count of Coruña. The date of his birth is uncertain, but there is no doubt he was living all through the long reign of Philip II. In 1574 he became Ambassador to England, but in 1584 was sent out of the country, “on account of his practises.”<sup>1</sup> In 1591, after thirty years of almost continuous service, having become totally blind, he retired to the Monastery of San Bernardo in Madrid; here “the loss of his sight preventing him being other than a mute Councillor,” he wrote the “*Téorica y Práctica de Guerra*” for the use of Philip, Prince of the Asturias, afterwards Philip III. Sir Edward Hoby (1560-1617) was the grandson of the Sir Philip Hoby who had held many important offices under Henry VIII. [V. Orig. 580.]

68. Fifteen-ninety-eight. Barret, Robert.

The | Theorike | and Praçtike | of Moderne Warres, | Discoursed in Dialogue wise. | Wherein is declared the neglect of | Martiall discipline: the inconuenience thereof: the imperfections | of manie training Captaines: a redresse by due regard had: the fittest | weapons for our Moderne Warre: the vse of the same: the parts of | a perfect souldier in generall and in particular: the Officers in degrees, | with their seuerall duties: the imbattailing of men in formes now most | in vse: with figures and Tables to the same: with sundrie other martiall | points. Written by Robert Barret. | Comprehended

<sup>1</sup> In “A Declaration of the Causes Mooving the Queene of England to give aids to the Defence of the People afflicted and oppressed in the Lowe Countries” (1585) will be found “The just causes of dismissing of Bernardino Mendoza out of England.” See also Camden's “Annals” of 2 Eliz., 1584.



in sixe Bookes. | Ozir morir, da la vida. | *London,* | *Printed for*  
*William Ponsonby.* | 1598. |

Folio.

*Collation.* Arms of Herbert, ¶1<sub>2</sub>.—Ded. to Henry, Earl of Pembroke, and William, Lord Herbert, ¶2-3.—Prefs. and Verses, ¶4.—Glossary of foreign technical terms, Y<sub>3</sub>-6.—Arms of Barret, Y<sub>6</sub>.—No catchwords.—Diags. and tables.—R.H.: “The Theorike And Praçtike Of Moderne Warres. Booke 1[-6].”—Sigs. in 6<sup>s</sup>, ¶, A-Y; no O.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.

*Contents.* A compilation from foreign writers. It is said that Shakespeare in the passage, “The gallant militarist that had the whole theoric of war in the knot of his scarf, and the praçtice in the chape of his dagger” (“All’s Well,” act iv., sc. iii.), was alluding to this book; but the pairing of the words, “theoric and praçtic” was common, and Shakespeare need not have had Barret specially in his mind.

69. Fifteen-ninety-nine. Silver, George.

Paradoxes | of Defence, | wherein is proved the true |  
grounds of Fight to be in the short auncient weapons, | and  
that the short Sword hath aduantage of the long | Sword or  
long Rapier. And the weakenesse and imper- | fection of  
the Rapier-fights displayed. | Together with an | Admonition  
to the noble, ancient, victorious, valiant, | and most braue  
nation of Englishmen, to beware of false | teachers of Defence,  
and how they forsake their owne | naturall fights: with a  
brieue commendation of | the noble science or exercising of  
| Armes. | By George Siluer Gentleman. | *London,* | *Printed*  
*for Edward Blount.* | 1599. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A<sub>2</sub>.—Ded. to Robert, Earl of Essex, A<sub>3</sub>-6<sub>2</sub>.—Catchwords on versi only.—Ills.—R.H.: “George Silver his Paradoxes of Defence.”—Sigs. A-K in 4<sup>s</sup>; A has 6 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.; Ashburnham.

*Contents.* Written in favour of the Short Sword as against the Rapier, which, introduced by the Italians, had, at this time, quite taken the place of the former in the fencing schools of England. Three of these foreign masters of fence especially, Rocco, Geronimo his assistant, and Vincentio

had gained a great reputation, at the expense of native teachers. At the end of the book, under the heading: "Brief notice of three Italian teachers of offence", will be found anecdotes concerning these three, written with the intention of bringing ridicule upon them. The "Vincentio" mentioned is the famous Vincentio Saviolo, who, four years before, had published a work on the Rapier and Dagger. The "Brief notice" was reprinted in the "Antiquarian Repertory," London, 1807, vol. i., p. 165.

Mr. Egerton Castle, in his "Schools and Masters of Fence" (London, 1892), which contains an excellent catalogue of books on Fencing, mentions another book by Silver, written slightly posterior to 1599, and entitled "Brief Instructions upon my Paradoxes of Defence for the handling of all manner of weapons together with the four grounds and the four governors, which governors are left out in my paradoxes without the knowledge of which no man can fight safe. Together with the admonitions to the gentlemen and brave gallants of Great Britain."

70. Fifteen-ninety-nine.

The Mansion of Magnanimitie. . . . Published by Richard Crompton, an apprentice of the common law, 1599. Whereunto is also adjoynd a collection of divers lawes and statutes meete to be knowne of all men : with a briefe table, shewing, what munition ought to be kept by all sorts of her majesties subjects, for the defence of her highnesse realmes and dominions. *Printed for William Ponsonby.* 1599.

Black letter. Quarto.

Oldys, "Catalogue of Pamphlets in the Harleian Library," vol. x., p. 435, 60 ff.

71. Sixteen hundred. Edmonds, Sir Clement.

Observations, | vpon the | five first bookes | of Cæsars Com-  
mentaries, | setting fovrth the practise of | the art military, in  
the time of | the Roman Empire. | Wherein are handled all  
the chie- | fest points of their discipline, with the true reasons  
of | euey part, together with such instructions as may be  
| drawn from their proceedings, for the bet- | ter direction of  
our moderne | warres. | By | Clement Edmonds. | *At London,*

*Printed by Peter Short, dwelling on Bredstreet hill at | the signe  
of the Starre. 1600.*

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp., \*1.—Ded. to Sir Francis Vere, \*2.—R.H.: “Observations Upon Cæsars Commentaries. Lib. I [-V].”—6 engravings.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, \*(2 ff.), A-Z, Aa-Bb.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* This excellent and well-known exposition of Cæsar was always popular. The text is divided into short chapters with critical and explanatory notes to each. [V. No. 72.] It opens with a dissertation, “Reading and Discourse, are requisite to make a souldier perfect in the Arte militarie, how great soeuer his knowledge may be, which long experience and much practise of Armes hath gayned.”

Another Part. Sixteen-four.

Observations | Vpon Cæsars Commentaries | setting forth  
the Practise of y<sup>e</sup> Art | militarie in the time of the Romaine  
| Empire for the better direction | of our moderne Warrs | By  
| Clement Edmonds | Remembrancer of the Citie of | London,  
| *Printed at London for | Mathew Lownes 1604.* |

Folio.

*Collation.* Woodcut Frontispiece, with medallion of Cæsar, 201.—Engraved tp., 202.—Ded. to Henry, Prince of Wales, 203; another to the reader, 204.—R.H.: “Observations upon Cæsars Commentaries. Lib. VI [-VII]” and “The Maner Of Ovr Moderne Training.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, 20, b-r, and F (6 ff.); r4 and F6, blank.

*Copies.* B.M.

Contains Bks. VI. and VII. only of Cæsar, which were not included in the 1st ed.; also “The Maner of our Moderne Training.” [V. No. 72.]

Second Edition. [Sixteen-nine.]

Observations | vpon Cæsars | Comentaries. | [*London. Printed  
| for Matthew Lowndes.*]

Folio.

*Collation.* Four parts.—Frontisp., 1st f.—Engraved tp., A1, without date or imprint.—Ded. to Henry, Prince of Wales, A2.—Verses, A3.—Pref., A4.—Ills.—R.H.: “Commentary of the Ciuill Warres” in 4th pt., as in 1st ed. in 1st and 2nd pts.—Sigs.: Bks. I.-V., A, A (4 ff. each), B-F in 6<sup>s</sup>, H-Z, Aa to Cc

in 4<sup>s</sup>, 3 ff. to H and Bb, no G, Cc4 blank; Bks. VI.-VII., b-r in 4<sup>s</sup>, r4 blank; "Moderne Training", f (6 ff.); "Civill Warres", B and C in 4<sup>s</sup>, D-V in 6<sup>s</sup>. Separate pag. to all but "Moderne Training", which follows Bk. VII. The names of the successive owners entered in MS. They were Ben Jonson, to whom the copy was presented by the author, Henry Theobald, Richard Stevens, Edward Cudwörth, — — Berkenstead, John Martin, Thomas Rookwood, and Sir Thomas Gage in 1807. Autograph of Edmonds.

Some copies were sent out under the same tp., with the imprint: "1609. London Printed for Math. Lownes." But all of Bks. I.-V., between F6 and Cc is from a fresh set-up [sigs. G-R in 6<sup>s</sup>, and S (5 ff.)], while the "Second Observation" on chap. vii., Bk. V., is replaced by an epistle to Sir Robert Drury. Bks. VI.-VII. and the "Moderne Training" are omitted altogether.

Other eds.: London. R. Daniel. 1655. fol.; London. Tho Newcomb for Jonathan Edwin. 1677. fol.; London. 1695. fol.; all with the "Moderne Training", and the last with de Rohan's "Observations" upon each chapter.

72. Sixteen-hundred. Edmonds, Sir Clement.

The Maner of Our Moderne Training, Or Tacticke Practise.

Folio.

Included in the Second Part of the "Observations on Cæsar's Commentaries" (ed. 1604, pp. 129-138); and in all subsequent eds. except the dated ed. of 1609. In everything but portability, it is the earliest example in English of anything approaching our "Drill Book." Edmonds says of it: "For as much as my purpose was to make this taske of Obseruations as a paralel to our moderne Discipline, I did not think it fit to mingle the Tacticke Practise of these times with the vse of foregoing ages, but rather to shut vp these discourses therwith as the second line of this warlike paralell, which is thus drawne in the best fashion of moderne Art." [V. No. 71.]

73. Sixteen-hundred. Smith, Thomas.

The Art | of | Gvnnerie. | Wherein is set forth a number of ser- | uiceable secrets, and practicall conclusions, be- | longing to the Art of Gunnerie, | by Arithmeticke skill | to be accomplished: both pretie, pleasant, and | profitable for all such as are professors | of the same facultie. | Compiled by Thomas Smith of Barwicke vpon | Tweed Souldier. | London, | Printed for William Ponsonby. 1600. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Peregrine, Lord Willoughby d'Eresby, A2-3<sub>2</sub>.—Pref., dated Berwick upon Tweed, May 2. 1600, A4-B1.—Verses, B1<sub>2</sub>-2.—Cts., P3<sub>2</sub>-Q2.—Diags. (one folding).—R.H.: "The Arte of Gunnerie."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Q2.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.

Second Edition. Sixteen-twenty-eight.

The | Complete | Souldier. | Containing the whole Art of Gvnnery, | with certaine new and rare Additions | concerning Fire-works. | . . . The second edition, newly perused and amended. | . . . *London, Printed for R. Dawlman, at the Brazen Serpent in | S. Pauls Chchurch-yard. 1628. |*

Quarto.

The 1st ed. of the "Art of Gunnery" and the 1627 ed. of "Certain Additions to the Book of Gunnery" [v. No. 74], bound up together and sent out under a new tp., the old tpp. being retained also.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another Edition. Sixteen-forty-three.

The Art | of | Gunnery, | . . . *London, | Printed in the yeare 1643. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* The wording of title as in 1st ed. This ed. includes also the "Certaine Additions", which has separate tp., but continuous sigs. and pag. Tps., A1 and L1.—Ded., A2.—Pref., A3.—Verses, A4.—Cts., K2-4.—Diags.—R.H.: "The Art of Gunnery", "Principall Points belonging to the Art of Gunnery", and "Fire-works."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Q.—45-46 ll. to p.

There is little or no original matter in this work.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.; W.O.

74. Sixteen-twenty-seven. Smith, Thomas.

Certain | Additions to | the Booke of | Gvnnery, with a sup- | ply of Fire-workes. | All done by the former Author | Thomas Smith Souldier of Bar- | wicke vpon Tweede. | Both pleasant and profitable. | *London, | Printed by H. L. and are to be sold by R. Dawlman, | in Fleet-street neere the great Conduit. 1627. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—R.H., varied.—Ills.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-K2.

*Copies.* B.M.

Reissued with the "Art of Gunnery," 1643. [V. No. 73, 3rd ed.; also *ibid.*, 2nd ed.].

75. Sixteen-two. Segar, Sir William.

Honor | Military, and Ciuill, contained in | foure Bookes. |  
Viz. | 1. Justice, and Iurisdiction Military. | 2. Knighthood  
in generall, and particular. | 3. Combats for life, and Triumph. |  
4. Precedencie of great Estates, and others. | ¶ *Imprinted At*  
*Lon-* | *don by Robert Barker, Printer to the* | *Queenes most Ex-*  
*cellent* | *Maiestie.* | *Anno. Dom. 1602.* |

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp. (unsigned).—Ded. to Queen Elizabeth, subs. W. Segar, Norroy (2nd f.).—Pref. by T. B., and Cts. of Bk. 1 (2nd f. verso).—Woodcuts of Insignia.—R.H.: "Of Honour. Lib. 1[-4] Cap. . . . Militarie and Ciuill."—Sigs. in 6<sup>s</sup>, A-Y2, and 2 ff. unsigned.—In 4 pts., each having separate Cts. and Proëme.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.; Guildhall.

*Contents.* An examination of this book puts it almost beyond a doubt that Segar was the author of the "Book of Honour and Arms" also; of which parts are incorporated in this work, in places, word for word [v. 49]. In the Dedication he writes, "I haue endeououred . . . to frame these Discourses concerning Armes, Honour etc., . . . a subject proper to Armorists . . . not handled heretofore in our English by them, or any other to my knowledge."

76. Sixteen-two. Lloyd, Lodowick.

The | Stratagemes | of Ierusalem : | With the martiall lawes  
and | militarie discipline, as well of the Iewes, | as of the  
Gentiles. | By Lodowick LLoyd Esquier, one of her Maie- |  
sties Serieants at Armes. | Sap. 7. | Candor lucis æternæ est  
sapientiæ. | *London* | *Printed by Thomas Creede.* | 1602. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Sir Robert Cecil, A2-3.—Pref., A4.—Cts., Zz-Aaa3.—R.H.: "The first [-third] Booke of the Stratagemes of Ierusalem."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Z, Aa-Zz, Aaa; Aaa4, blank.

*Copies.* B.M.; Guildhall; Bod.

*Contents.* Compiled from the Scriptures, Josephus, and the ancient Greek and Latin writers.

77. Sixteen-four. Digges, Thomas and Dudley.

Foure Paradoxes, | or politique Discourses. | 2 Concerning  
Militarie Discipline, written | long since by Thomas Digges  
Esquire. | 2 Of the worthinesse of warre and warriors, | by  
Dudly Digges his sonne. | All newly published to keepe  
those that | will read them, as they did them that wrote |  
them, from idlennesse. | [Three lines of quotation from Horace.] |  
*Imprinted at London by H. Lownes, for Cle- | ment Knight, and  
are to be solde at his shop at the | Signe of the holy Lambe in Saint  
Paules | Churchyard. 1604. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp. (1st f.).—Ded. to Theophilus, Lord Howard of Walden (2nd f.), subs. “Dudly Digges.”—Pref. (2nd f., verso).—R.H.: “The . . . Paradoxe or politique Discourses.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-O, and 2 ff. unsigned.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

*Contents.* As Digges died in 1595 there was an interval of at least nine years between the writing of “Paradoxes I. and II.” and their printing. These are filled with complaints of the dishonesty of officers.<sup>1</sup> Foreign writers, too, were making similar accusations, notably Marcos de Isaba, who, in the “Cuerpo enfermo de la Milicia Espanola” (v. 572), waxes very bitter on the subject. Both in English and foreign armies, officers, from the commander-in-chief to the captain of a band, were engaged in defrauding one another and the private soldiers. If the men clamoured for pay, licence for pillage quieted them, or, in some cases, a still surer remedy was found; generals when deep in debt to any troops would send them on some desperate service, wherein most of them were sure to perish.<sup>2</sup> Four pages of Paradox I. are devoted to a comparison between a good and a bad paymaster; and much of Paradox II. to another between modern discipline and the discipline of the Greeks and Romans. Digges maintains the former, “in spite of the late invention of gunpowder,” to be vastly inferior to the latter, and he cites thirty points of difference between the two systems in support of his views. Indeed, the English militia had become so inefficient as to make reform imperative. Captains, being paymasters of their own bands, made use of their position

<sup>1</sup> This is an old cry; a “Petition against Disceatz of Warre” was presented to Henry VI. in 1439 (*Antiq. Rep.*, vol. iii., pp. 396-398).

<sup>2</sup> Hexham, “Tongue-Combat,” London, 1623.

to pocket the men's pay; drill was neglected, and no dependence could be placed on soldiers, who, taken from the lowest class, thought nothing of running from the enemy. Smythe, though an opponent of Digges, corroborates these statements. Digges was a reformer, and certainly a good friend to the private soldier; he is not swayed by prejudice, as is Sir John Smythe, who probably includes him, as a follower of Leicester, in his strictures on the "promoters of the new discipline."

78. Sixteen-four. Rich, Barnaby.

The; | Frvites of | long Experience. | A pleasing view for  
 | Peace. | A Looking-Glasse for Warre. | Or, | Call it what  
 | you list. | Discoursed betweene two Captaines. | By Barnabie  
 Riche, Gentleman | . . . | *Imprinted at London by Thomas  
 Creede, for Ieffrey | Chorlton, and are to be solde at his shop, adioy-  
 | ning to the great North doore of | Powles. 1604. |*

Black letter. Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A2.—Ded. to Henry, Prince of Wales, A3.—Pref., A4.  
 —R.H.: "Captaine Skill, and Captaine Pill."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-L2.—36-37  
 ll. to p.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* This dialogue embodies the conclusions arrived at by Rich after forty years' active service. He touches, generally, upon the abuses and corruptions in military affairs.

79. Sixteen-seven. Gheyn, Jacob de.

The exercise of Armes | For | Calivres, Mvskettes, and  
 Pikes | After the ordre of his Excellence. | Maurits Prince of  
 Orange Coun- | te of Nassau etc. Gouvernour | and Captaine  
 generall. ouer | Geldreland. Holland, Zee- | land, Vtrecht.  
 Overysse. etc. | Sett forthe in figures. by | Jacob de Gheyn. |  
 With written Instructions for the service of all | Captaines  
 and Commaunders. For to shewe hereout | the better unto  
 their jong or untrayned Soul- | diers the playne and perfect  
 maner to handle | these Armes. | 1607 | *Printed at the Hage. |  
 With Priviledge of the Emperours Ma<sup>te</sup> the | King of Fraunce,  
 and the Noble and migh- | tye Estates General of the united Pro-  
 vinces |*



Folio.

*Collation.* Engraved tp., 1st f.—Pref. to Maurice of Nassau, 2nd f.—Ded. (\* \* \*).—117 engraved plates.—Pts. I. and II. have each 2 ff. of letterpress (sigs. A and B), and Pt. III., 3 ff. (A and B, B having 2 ff.).—No pag.

These plates were reissued in 1608 with letterpress in French, in Danish, and in German, the Danish ed. having 11 extra plates of a somewhat different character. The German copy in the B.M. has been coloured by hand. Brunet mentions Dutch, German, and French eds., but neither he nor Meyrick knew of the English ed., which is, in fact, the original.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.; R.A.I.

Another Edition. Sixteen-nineteen. Gheyn, Jacob de.

[Tp. in four languages, viz. : French, Danish, English, and German; the English as follows :] The Exercise Of Armes | For Calivres, Muskettes, and Pikes. | After the ordre of his Excellence Maurits Prince | of Orange, Counte of Nassau &c. Gouvernour and | Capitaine Generall over the Vnited Provinces. | Sett forthe in figures by Iacob de Geyn. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., (.), has the engraving of the original ed. reduced.—Col.: “A | Zutphen, | Chez | Andre | Janssen | d’Aelst. | ”, I<sub>12</sub>.—Pref., (.)2-3, in Fr., Germ., Danish, and Eng., dated from Zutphen, 20 August, 1619.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-L, A-L, and A-I<sub>2</sub>; 4th f. of 1st L and 2nd f. of 3rd I, blank.

The preface is new; the woodcuts, which are here combined with the text, follow the outlines of the 1st ed., in reduced size. Issued thus because the 1st ed., “being of great volume and costing much money, every man is not able to buy it and besides that it is too high to have it upon a long journey.” Very rare.

*Copies.* B.M.; W.O.

*Contents.* This beautiful work was brought out in English out of compliment to the British levies, whose services had so greatly aided the United Provinces in their struggle for liberty. The illustrations show “all the postures that come in the holding and using of the arms by order,” the letterpress supplying the reasons for each movement, with the words of command. The former accurately portray the whole costume and equipment of the soldier of the period. “Concerning the different or suitable apparrell and armes of the figures”, says de Gheyn (1st ed., Pref.), “there is to be considered that the shott with headpeeces and the Muskettiers with hattes are drawne and differently apparrelled, not that we holde it for necessarie but that much varietye might give the fuller ornament to the pictures, and to show to posteritie the manner of souldiers apparel vsed in these dayes, Like as on the

other side the Pikemen are all armed after one sorte or kinde, for no other reason than to represent the right maner and fashion of the Arminge of his Exces, owne Garde as it is at this time."

80. Sixteen-eight. Grimestone, Edward.

A | Generall Histo- | rie Of The Nether- | lands : | With  
the genealogie and memo- | rable acts of the Earls of Holland,  
Zeeland, and | west-Friseland, from Thierry of Aquitaine  
the | first Earle, successively vnto Philip the | third King of  
Spaine : | Continued vnto this present yeare of | our Lord  
1608, out of the best authors | that haue written of that | sub-  
ject : | By Ed: Grimeston. | *London*, | *Printed by A. Islip, and*  
*G. Eld.* | *Anno Dom.* 1608. |

Folio.

*Collation.* A1, blank, shows set off on verso.—Tp., A2, enclosed in emblematic engraving by Von Sicken.—Ded. to Robert, Earl of Salisbury, and Thomas, Earl of Suffolk, A3.—Prefs. by John Petit and Grimestone, A4-6.—Cts., ¶-¶¶3.—Full page engraved portraits.—Sigs. in 6<sup>s</sup>, through 5 alphabets to Dddddd and ¶-¶¶4; Dddddd has 8 ff., Pp4 blank.

Second Edition. Sixteen-twenty-seven. Grimestone, Edward.

A | General Historie | Of The Nether- | lands. | Newly  
Reuewed, Corrected | and supplied with sundrie | necessarie  
obseruations omitted | in the first Impression. | By Ed:  
Grimeston Ser: | geant at Armes. | Continued from the yeare  
1608. | till the yeare of our Lord 1627 | By William Crosse  
M<sup>r</sup> of Arts. | The second Impression | *London* | *Printed by*  
*Adam Islip* | *Anno Domini* | 1627. |

Folio.

*Collation.* Emblematic tp. by Tho. Cecill, A2.—Ded., A3.—Pref., A4.—Cts., \* \* 1-7.—Sigs. in 6<sup>s</sup>, through 5 alphabets to Tttttt4 and \* \* (8 ff., the last blank).—No portraits.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

*Contents.* This monumental chronicle of the Netherlands' wars is based upon Van Meteren's "Historia Belgica" (Antwerp [1600?], fol.), and upon a work by Petit, a Dutch author then living in London; Grimestone styles himself "only a translator." Some MS. notes by Williams, in the possession

of Sir Peter Manwood, are also cited amongst the authorities [No. 93?]. For the second edition the MS. of Vere's "Commentaries" was consulted.

81. Sixteen-ten. [S., J., *i.e.* John Selden.]

The | Dvello | Or | Single Combat: | From Antiquitie  
deriued into this Kingdome | of England, with seuerall  
kindes, | and ceremonious formes there- | of from good au-  
thority | described. | . . . *London, | Printed by G. E. for I.  
Helme, and are to be sold at his | shop in Saint Dunstans Cburch-  
yard, in | Fleet-streete. 1610. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Edward Carrell, subs. J. S., A2.—Pref., A2.—Cts., A3.—R.H.: "Single Combat."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-H2.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* A history of single combat in England.

82. Sixteen-twelve. Strachey, William.

For | The Colony in Virginea | Britannia. | Lawes Diuine,  
Morall and | Martiall, &c. | . . . *Printed at London for  
Walter Burre. 1612. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A2, has Royal Arms.—Ded. to "The Committies . . . for the Colonie", A3-4.—Verses, A5-6.—No R.H.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-N; A has 6 ff.—Rare.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* There is a "Summarie of the Martiall Lawes" (pp. 20-89) reissued by the Deputy Governor, Sir Thomas Dale, giving full instructions to all ranks of the army in the Colony.

83. Sixteen-thirteen. Shute, W.

The | Trivmphs | Of Nassav: | Or, | A Description And  
Re- | presentation of all the Victories both by | Land and Sea,  
granted by God to the noble, | high, and mightie Lords, the  
Estates generall of the | vnited Netherland Prouinces. | Vnder  
The Condvct | and command of his Excellencie, Prince |

Mavrice of Nassav. | Translated out of French by W. Shvte  
Gent. | London, | Printed by Adam Islip, Anno Dom. 1613. |

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp., 2nd f.—Ded. to William, Earl of Pembroke, and Philip, Earl of Montgomerie, 3rd f.—Pref., 4th f.—Cts., Ddd3.—R.H.: “The heroicke acts of his Excellencie Prince Maurice of Nassau.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, 4 ff. unsigned, A-Z, Aa-Zz, Aaa-Ddd; Ddd4, blank.

*Copies.* B.M.

Second Edition. Sixteen-twenty.

The | Trivmphs | Of Nassav : | . . . London, | Printed by  
Adam Islip, and are to bee sold by Richard Moore, | at his shop  
in Saint Dunstans Churchyard. | Anno Dom. 1620. |

Folio.

This is the ed. of 1613, sent out with a new tp. The lining of both tpp. is the same; but in the 1620 ed. “high” is spelt with a capital, and “command” becomes “commaund.”

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* This work is of very great interest. The English volunteers in the service of the States General play no inconsiderable part in the history.

84. Sixteen-thirteen. Dallington, Sir Robert.

Aphorismes | Civill And | Militarie : | Amplified with  
Authorities, and exemplified with | Historie, out of the first  
Quarterne | of Fr. Guiccardine. | . . . London, | Imprinted for  
Edward Blount. | 1613. |

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp., A2.—Portrait of Prince Charles, A2<sub>2</sub>.—Ded. to Prince Charles, A3, subs. “Dallington.”—Pref., A4.—Err., Vv6.—R.H.: “Aphorismes Lib. I [V]”—A 2nd pt., with continuous sigs., but separate tp. and pag.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Z, Aa-Vv; Vv has 6 ff.—The copy described (B.M.) is that presented to the Prince.

*Copies.* B.M.

Second Edition.

London Printed by Robert Allot, at the signe of the Blacke  
Beare in Paules Churchyard. 1629.

The 2nd pt. was printed by John Haviland for the same. Closely resembles the 1st ed., but is without portrait and Errata.

*Copies.* B.M.: Bod.

*Contents.* A book of precepts drawn up, in the first instance, for the instruction of Henry, Prince of Wales, of whose household Dallington was a member.

85. Sixteen-fourteen. H[ale], G[eorge].

The | Priuate Schoole | of Defence. | Or | the defects | of  
Publique Teachers, ex- | actly discovered, by way of | Obiec-  
tion and Resolution. | Together | With the true practise of  
the | Science, set downe in iudicious | Rules and Obseru-  
ances; in a | Method neuer before | expressed. | By G. H.  
Gent. | *London: | Printed for Iohn Helme, and are to be |*  
*sould at his Shop in S. Dunstanes | Church-yard in Fleetstreet.*

1614. |

Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., A2.—Ded. to Prince Charles, A3-7.—R.H.: “The priuate Schoole of Defence.”—No pag.—Sigs. in 8°, A-C; C8 blank.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Mistakenly, or untruthfully, the author states that “the Science of defence . . . was never before in our language brought to any Method. The Professors thereof being so ignorant, that they could rather doe then [*sic*] make demonstration or reduce their doing to any certainty of principle.” Were Saviolo’s “Practise” and the translation of di Grassi [Nos, 61 and 63], then, so soon forgotten?

86. Sixteen-sixteen. T., J.

The A. B. C. of Armes, Or, An Introduction Directorie ;  
whereby the order of Militarie exercises may easily be under-  
stood. . . . *London, Printed by W. Stansby for Iohn Helmes. . . .*

1616.

Quarto.

C in eights, first and last leaves blank.—Hazlitt, i., p. 415. “12° *Maii.* *Iohn Helme. Entred etc. a booke called The A. B. C. of Armes by J. T.*”—Arber, iii. 588.

*Copies.* Bod.

87. Sixteen-sixteen.

Orders established and agreed vnto by the societye of Armes  
Citizens of London dated 23 of July 1616.

Arber, iii. 595: "5<sup>o</sup> Octobris 1616. Master Islippe. Entred for his  
Copie Orders established etc."

88. Sixteen-sixteen. Bingham, John.

The Taçticks of | Ælian | Or art of embattailing an army  
| after y<sup>e</sup> Grecian manner | Englished & illustrated w<sup>th</sup> figures  
throughout : | & notes upon y<sup>e</sup> Chapters of y<sup>e</sup> ordinary | mo-  
tions of y<sup>e</sup> Phalange by J. B. | The exercise military of y<sup>e</sup>  
English by y<sup>e</sup> order | of that great Generall Maurice of |  
Nassau Prince of Orange &c. | Gouvernor & Generall of y<sup>e</sup> |  
united Prouinces is added | *At London for Laurence Lisle &*  
*are to be sold at | his shoppe at y<sup>e</sup> signe of the Tigers Head | in*  
*Paules Church yard. |*

Folio.

*Collation.* Emblematic tp. (1st f.).—Ded. to Prince Charles, A1-2.—  
Cts., A4<sub>2</sub>-5 and O1-3.—Err., N8<sub>2</sub>.—R.H.: "The Taçticks of Ælian."—  
50 folding ill.—Sigs. in 6<sup>s</sup>, a (2 ff.), A-O4; A and N have 8 ff., A3,  
A5<sub>2</sub>, and O4 blank.—Comprises Chaps. I.-LIV., all up to XXX. having  
lengthy notes.

*Copies.* B.M. (three); Bod.; W.O.

Another Part. Sixteen-twenty-nine.

The Art Of | Embattailing | An | Army. | Or, | The Se-  
cond Part Of | Ælians Taçticks. | With Notes Vpon | Every  
Chapter. | By Capt. John Bingham. | *London: | Printed by*  
*John Beale and Thomas | Brudenell for Ralph Mab. | 1629. |*

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp., A2; A2<sub>2</sub>, arms of Artillery Company, with monogram of  
R. D., the engraver.—Ded. to Sir Hugh Hamersley and others, A3-4.—Cts.,  
I5<sub>2</sub>.—R.H.: "The Taçticks of Ælian, or the Art of Embattailing Armies."  
—Sigs. in 6<sup>s</sup>, A-I; I5 blank. Comprises Chaps. XXX.-LIV. only. These  
have the notes wanting in the 1st pt., and also 19 of its ill.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another Edition of Second Part. Sixteen-thirty-one.

The Art of Embattailing | An | Army. | . . . London : |  
Printed for Ralph Mab. 1631. |

Folio.

The ed. of 1629, sent out with a new and more lengthy tp., and the fault in pagination on p. 38 corrected. The plates of all three eds. are reproduced from those of the French trans. of Ælian, "La Milice de Grecs et Romains," Paris, 1615, fol.

Copies. B.M.; Bod.

Contents. Ælian is one of the most renowned and trustworthy of the ancient military writers. His work, which is written in a clear and concise style, was held in such estimation by Prince Maurice of Nassau that he had it translated and introduced into the Low Countries, at that time called "the school of war." He treats of the organisation, drilling, arming, and battle formations of the phalanx; the position of cavalry in the field, their number, officers, etc.; of chariots and elephants; of various battle formations both of horse and foot; of changing front, wheeling, countermarching, etc., etc. In Chap. I. occurs the oft-quoted list of those authors who had written on tactics before him. He thus enumerates them: "Concerning Homers discipline militarie, the works of Stratocles and of Frontinus, a man of Consular dignity in our time are to be read. Æneas perfected the Theorie thereof at large publishing many volumes of warfare, which were abridged by Cyneas the Thessalian. Likewise Pyrrhus the Epirote wrote Taçticks, and his son Alexander, and Clearchus, and Pausanias, and Euangelus, and Polybius . . . and Eupolemus and Iphicrates; Possidonius also the Stoick set forth the art of warre, and many other, some in Introductions, as Brion, some in large Taçtick volumes. All which, I have seene and read, and yet thinke it not much to purpose to mention particularly; being not ignorant, that it hath beene the manner of those writers for the most part, to apply their style not to the ignorant, but to such as are already acquainted with the matters they intreat of."

Eds.—Besides the collected Gr. and Lat. eds. given in No. 3, there are the following separate eds.: Venetiis, 1552, 4° (two in Gr.); Lugduni, 1613, 4° (Gr. and Lat.); Fr. trans., Paris, 1615, fol.; Ital. trans., Vinegia, 1551, 8°.

Another English trans., by Viscount Dillon (London, 1814, 4°), containing also an extract from Polybius on the military institutions of the Romans; and an account of the principal historians, ancient and modern, considered from a military point of view.

89. Sixteen-sixteen. Bingham, John.

The Exercise of the English in the seruice of the high and

mighty Lords . . . of the vnited Provinces in the Low  
Covntries.

To be found on pp. 153-159 of the 1616 ed. of No. 88. This is an early  
example of a drill book ; the exercises are both for cavalry and infantry.

90. Sixteen-sixteen. Davelourt, Daniel.

Trois Traictez | svr le faiçt de l'artillerie, | ses apparte-  
nances et dependances. | Le Premier est vne Instruction  
faisant mention | de la fonte des pieces en general, de leurs  
longueurs & | calibres, des affuts & rouës, ferrures d'iceux, cor-  
dages | chargeoirs, escouillons & autre equipage, poudre à |  
canon, boulets, de la charge ordinaire desdictes pieces, | du  
poids d'icelles, &c. | Le Second, est l'Artillier, c'est à dire, la  
charge & | fonction des officiers de ladicte artillerie, princi-  
palement | en vn siege & armée. | Et le Troisieme, est  
l'Arcenal & Magazin, | traicfant entre autres considerations  
& questions, du | cuiure & de son allayement, vstanciles et  
outils seruans | à la fonte desdictes pieces d'artillerie, du sal-  
pestre, soulfre, | charbon & composition de ladicte poudre à  
canon, de | l'ordre d'vn attirail, des gabions, platteformes &  
autres | choses notables & dignes de sçauoir. | Par Daniel  
Davelourt, Escossais, Officier | ordinaire en ladicte Artillerie.  
| *A Paris, | Chez François Iacquin, ruë des | Maçons, proche*  
*Sorbonne.* | M.D.C.XVI. | *Avec privilege du roy.* |

Octavo.

*Collation.* 3 pts., each with separate tp., pag., and sigs. as follows :

Sixteen-seventeen.

Briefve | Instruction | svr le faiçt de | l'Artillerie de  
France. | Par D. Davelourt Officier ordinaire en | icelle, &  
commis en l'Arcenal & Magazin | du Roy à Paris, de Monsieur  
le Garde | general de ladicte Artillerie. | *A Paris, Par Fre-  
deric Morel, Imprimeur | ordinaire du Roy.* | M.D.CXVII. | *Auec*  
*Pruiilege de sa Majesté.* |

Octavo.



*Collation.* Tp., †1.—Ded. to Saint Luc, Captain-General of Artillery in France, subs. D. Davelourt, and dated 1597, †2.—Pref., †3.—Cts., †4.—No R.H.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, †, A-G; G4, blank.

*Copies.* B.M.

Sixteen-sixteen.

L'Artillier, | C'est à dire, | La charge & fonction des Offi-  
ciers | de l'artillerie, principalement | en vn siege & armée |  
*A Paris, | Chez François Iacquin, ruë | des Maçons, proche*  
*Sorbone. | MDCXVI. |*

O&avo.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Robert Tiercelin, dated Paris, 1606, A2.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-D; D4, blank.—No R.H.

Sixteen-seventeen.

Recherches | et considerations | syr le faiçt de l'artillerie, |  
& ses dependances. | Ov est traicté entre | autres choses des  
metaux, inuentaires | generaux des pieces & munitions de |  
ladiçte artillerie, sapes, mines & con- | tremines, salues, ex-  
amen des Officiers | d'icelle artillerie, des vrais calibres des |  
pieces & boulets, du poids de plusieurs | sortes desdiçtes  
munitions, & des bat- | teries & preparatifs d'icelle plus me- |  
morables: Le tout outre ce qui a esté | cy deuant escrit. | Par le  
mesme Autheur D... D... | *A Paris, | Par François Iacquin,*  
*ruë des | Maçons proche Sorbonne. | MDCXVII. | Avec priuilege*  
*du Roy. |*

O&avo.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to François de Savary, dated 1617, A2-3.—Cts., A3<sub>2-4</sub>.—Privilege, A4<sub>2</sub>.—No R.H.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-I.

Very rare. Louis Napoleon caused inquiries to be made all over England for a copy, thinking the book had been published there.—MS. note in B.M. copy. From the dates of the Dedicatory Epistles, it may be inferred that the eds. of the first and second parts given here are not the first. No. 94 is a summary of the three treatises; the nationality of whose author entitles them to a place in this section. They were compiled partly from notes left behind by Daniel's father, who, like himself, had passed his life in the French service. The length of the titles as compared with that of the text will be remarked. Davelourt, in this respect, is liberal even amongst his con-

temporaries, who are so careful to make a display of the subject-matter on their title-pages. But it must have been a very useful little manual in its time.

91. Sixteen-seventeen. Swetnam, Joseph.

The Schoole of the Noble and Worthy Science of Defence. Being the first of any Englishmans invention, which professed the sayd Science ; So plainly described that any man may quickly come to the true knowledge of their weapons with small paines and little practise. Then reade it advisedly, and use the benefit thereof when occasion shal serve, so shalt thou be a good Common-wealth man, live happy to thy selfe and comfortable to thy friend. Also many other good and profitable Precepts for the managing of Quarrels and ordering thy selfe in many other matters.

Quarto.

Printed by Nicholas Okes.—Ded. to Charles, Prince of Wales.—Mr. Egerton Castle says that this treatise bears a great resemblance to that of Saviolo.—Seven woodcuts.

Copies. Bod.

92. Sixteen-eighteen. Davies, Edward.

Military directions : or the art of trayning ; plainely demonstrating how euery good souldier ought to behaue himselfe in the warres ; [the first book.]

Octavo.

Lib. Bod. Cat. : Grose quotes extensively from this work.

Another Edition. Sixteen-nineteen.

The Art of War, And Englands Traynings, Plainely Demonstrating the dutie of a priuate Sovldier : with the Office of each seuerall Officer belonging to a Foot-company : and the Martiall lawes of the field. As Also, The office and charge belonging to the command of a Colonell ; the Exercise of trayning or drilling : With diuers other necessary and profit-

able disciplined Notes and Obseruations. *London Printed by Edward Griffin and are to be sold by William Butler, . . .* 1619.

Quarto.

A-Ff in 4°, Ff4, blank. Ded.: to Charles, Prince of Wales.—Hazlitt, ii. 159. A copy in the Bod., which is entered in the catalogue as another ed. of the "Military Directions" of Davies. This is, therefore, the book entered in the Register of the Stationers' Company as follows: "23° *Januarij* 1617 [*i.e.* 1618] *Master Griffin. Entred for his Copie vnder the handes of master Tauernor and master warden lownes a booke called millitary directions by John [sic] Davis vjd.*"—Arber, iii. 619.

This title, taken from Hazlitt, contains the earliest use of the word "drilling," in the sense of exercising soldiers, that I have come across; antedating by three years the quotation from Massinger, given in Murray's dictionary.

Another Edition? Sixteen-twenty-two.

The Military Art of Trayning, with a Description of all Martiall Officers . . . With the Discipline of Drilling both for the Musket and Pike . . . *London, Printed by Edw: All-dee, and are to bee solde in Lomberd-street, at the Signe of the Angell, by Roger Daniell.* 1622.

Octavo.

A-F2 in eights. Dedicated by the publisher to Charles, Prince of Wales.—Hazlitt, i. 290. "13° *Aprilis* 1622. *Master Aldee. Entred for his Copie . . . A booke called, The militarie Art of Trayning. vjd.*"—Arber, iv. 67.

Hazlitt does not give the author's name. Is this another ed. of "Military Directions"? See also No. 97.

93. Sixteen-eighteen. Williams, Sir Roger.

The | Actions | of | The Lowe Countries. | Written | By  
St. Roger Williams | Knight. | *London, | Printed by Humfrey  
Lownes, for | Mathew Lownes.* 1618. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., ¶2.—Ded. to Sir Francis Bacon, subs. Peter Manwoode, ¶3.—Pref., ¶4-A2, subs. John Hayward.—R.H.: "The Actions of the Lowe Countries."—Sigs. in 4°, ¶, A-S; A has 2 ff., S4, blank.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

*Contents.* This book had two editors—Hayward, and Sir Peter Manwood, who owned the MS. and had formerly lent it to Grimstone [v. No. 80]. The plan of it leads one to conclude that this is merely a fragment; “but whether the residue was never written, or whether it be perished, or whether it resteth in any other hand,” says Hayward, “I remain doubtful.” It came to him “in a ragged hand, and much maimed, both in sense and in phrase.” Having restored it as nearly as he could to the style and meaning of the author, he and Manwood caused it to be published in the hope of drawing into light the residue, if there were any extant. Pp. 1-56 treat of the beginning of the troubles in the Netherlands, much of the information contained therein having been given to the author by William of Orange. P. 56 chronicles the arrival at Flushing in June, 1572, of Capt. Thomas Morgan with 300 Englishmen, among whom was Williams himself. This was the first band of British to serve the Low Countries against Spain. Previously, though there had been a considerable number of Englishmen taking part in these wars, they were chiefly gentlemen, serving independently. Morgan’s band was reinforced, in the autumn, by a regiment 1,500 strong, under the colonelcy of Sir Humfrey Gilbert, who, however, returned with most of his men to England before the year was out. Another regiment was raised by Morgan in February, 1573; but, a year later, this, too, returned home, the officers having quarrelled with the Prince of Orange over their pay. Morgan’s Regiment it was that established the use of the musket in England.

Williams, eager “to see strange wars,” soon returned to the Continent, where he joined Romero’s army, and fought on the Spanish side in the naval battle off Middelburgh; at which point the narrative terminates. Williams excuses his defection on the ground that his sovereign was not at that time at war with Spain; but later on he returned to the service of his first masters, the States. The yielding up of Sluys<sup>1</sup> to Spain, in July, 1587, occasioned a great clamour in England, and Williams reaped his full share of blame, his reputation as a brave and experienced soldier enabling him, however, to withstand all attacks. In 1589, he took part in the expedition of Drake and Norris to Lisbon. In 1590, we find him in the service of Henry IV. of France; but falling into disfavour with that king, he wrote to Burleigh for a passport to enter into the service of another prince.<sup>2</sup> However, the

<sup>1</sup> MSS. Cott. Galba, c. ix. 102; D. I. 40, 175, 179 and 214. These letters refer to the defence and surrender of Sluys. Williams gives an account of this siege in the “Brief Discourse” [No. 45]; and adds that he intends writing more fully of the matter in his “discourse of the Netherlanders’ actions”—a proof that the latter work, as it stands, is incomplete. Grimstone transfers the account into his History [No. 80], under date 1587.

<sup>2</sup> MSS. Harl. 6995. 50; MSS. Stowe, 132. f. 112; MSS. Harl. 1579.

difference appears to have been made up, for in 1593, he was sent to assist in the defence of Dieppe.<sup>1</sup> He died in 1595. Williams's connection with Leicester,<sup>2</sup> his advocacy of the new system of warfare and contempt for antiquated weapons, with other and private reasons, drew on him the wrath of Sir John Smythe, who, in a letter to Burleigh, complains that his book on Weapons should be suppressed, while Williams's "Discourse on War", "which", he writes, "doth touch in terrible sort some Captains of ours", was suffered to circulate.<sup>3</sup> The following tribute to Williams occurs in Hayward's Preface to the latter work: "Amongst those fewe who have written with knowledge, judgement and sincerity the Authour of this Historie is worthy to be ranged: who doubtlesse was of endlesse industry; alwaies in action, either with his sword, or with his penne."

94. Sixteen-nineteen. Davelourt, Daniel.

Epitome | ov abbrege ; | contenant maximes | et propositions vrayes | et generales sur le faiçt de l'artillerie | & ses appartenances, en forme de | lieux communs : | pour soulager la plus part des officiers d'icelle, qui | pourront neantmoins avoir recours pour plus | grande intelligence, suivant ce qui est | cotté en marge du present liure. | Le tout tiré & extraict des escrits de D. . . | D. . . Escossais, deschargeur | ordinaire en ladite Artillerie, | Par luy-mesme. | *A Paris, | Chez François Iacqvin, ruë des Massons, pres Sorbonne.* | M.D.C.XIX. | *Auec Privilege du Roy.* |

Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to Messieurs Chavvelin and Bovrlon, dated Nov. 1618, a2-3.—Cts., a3.—Privilege, a4.—Sigs. in 4°, a, A-D2.—No R.H.

A summary of No. 90.

95. Sixteen-nineteen. Trussell, Thomas.

The Souldier | Pleading his owne Cause. | Furnished with Argument to Encou- | rage, and Skill to Instruct. | With an

<sup>1</sup> MSS. Cott. Cal. E. viii. 93. Instructions on sending him to assist in the Defence of Dieppe, 1591; also Cal. E. ix. 143.

<sup>2</sup> See various original MSS. letters in Cottonian Collection.

<sup>3</sup> For correspondence regarding Smythe's book v. No. 46, footnote.

Epitome of the qualities required in | the seuerall Officers of a  
priuate Company. | The second Impression, much enlarged  
with | Military Instructions. | *Imprinted at London by Nicholas  
Okes, and are to be | sold by Thomas Walkley in Britains Būrse.*  
1619. |

Octavo.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, shows a woodcut of a pikeman and a musketeer.—  
Pref., A2-4.—R.H.: “The Souldier Pleading his owne Cause” and “Mili-  
tary Instructions.”—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, A-G.

I can find no mention of the 1st ed. Hazlitt gives “The third Impression  
much enlarged with Military Instructions by the Author Tho. Trussell.  
Gent. *Imprinted at London by Nicholas Okes, and are to be sold by Thomas  
Walkley . . . 1626.*” 8<sup>o</sup>. A-H in eights.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* It was possibly on account of its portability that this Drill Book,  
as it may be called, passed through three eds. The author, who claims no  
originality for the contents, divides it into three parts, two of which are ex-  
plained by the title, and the third by the heading, “Certaine Military In-  
structions for young Souldiers, agreeable to the Discipline practised in the  
Netherlands.”

96. Sixteen-twenty-two. Markham, Francis.

Five | Decades | Of | Epistles | Of | Warre. | By | Fran-  
cis Markham. | . . . . | *London, | Printed by Augustine Mat-  
thewes. | Anno 1622. |*

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp., A2.—Ded., to Prince of Wales, A3-4.—Pref., A5-6.—  
Cts., A6<sub>2</sub>.—R.H.: “Decad. I[-V] Epist. I[-X]”.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Z, Aa-Cc;  
A has 6 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.; R.A.I.

*Contents.* The text is divided into five “Decades,” and these again are  
subdivided into ten Epistles, whence the title. Each epistle is dedicated to  
a different nobleman. Epistle viii. of Decade I. is on the levying of soldiers,  
Epistle ix. on the arming of Musketeers, and Epistle x. on the arming of  
Pikemen. Harquebuses had at this time grown out of date, and were of little  
use when opposed to muskets, which killed at twenty score paces, while the  
former scarcely killed at twelve. Epistles iii. and v. of Decade II. are on  
“Rounders,” or, as we should now call them, “Visiting rounds,” and on the  
duties of the officers of the Drums and Fifes, respectively. The Epistle on

"Voluntaries," or volunteers, is interesting. They were often men of rank and wealth, serving at their own expense, and having special privileges accorded them.

97. Sixteen-twenty-three.

The Military Discipline wherein is Martially shone the order of drilling for y<sup>e</sup> Musket and Pike. 1623. Set forth in Postures with the words of Command and Briefe Instructions for the Right use of the same . . . *Are to be sould by Roger Daniell at the angell in Lumbardstreete.*

Octavo.

Engraved tp., one leaf: 41 numbered plates for the musket exercise: 32 plates for the pike.—Hazlitt, i. 290. Is this an ed. of No. 92?

98. Sixteen-twenty-three. Lipsius, Justus.

The | Historie | Of | Xenophon | . . . Whereunto is added | A Comparison of the | Roman manner of Warres | with this of our Time, out of | Ivstvs Lipsivs. | Translated by Joh. Bingham. | *London, | Printed by John Haviland for Raphe Mabb. | 1623. |*

Folio.

Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-X; 2nd pt., V2-X3. For orig. of 2nd pt. v. No. 620.

99. Sixteen-twenty-three.

Instrvctions | For | Mvsters And | Armes, And | the vse thereof: | By order from the Lords of His Maiesties most | Honourable Priuy Counsayle. | ¶ *Imprinted at London by Bonham | Norton and Iohn Bill, | Printers to the Kings most | Excellent Maiestie. | 1623. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A2, bears the Royal Arms.—R.H.: "Instructions for Musters and Armes."—No pag.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-B.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* An official publication, corresponding to our drill book. The instructions for the musket are confined to directions for the delivery of volleys, both in attacking and in retreating; for the manual exercise or

"postures," "His Excellencies Booke" is named as the standard. The rest refers to the drill of Pikemen, and to the exercising and arming of the Infantry generally, and of the Cavalry, who are divided into Cuirassiers, and Harquebusiers and "Dragons;" the two terms seeming interchangeable.<sup>1</sup>

100. Sixteen-twenty-four. Norton, Robert.

Of The Art | Of Great | Artillery, | Viz. | The Explana-  
tion | of the most excellent and necessary Defi- | nitions, and  
Questions, pronounced and propoun- | ded, by that rare Souldier  
and Mathematician, Thomas | Digges Esquire; and by him  
published, in his Stra- | tiaticos, and Pantometria, concerning  
great | Ordinance, and his Theorems | thereupon. | Together,  
| With certaine Expositions, and an- | swers thereunto ad-  
ioyned: Written by Robert | Norton Gunner. | And by him  
Dedicated, to the Worshipfull John | Reinolds Esquire, Master  
Gunner | of England. | *London, | Printed by Edw: Allde, for  
John Tap, and are to bee sold at | his Shop, at the corner of Saint  
| Magnus Church. | 1624. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to John Reinolds, Master Gunner of England, A2.—Pref., A3.—R.H.: "Of the Art of Great Artillery."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-G.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Norton succeeded Reinolds as Master-Gunner. This treatise answers certain questions on gunnery propounded by Digges in the "Stratiaticos" and "Pantometria", books with which the present should be read; Digges had answered the questions merely by a "yes" or "no." Norton's work is interesting as giving the results of several experiments he had made for ascertaining the range of artillery. His conclusion is that the maximum range is to be obtained with an elevation of a little over 40°. A serious charge of plagiarism is brought against him by Malthus [No. 118], who states that though Norton calls his later work, "The Gunner", original, he has done no more than translate Ufano's book, transposing the parts and adding seven figures, taken from Thybourel, to those already given by the Italian writer; and Eldred ("Gunner's Glasse," London, 1646, 4<sup>o</sup>) is equally severe.

<sup>1</sup> Markham, in the "Decades", describes this arm briefly. Dragoons were a kind of mounted infantry, and received their name from the weapon with which they were armed, a short gun or blunderbuss, called a "dragon," from the ornamentation on its muzzle. They were first raised about 1600 by the Maréchal de Brisac.



Norton expresses his intention of translating Tartaglia's "Nuova Scientia"; if he ever did so, the translation is lost.

101. Sixteen-twenty-four. L., A.

Speculum Belli sacri : | Or The | Looking-Glasse | Of The  
Holy War, | Wherein is discovered : | The Evill of War. |  
The Good of Warr. | The Guide of War. | In The Last Of  
These I Give A | Scantling Of The Christian | Tackticks, from  
the levying of the Souldier, to the | sounding of the Retrait ;  
together with a modell | of the carryage, both of the Con-  
querour and con- | quered. I haue applyed the generall|  
rules warranted by the Word, to | the particular necessity|  
of our present | times. | [Eight lines of quotations.] | Printed,  
*Anno 1624.* | [*London?*]

Quarto.

*Collation.* Four Deds., 1st to King of Bohemia, all subs. "A. L.", A2-C1.  
—Cts., C2.—Err., Vv2.—R.H.: "The Looking-glasse of the holy War."  
—Sigs. in 4°, A-Z, Aa-Vv2.

*Copies.* B.M.; R.A.I.

*Contents.* The author was Alexander Leighton, the Puritan writer. In the present work, "the sacred word is made the loadstone, the compass, and the lesbian rule whereby to square and direct" military practice. The speeches and writings of the Cromwellians have made us familiar with this sort of thing.

102. Sixteen-twenty-four. G., W.

Covnt | Mansfields | Directions | of Warre. | Given To All  
His | Officers and Souldiers | in Generall. | *London,* | Printed  
by *Edw: Alde for Richard Whittaker,* and | are to be sold at his  
*shop in Pauls Church- | yard, at the Kings head.* | 1624. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, has woodcut.—Ded. to Charles, Prince of Wales, etc., subs. W. G., A2-3.—Cts., A4.—R.H.: "The Office of a Regiment and their Duties", "The Office of a Troupe of Horse", "The Dignitie of Souldiers in their Fyles."—Sigs. in 4°, A-H.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Drawn up by W. G. with the consent of Count Mansfeld, who revised the "ordinances" and gave his sanction for their publication. In three parts, the third relating to the ordering and exercising of the men.

103. Sixteen-twenty-five. B., W.

The | Free Schoole | Of Warre, | Or, | A Treatise, Whe- |  
ther It Be Lawfull To | beare Armes for the seruice of a |  
Prince that is of a diuers | Religion. | *London, | Printed by*  
*John Bill, Printer to | the Kings most excellent Maiestie. | 1625. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A2.—Pref., A3-4, subs. "W. B."—R.H.: "The true Schoole of Warre" and "The Free-Schoole of Warre."—No pag.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-K.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The initials are those of the translator. The author was an Italian and a Roman Catholic, from whom the denial of absolution by their confessors to certain Italian gentlemen who had served the States in the wars of the Low Countries called forth this remonstrance. "His name," says the translator, "(as his owne silence bids me) shall not by any Curiosities or Coniectures of mine be raked into. It appears that he was desirous to do good, not ambitious to receive honour." A natural regard for his own safety was, however, probably at the root of this desire for secrecy of the author, who has not hesitated to criticise freely the instructions from Rome that authorized the action of the confessors.

104. Sixteen-twenty-five. M[arkham], G[ervase].

The | Souldiers | Accidence. | Or | An Introduction | Into  
Military Discipline, | Containing the first Principles and ne- |  
cessary knowledge meete for Captaines, | Muster-Masters, and  
all young | Souldiers of the Infantrie, or | Foote Bandes. |  
Also The Cavallarie or Formes of Trayning of Horse- |  
Troopes, as it hath beene received from | the latest and best  
experienced | Armies. | A Worke fit for all Noble, Generous,  
and good | Spirits, that loue Honor, or Honorable Action. |  
Virg. Ænei. | At hunc Horrentia Martis. | G. M. | *London |*  
*Printed by I. D. for John Bellamie, and are | to be sold at his*

*Shop at the three golden Lyons, | neere the Royall Exchange.*  
1625. |

Quarto.

Second titlepage, F2, p. 35:—The Cavallarie; | or The Formes And | Manner of Trayning of Horse, | as it hath beene received from the | latest and best experienced | Armies. | Together with all such knowledges as | are meete for the praetise of those that are | profest Teachers, or profest Lear | ners of this Noble | Art. | . . . By G. M. | London | Printed by I. D. for John Bellamie, and are | to be sold at his Shop at the three golden Lyons, | neere the Royall Exchange. 1625. |

*Collation.* Deds. to Oliver, Viscount Grandison, Lord Carew, and others, A2.—Pref., A3.—Cts., A4-6.—Err., A6<sub>2</sub>.—R.H.: “The Souldiers Accidence.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A (6 ff.), B-I.

*Copies.* B.M.; Patent Office; Bod.

Another Ed.:—London, 1643, 4<sup>o</sup> (sigs. A-H2) [v. No. 109].

*Contents.* A valuable source of information concerning the arming, training and exercising of both cavalry and infantry. In the former branch, cuirassiers, mounted harquebusiers, and dragoons had now superseded men-at-arms and lancers; <sup>1</sup> the latter was formed of pikemen, musketeers, harquebusiers, and halberdiers. The original MS. (Stowe MSS. 438) is under a different title, viz.: “An Awakt Memorye, or A callinge to acounte of those Preceptts and Dutyes which belonge to the Captaynes, Muster masters, and other officers of y<sup>e</sup> Trayned Bandes. . . . By Gervase Markham.”

105. Sixteen-twenty-five. M., G.

Vox | Militis: | Foreshewing What Perils | Are Procured  
Where The | people of this, or any other kingdome liue |  
without regard of Marshall discipline, especially | when they  
stand and behold their friends in appa- | rent danger, and  
almost subuerted by there enemies | vniust persecution, and  
yet with hold their hel- | ping hand and assistance. | Diuided  
into two parts, the first manifesting for | what causes Princes  
may enter into warre, and how neces- | sary and vsuall it is,

<sup>1</sup> Markham, in Bk. II. of his “Cavalerice or the English Horseman” (Edward White, London, 1607, 4<sup>o</sup>; and E. Allde for E. White, London, 1617-16-17, 4<sup>o</sup>, 8<sup>o</sup> pts., corrected), devotes a chapter (23) to instruction in the use of the lance. To this work the same remark applies as to the “Art of Riding” of Astley, and to the original works on equitation of Blundeville (v. No. 11).

drawne from the actions of the | Prince of Orange. The  
second discourseth of warre, | souldiers, and the time when it  
is conuenient: | collected out of the heroicall examples of |  
Count Mansfield. | Where, as in a mirrour, meet to be perused  
by Kings, Princes, | Nobles, Knights, Gentlemen, and men of  
all degrees throughout | the whole kingdome, to behold with  
what consideration | they should first enter into the warre,  
with what cou- | rage they should prosecute them, and how  
to deale | with a common Enemy. | Dedicated to Count  
Mansfield, and the honourable Councell | of Warre. | *Printed  
at London by B. A. for Thomas Archer, and are to bee | sold at  
his shop in Popes head Alley, ouer against the signe | of the Horse-  
shoe. 1625. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Ded. to Ernest, Count Mansfield, A2-3; another to Oliver,  
Viscount Grandison, "One of the Council of War," both subs. G. M.,  
A3<sub>2</sub>-4.—Verses, B1-3.—R.H.: "Vox Militis."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-12.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The initials G. M. are those of George Marcelline, and not of  
Gervase Markham, as given by Lowndes. "Vox Militis" is purloined from  
Barnaby Rich's "Allarme to England" [No. 22].

106. Sixteen-twenty-five. Neade, William.

The Double-armed Man, By the New Inuention: | Briefly  
shewing some famous Exploits atchieued by our British  
Bowmen: | With seuerall Portraitsures proper for the Pike  
and Bow. | By W. N. Archer. | *Printed for I. Grismand, at  
the signe of the Gun in Pauls Alley. 1625. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Ded. to Charles I., A2-4; another to the High Court of  
Parliament, B1.—Pref., B2.—R.H.: "The Double-Armed Man, by the  
new Invention."—No pag.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-E. Six full page woodcuts, in  
the Guildhall copy, seven, the second a duplicate of that on tp. Grenville's  
note to his copy (B.M.) runs: "This book very seldom occurs. It is  
described in Brydge's Brit. Bib. ii. 412. This was the author's copy, as  
appears from a MS. note at the back of Frontispiece." This note is to the  
effect that the privilege of making the quivers and the engines for fastening



LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY  
OF  
CALIFORNIA

**The Double-armed Man, *By the New Invention* :**  
**Briefly shewing some famous Exploits atchieued by our *Brittish* Bowmen:**  
***With seuerall Portraitures proper for the Pike and Bow.***  
**By *W. N. Archer.***



Printed for *J. Grismand,* at the signe of the Gun in *Pauls Alley.* 1625.

the bow and pike together was granted by the King to William Neade by letters patent.

*Copies.* B.M.; Guildhall.

*Contents.* A year before the publication of this work, Neade had presented the MS. to Charles I., who commanded that the author should exhibit his new weapon in St. James's Park, in his presence; which was accordingly done. Neade, thereupon, petitioned the king to make the use of his new invention compulsory by law, and he and his son were shortly after authorized by Proclamation<sup>1</sup> to instruct "all those who are fit to exercise arms in the use of the weapon: especially the chiefe officers and all others of Our Trayned-Bands." The author commences with a short history of the occasions on which the bow had been successfully employed in battle, and attempts to refute the objections which had been made against it. What was his opinion of gunpowder, may be gathered from the following passage: "Amongst all which, Bartholdus Swart, the Franciscan Fryer, with his most deuellish Inuention of Gunpowder, is the most damnable, and from hell itself inuented." He gives the range of an arrow at from 18 to 20 score yards, and says that six of them could be discharged in the time it took to load and fire one musket. The chief advantage of his combination of bow and pike was that pikemen, by using their bows, would be enabled to take part in the preliminary actions of a battle, where before they had been lookers-on only. When the enemy had approached to within about 6 score yards, the bow was to be fastened to the pike, and the ranks closed. If attacked by cavalry, the first five or six ranks were to charge pikes, whilst those in rear were to continue discharging their arrows. The bow was fastened to the pike at the place where the latter is shouldered.

The six woodcuts represent the following positions, on the page facing being the words of command for each, together with the occasion on which the position would be taken: I. The Pikeman at the order. II. At the slope and shooting. III. At the port, ready to advance or retire. IV. At the charge. V. Prepared for cavalry, with sword drawn. VI. In marching order. Had the inventor lived before fire-arms came into general use, the invention might have been of some practical value. Sir Thomas Kellie<sup>2</sup> speaks highly of it.

107. Sixteen-twenty-six. Cooke, Edward.

The Character of Warre, Or The Image of Martiall Discipline: contayning many usefull directions for Musters &

<sup>1</sup> Entitled "A Proclamation for the use of the Bowe & the Pike together in Militarie Discipline," London, 1633. Grose, in his "Military Antiquities," 1801, vol. ii., p. 173, copies it in extenso.

<sup>2</sup> "Pallas Armata," 1627, pp. 107, 108.

Armes, and the very first principles in Discipline, . . . By Edward Cooke. . . . London, Printed by Tho: Purfoot. 1626.

Quarto.

A-K in fours, K<sub>4</sub> blank.—Hazlitt, ii. 140. Arber does not mention this book.

Copies. R.A.I.

108. Sixteen-twenty-six. M[arkham], G[ervase].

The | Souldiers | Grammar : | Containing, | The High, Necessary, and most | Curious Rules of the Art Militarie : | As first, | Whether it be in Great Motions in Generall ? Or Foote | Motions Especially ? | Or Motions of Horse, Generall, or Speciall ? | The Ranges of Foote, or Horse ? | The Ranges of Officers. | The Seuerrall Imbattailings of Foote, and Horse. | The Imbattailing of a Regiment. | The Ioyning of many Regiments. | Or the Forming of Maine Battailles, of any extent, or | Number ; With their Formes, and Figures, in liuely | Demonstration. &c. | By G. M. Gent. | Printed at London, for William Shefford, and are to be solde at his | Shop in Popes-head Alley, going into Lumbarb Street. 1626. |

Quarto.

Collation. Cts., A2-4.—Diags.—R.H.: "The Souldiers Grammar."—Sigs. in 4<sup>o</sup>, A-I.

Copies. B.M.

Another Ed.:—London, 1643, 4<sup>o</sup> (sigs. I-Q2) [v. No. 109].

Contents. The "Soldiers Accidence", treating of the handling of companies and squadrons, was written as an introduction to the present book, which treats of the movements of large forces, opening with a chapter on the ancient evolutions of Infantry and Cavalry as given by Ælian. Scouting had now devolved on the Mounted Harquebussiers, and when on this duty, each man seems to have acted independently, or, in the words of the author, "trooping is loose and disbanded, holding no strict or curious form, either in rank or file, nor any certainty in pace or motion, yet do they troop most commonly in regiments."

A copy of the 2nd ed. (London, 1639, 4<sup>o</sup>) was sold at the Heber sale for 9s.

109. Sixteen-twenty-seven. M[arkham], G[ervase].

The | Second Part | Of The | Soldiers | Grammar : | Or |



A Schoole For | Young Soldiers. | Especially for all such as  
are called to | any place, or office, (how high or low soe- | uer)  
either in the Citie, or Countrey, for the | Training, and ex-  
ercising of the Tray- | ned Band, whether they be | Foote or  
Horse. | Together with perfect Figures and Demon- | strations  
for attaining the knowledge of all | manner of Imbat-  
tailings, and other | Exercises. | By. G.M. | London, | Printed  
for Hugh Perry, and are to bee sold in Brittaines | Bursse, at the  
signe of the Harrow. 1627. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A2.—Cts., A3-4.—Diags. (two folding).—R.H.: “The Second Part of The Souldiers Grammar.”—Sigs. in 4°, A-12.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another Ed.:—London, 1643, 4° (sigs. Q3-Z2) [v. below, “Souldiers Exercise”].

*Contents.* In all books written on the plan of the “Soldiers Grammar” information concerning each arm is introduced by describing the duties of its chief officer; for example, under “General of Horse”, will be found the duties of cavalry, and the various rôles it performs.

Another Edition. Sixteen-forty-three. Markham, Gervase.

The | Souldiers | Exercise: | in | three bookes. | Contain-  
ing most necessary and curious | Rules for the Exact Muster-  
ing both | of Horse-Troopes, and Foote-Bands, | with severall  
formes of Battailles de- | scribed in Figures. | A worke fit to  
be studied, and meete for | the knowledge of Captaines,  
Muster-Masters, | and all young Souldiers, and generous Spirits  
| that love the Honourable Practise | of Armes. | By G.  
Markham, Gent. | The third Edition Corrected and Amended.  
| London, | Printed by John Dawson, and are to be sold by  
Lawrence | Blaiklock, at the signe of the Sugar-loafe within |  
Temple Barre, 1643. |

Quarto.

A collected ed. of “The Souldiers Accidence” [No. 104] and “The Souldiers Grammar” (both pts.). Each has separate tp., but continuous sigs. and pag. Sigs. in 4°, A-Z2.

*Copies.* R.U.S.I.

110. Sixteen-twenty-seven. Hugo, Herman.

The Siege | Of | Breda | Written in Latin | By The R. F.  
| Herman Hugo | Of The S. of I. | Translated | Into English  
| By C. H. G. | *Printed With Licence.* M.DC.XXVII. |

Folio.

*Collation.* Frontis., engraved portrait of Bernard de Foix de la Vallette, Colonel General of France.—Title enclosed in emblematic engraving (unsigned).—Ded., \*1-2.—Hugo's Pref. to the English version, \*2<sub>2</sub>.—Col.: "Typis Judoci Dooks."—R.H.: "The Siege of Breda."—14 engraved and woodcut maps and diags.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, \* (2 ff.), A-T.

*Copies.* B.M.; R.U.S.I.

*Contents.* This is the best of the histories of the siege of Breda under Spinola; and it attained immediate popularity. C. H. G., who was Colonel of an English Regiment of Horse which had served on the Spanish side during the siege, forming a just estimate of its value, translated it into English, two years after its publication. The maps and diagrams will greatly contribute to the understanding of the system of fortification of the period. It may be remarked, that of the many great sieges of the century, this was, perhaps, the most famous. "The eyes of the whole world were fixed upon Breda," and princes served as common soldiers in the ranks of the besiegers, with their own hands digging in the trenches, and aiding in the construction of the works. [V. Orig. 817.]

The Jesuit, Hugo, was the author of the "De Militis Equestri" (733), and of some religious works.

111. Sixteen-twenty-seven. Hugo, Herman.

The Seige | Of Breda | By The Armes Of | Phillip The  
Fovrt | Vnder The Gouernment | Of Isabella | Atchiued |  
By The Conduēt | Of | Ambr. Spinola. | *Louanii ex officina  
Hastenii* M.DC.XXVII. |

Folio.

*Collation.* Engraved emblematic frontis.—Ded. to Spinola, subs. Gerrat Barry, \*1-2.—Col.: "Lovanii Ex Officinâ Henrici Hastenii, Urbis & Academiæ Typographi, M.D.C.XXVIII.", V4.—Maps and diagrams.—R.H.: "The Siege of Breda."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, \*(2 ff.), A-V.

*Contents.* Another translation of the "Obsidio Bredana" of Hugo. The translator, an Irishman, who had served with many of his countrymen under Spinola during the siege, does not seem to have known of C. H. G.'s version. The title-page and illustrations of both are reproduced from those of the original, Barry's version containing all save the frontispiece and the map of

Breda after the siege; it had not, however, like C. H. G.'s the advantage of the Author's commendation; also, both its printing and its spelling are bad. The place of its publication, Louvain, had two Irish Colleges, one for Franciscans, the other for Dominicans; and Cotton<sup>1</sup> states that these monks published several English and Irish books.

112. Sixteen-twenty-seven. Dansie, John.

A Mathematicall Manuel : | Wherein | Is handled Arithmeticke, pla- | nimetry, | stereometry, and the | embattelling of armies. | Whereby | Any man that can but add and | subtract, may learne to multiply | and divide in two houres by | Rabdologie, without any trou- | ble at all to the memorie. | . . . . Written by Iohn Dansie student in | the Mathematiques. | *London, | Printed by William Iones | for Richard Cartwright. 1627. |*

Duodecimo.

*Collation.* Ded. to Sir Paul Pinder, A<sub>2</sub>-3.—Pref., A<sub>3</sub><sub>2</sub>-4.—R.H., varied.—Sigs. in 12<sup>s</sup>, A-E<sub>4</sub>; E<sub>4</sub>, blank.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Adapted from Napier. Pp. 78-82 show the application of "Rabdologie," or "Napiers' bones," to military purposes. The author informs his readers that "instruments may be bought from him ready made."

113. Sixteen-twenty-seven. Kellie, Sir Thomas.

Pallas Armata, | or, | Militarie Instructions for the Learned : | And all Generous Spirits, who affect the Profession of Armes. | The First Part, | Containing the Exercise of Infanterie, as well | Ancient, as Moderne : Wherein are Clearely set downe all the | Postures and Motions, belonging to Battallions of Foote. | *Printed at Edinburgh, by the Heires of Andro Hart. 1627. |*

Quarto.

<sup>1</sup> "Typog. Gazetteer," Oxford, 1831.

<sup>2</sup> Lord Napier of Merchistoun, the inventor of Logarithms. For some military inventions by him see an original document preserved among the MSS. of Anthony Bacon, Esq., in the Lambeth Library, marked 658, anno 1596; see also "Tilloch's Philosophical Magazine," 1804, 8vo, vol. xviii. p. 53.

*Collation.* Engraved emblematic tp.—Ded. to John, Earl of Rothes, ¶ 1-2.—Prefs., ¶ 3-¶ 3.—Verses, ¶ 4-¶ 11.—Col.: “Printed at Edinburgh by the Heires of Andro Hart. Anno Dom. 1627.”—Diags. and ills., one folding.—R.H., varied.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, 1 f. unsigned, ¶-¶ 11, A-R2.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* In twelve chapters: I. Footmen and their arming. II. Of files and ranks. III. Of distances, *i.e.* open order, order, and close order. IV. Marching. V. Manual and firing exercise. VI.-X. Parade movements. XI. Of the particular exercising of pikemen and musketeers—an excellent account. XII. Words of command for pike and musket in exercising and on service.

There is another work entitled “Pallas Armata,” written in 1670-71 by Sir James Turner, and printed in London 1683. Turner’s is the earliest history of military antiquities, and is frequently quoted from by Grose.

114. Sixteen-twenty-eight. Norton, Robert.

The | Gvnner | Shewing The | Whole Practise | Of Artillerie : | With all the Appurtenances there- | vnto belonging. | Together with the making of Extra- | ordinary Artificiall Fireworkes, as well | for Pleasure and Triumphes, as for | Warre and Seruice. | Written by Robert Norton, one of his | Maiesties Gunners and Enginiers. | *London, | Printed by A. M. for Humphrey Robinson, and are | to be sold at the three Pidgeons in Paules- | Churchyard. 1628. |*

Folio.

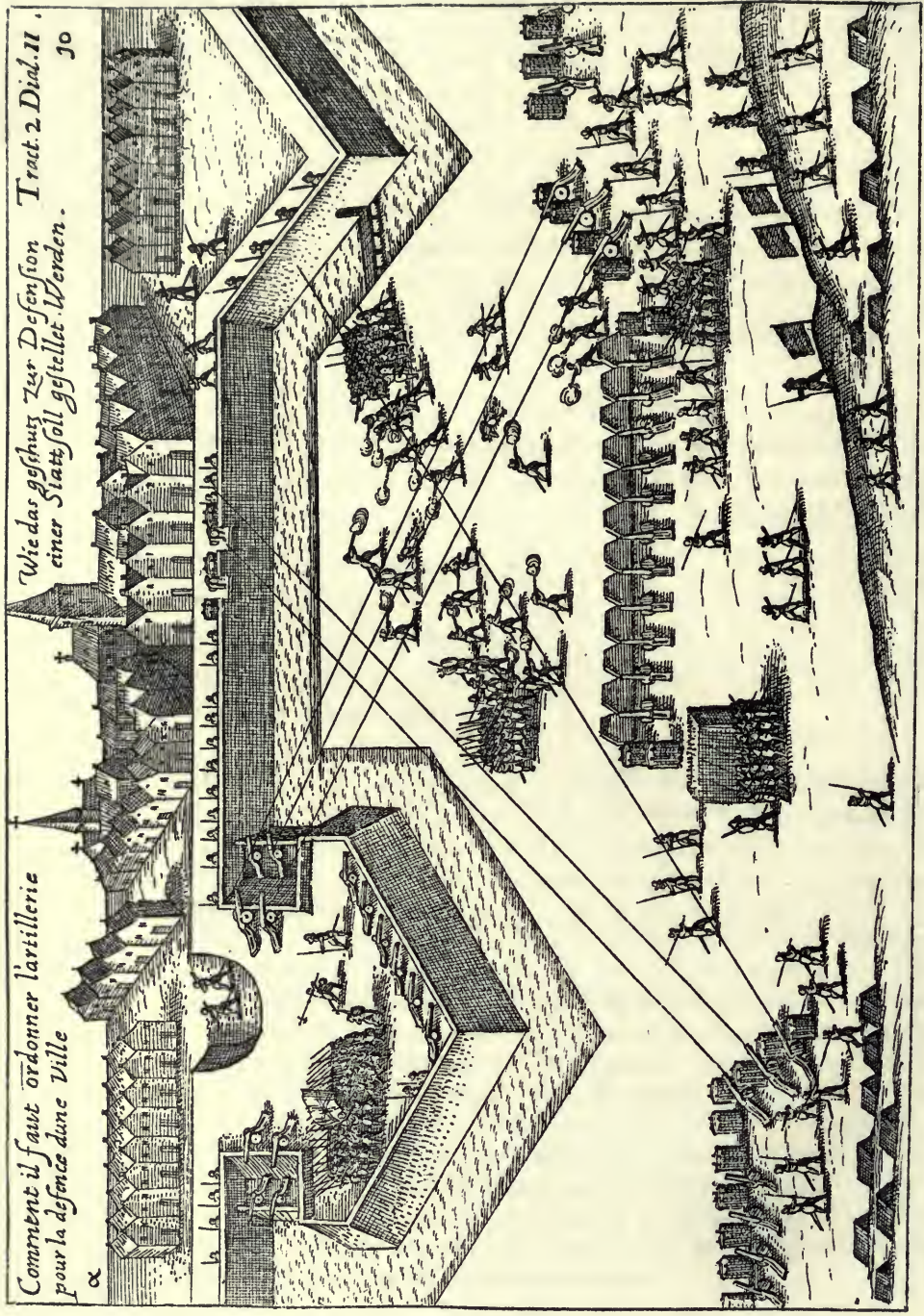
*Collation.* Emblematic tp., A2.—Ded. to Charles I., A3.—Verses, A4.—Cts., A5.—Err., A6.—Pref., B1-2<sub>2</sub>.—“Envoy”, Y3<sub>2</sub>.—Small ills. and diags. and 24 full-page engravings, with letterpress in Fr. and Ger.—R.H.: “The Practise of Artillerie.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Y; A has 6 ff., Y4, blank.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.; W.O. (2); Bod.; R.U.S.I.

*Contents.* Entered Reg. Sta. Co., Dec. 27, 1627, as “Of the Elements and Practice of Artillery.”—Arber, iv. 191. To save expense, the full-page plates were printed from de Bry’s plates to his French and German versions of Ufano’s “Artilleria” (Francfort, 1614, fol.). Norton anticipated that it would therefore be said that “The Gunner” was only a translation; he denies this, but admits an adaptation. He claims to have avoided “the apparant errors of Santbech, the erronious principles of Tartaglia, the false rules of Russelli, the time ouer-worne directions of Cataneo, the grosse allowances of Collado for Montures and Imbasings, especially the arch false proportionality taught in Mr. Smiths Art of Gunnery, now entituled the Complete Souldier, many of which are by Mr. Diggs and myself noted”; Malthus rebukes him for his censoriousness.



V.



Comment il faut ordonner l'artillerie  
pour la defence d'une Ville

Wie das geschutz zur Defension  
einer Statt soll gestellt werden.

From Norton's "Gunner", 1628.

115. Sixteen-twenty-eight. Woodall, John.

Woodalls Viaticum : | The path-way to the Surgions Chest.  
| Containing | Chirurgical | Instructions | For the yonger  
sort of Surgions | now employed in the service of | His  
Maiestie for the inten- | ded reliefe of Rochell. | And Com-  
posed by Iohn Woodall, one of | the present Masters or  
Governors of the Com- | panie of Barber Surgions London. |  
Intended chiefly for the better Curing of | Wounds made by  
Gun-shott. | Published by Authoritie. | Omnia Terrenæ per  
vices sunt Alienæ. | August 11. 1628. | *Imprinted at London.*  
1628. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Pref., A2-4.—R.H.: “A Helpe to the Surgeons  
Chest.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>o</sup>, A-D.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another Edition. Sixteen-thirty-nine.

Viaticum, | Being The | Path-Way To The | Surgeons  
Chest. | Containing, | Chirurgical Instructions | for the  
yonger sort of Surgeons, employed | in the Service of his  
Maiestie, or | for the Common-Wealth upon | any occasion  
whatsoever. | Intended chiefly for the better curing of Wounds  
made | by Gunshot. | First published by Authority, Anno  
1628, and now revi- | sed and enlarged by the Author, John  
Woodall M<sup>r</sup> | in Surgery. | Omnia terrena per vices sunt  
alienæ. | *London, | Printed by E. P. for Nicholas Bourne.* 1639. |

Folio.

This revised and enlarged ed. is to be found in the volume of Woodall's  
collected works, entitled “The Surgeons Mate or Military and Domestique  
Surgery.” It contains additional chapters on “Cataplasms” and “Trepans-  
ing,” with a plate showing the various instruments used in the latter  
operation.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* On the breaking out of the Civil Wars Charles I. commanded  
the Company of Barber-Surgeons to send, for his special service, the sixteen  
of their number who were most expert in the healing of gunshot wounds.  
Each was paid at the rate of 2s. 7d. a day, and was supplied with a “Surgeons

Chest" valued at £27, and a "Magazin or Store-chest" valued at £48, with contents sufficient for the needs of the 250 men under his charge.

116. Sixteen-twenty-eight. Cooke, Edward.

The | Prospectiue Glasse of | Warre. | Shewing you a glimps  
of Warres | Mystery, in her admirable Stratagems, Policies,  
| Wayes ; in Victualling of an Armie, prouiding | Money to  
pay Souldiers, finding out the Enemies | Purposes, Traps, and  
Stratagems : Ordering of Marches, | Framing of Battails,  
sundry Fights, Retreats, and the | like, to auoide Battell or  
Fight. | Furnished with Argument to encourage, and | Skill  
to Instruēt. By C. E. [*sic*] | Warre is a Schoole of necessary  
Knowledge. | *London*: | *Printed for Michael Sparke, dwelling at  
the signe of the blue | Bible in Greene-Arbor. 1628.* |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1, has woodcut representing an encounter between two bodies of musketeers.—Ded. to Sir John Cooke, A2-3.—Pref., A4.—6 diags. (one folding).—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-H2.—At the foot of H2, is the Advertise-ment: "At the signe of the Angell in Lumberstreet, you may haue an excellent Plotforme for the postures of Pike and Musket."

*Copies.* B.M.; W.O.; R.A.I.

*Contents.* A collection of notes taken from ancient and modern writers on tactics, but far less prolix than most of such compilations. It is a supplement to "The Character of Warre" [No. 107]. In Chap. III. Cooke describes, with the help of a diagram, the battle fought at Amiens between Henry IV. of France and Albert of Austria, showing, by another diagram, how he himself, with a force of 12,000 infantry, 4,000 cavalry, and 6 guns, would have opposed the French king's force of equal strength.

117. Sixteen-twenty-eight.

A New | Invention Of | Shooting Fire-Shafts in | Long-  
Bowes : | Wherein, besides the maner of making | them, there  
is contained a briefe Discourse | of the vsefulnessse of them in  
our mo- | derne Warres, by Sea and Land. | Published by a  
true Patriot for the common good | of his native Countrey of  
England. | *London*, | *Printed by H. L. for Iohn Bartlet, at the  
gilt Cup in Cheape-side. | Anno Dom. 1628.* |



Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A2.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-B.—See under “Invention” in Brit. Mus. Cat.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The author alludes to Neade’s “ingenious device of screwing bow and pike together,” and recommends that, for trial of his own weapon, a bull should be tied to a stake, or let loose on a common, to be shot at by archers, when “haply the madding of the enraged beast would teach some profitable stratagem for war.” The B.M. copy has a MS. note, probably the author’s own: “The author of the Invention and the ensuing Treatise did publish both some few months since; the better to discover what men (with reason) could object against the use of fyre shafts. And though much hath ben sayd (as in all noveltyes) by scrupulous men; yet more confirmed by this experiment, he thinks the thing not only usefull in itselfe, but that the seasonable demonstration in these times, will make it acceptable to his Countrymen. For as Racquets among the french, so Bowes and Arrowes are the naturall passions of the Englishman.”

118. Sixteen-twenty-nine. Malthus, Francis.

A | Treatise | Of Artificial | Fire-Works | Both for Warres  
and Re- | creation: with divers plea- | sant Geometricall ob-  
serua- | tions Fortifications, and | Arithmetically Ex- | amples.  
| In fauour of Mathematicall | Students. | Newly written in  
French, and | Englished by the Authour | Tho: Malthus. |  
*Printed for Richard Hawkins, and are | to be sold at his Shop in  
Chancery lane neere | to Serieants Inne. 1629. |*

Octavo.

*Collation.* Engraved emblematic frontis., signed “T. Cecill”, has short title, “A treatise of Artificiall Fireworkes by T. Malthus. London for Richard Hawkins in Chancery Lane 1629.”—Tp., A2.—Pref., A3-6.—Verses, A7.—Cts., S4-7.—Diags. and fine engravings.—R.H., varied.—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, A-S; A8 and S8, blank.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* This work, though in advance of anything so far written on the subject in English, does not attain to the standard of Thibourel and Appier. Yet it is with foreign treatises it must be weighed, for Malthus received his training in pyrotechnics abroad. He describes and illustrates the manufacture, uses, etc., of mortars, grenades, fire arrows, and petards, and he explains the manner of charging the last, a detail that even Ufano and Thibourel had failed to understand. As for other writers, they had penned whole

volumes of trash on the subject of pyrotechnics ; one copying the absurdities of the other, they gave prescriptions for compounding fireworks of all sorts of apothecary's drugs, verdigris, vitriol, etc., and, as reaching the height of the ridiculous, he instances the directions for the composition of an extraordinary ball, of which the pestiferous smoke is to poison a whole army in the field, while it is to serve also for the amusement of people in cities. But so manifestly were these extravagances the fruit of ignorance, that their propagators, including the plagiarist Norton, were to be pitied, not blamed.

The third part is on geometry as applied to fortification, while the fourth part is on fortification. The printer has given the author's name wrongly ; it should be "Francis." A MS. note in the copy examined runs : "Le Sieur Malthus ; Gentil-homme Anglois, Commissaire general des Feaux & artifices de l'artillerie de France, Capitaine general des sappes et mines d'icelle & Ingenieur és armées du Roi." It was Malthus who, about the year 1634, introduced the mortar into the French service. Under his guidance a series of experiments was carried out in the presence of French officers, which ended in the adoption of that piece.—Boutell's "Arms and Armour." Brunet makes no mention of this writer, who was the author of another work, written in French, but not translated, entitled "La Pratique de la Guerre" (Paris, 1650, 4°, and 1668, 12° ; a 3rd ed. is mentioned by Douce, MS. 266 Bod. Lib.

119. Sixteen-twenty-nine. Bernard, Richard.

The | Bible-Battells | Or | The Sacred Art Military. | For  
the rightly wageing of | warre according to Holy Writ. |  
Compiled for the vse of all | such valiant Worthies, and ver- |  
tuously Valerous Souldiers, as vp- | on all iust occasions be  
ready to af- | front the Enemies of God, our | King, and  
Country. | By Ric. Bernard Rector of | Batcombe Somerset-  
shire. | . . . *Printed for Edward Blackmore, and are | to be sold  
by Iames Boler at the Signe of the | Flowre de Luce in Paules  
Church-yard. | 1629. |*

Duodecimo.

*Collation.* Ded. to Charles I., ¶2-4.—Pref., ¶4<sub>2</sub>-9.—Cts., ¶10-12.—  
Err., M5.—R.H.: "The Bible-battells."—Sigs. in 12<sup>s</sup>, ¶, A-M6 ; M6,  
blank.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* A religious treatise written on the occasion of the expedition in aid of Rochelle, with the purpose of "bringing into the camp the use of piety."

120. Sixteen-twenty-nine. Achesone, James.

The | Military | Garden. | Or | Instructions For All Young  
Soldiers, | And Such Who Are Disposed To | Learn, And  
Have Knowledge | Of The Militarie Discipline. | Wherein  
are set downe the conditions and qualities | which are re-  
quired in every severall officer | of a private company. | Ob-  
served and set in order according to the best | Military practise  
by James Achesone | Gentleman at Armes, Burges of | Edin-  
burgh. | *Edinburgh.* | *Printed by Iohn Wreittoun | Anno Dom.*  
1629. | *Cum privilegio Regali* |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Ded. to David Akenside, Provost of Edinburgh, subs. James Achesone, \*2.—R.H.: “The Military Garden.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, \* (2 ff.), A-E2.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

*Contents.* Contains similar information to Sir Thomas Kellie’s “Pallas Armata”, written two years previously; but the motions in the handling of the musket and pike (for a left as well as for a right-handed man) are rather more fully described. Achesone here uses the word “string” for “file,” the first occasion on which I have seen it employed in this sense.

121. Sixteen-thirty-one. D., I.

Laws And Ordi- | nances touching military discipline. |  
Set downe and established the 13. | of August. 1590. | Trans-  
lated into English by I. D. | *Imprinted at the Haghe by the*  
*widowe and heires of the deceased Hille- | brand Jacobs van*  
*Wouw, Ordinarie Printer to the high and migh- | tie Lords the*  
*Stats Generall. Anno 1631. | Cum Privilegio.* |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Imprimatur: “Thus done and decreed at Arnhem after sundry conferences had hereupon with the chiefest Commaunders of these vnitied Provinces. It being farther appoynted, that these orders and laws shalbe published both in the Campe, and wheresoever els it shalbe meete and requisite, and that at every muster the Commissaries shal reade, and propound the same agarne [*sic*] unto the Companies. The 13. of August 1590. By order of the Councill of State. Chr. Huyghens.”—No pag.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-B.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another Ed.:—*Edinburgh. Re-printed by the Heir of Andrew Anderson, by Order of His Majesties Privy Council. 1689. 8°. 8 ff.*

122. Sixteen-thirty-two. Melzo, Ludovico.  
Military Rules.

“8° Decembris 1631. Master Blunt. Entred for his Copy under the bandes of master Weckerlyn. and both the wardens a Booke called Millitary Rules written by Lewis Melzo a knight of the order of Malta.”—Arber, iv. 267.

Allowing for the usual time elapsing between licensing and publishing, the imprint would be dated 1632. [V. No. 123 and Orig. 723.]

123. Sixteen-thirty-two. Basta, Giorgio.  
The Government of the Light Horse.

“Eodem die [December 8, 1631]. Entred for his Copy under the same bandes a booke called The gouernment of the light horse by George Basta an Earle of the sacred Empire in Hurst and Marñoras &c.”—Arber, iv. 267.

I can find no further record of this translation. This remark applies also to the translation of Melzo's “Military Rules,” entered to the same printer, on the same day [No. 122], and it is probable, that, as in the case of Nos. 47 and 48, the two translations were intended as complements, and were to have been issued together. But if they were actually printed, which is doubtful, both are now lost; it is strange that succeeding writers, and especially that Sir James Turner, should not have mentioned them. On the other hand, the same remark would most certainly have been made of the translation of Londoño, which likewise has entirely disappeared, had not a copy of its companion, the translation of Valdes, been discovered by Hazlitt. [V. Orig. 724.]

124. Sixteen-thirty-two. C[ruso], J[ohn].

Militarie | Instruções | for the | Cavallerie : | or | rules  
and directions | for the service of | horse, | collected out of  
divers | forrain authors ancient | and modern, | and rectified  
and supplied, accord- | ing to the present practise | of the  
Low-Country | Warres. | . . . | Printed by the printers to the  
Universitie | of Cambridge. MDCXXXII. |

Folio.

Collation. Fine engraved frontispiece.—Tp., A1.—Ded. to Thomas,





From Tarducci, "Delle Machine," 1601.



diags.—R.H. : “The First[-Third] Part of the Swedish Discipline.”—The account of the Battle of Leipsic affixed to the 3rd pt. has separate pag. but continuous sigs.—Sigs. in 4°, A-M, Aa-Ff2.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The first part of the “Swedish Discipline”—the “Formes of Prayer”—is a translation from the “Arma Suecica.”<sup>1</sup> Copies of it, from the same set-up, had been sent out separately by Butter and Bourne shortly before, under the title, “The Devotions and formes of prayer, . . . Being the first part of our intended Booke concerning the Swedish Discipline”, in order to forestall a rival printer, who was about to issue another translation. This is the first of a series of fifteen pamphlets relating to the Thirty Years’ War, all printed by Butter and Bourne, and appearing under various titles between 1632 and 1639, as follows:—

The Swedish Discipline.

The Swedish Intelligencer.—Four Parts.

A Continuation of the German History.—The Fifth Part.

A History of the present Warres of Germany.—A Sixth Part.

A Supplement to the Sixth Part of the Germane History.

The German History continued.—The Seventh Part. “All which is done not by the former but another author.”

The Modern History of the World.—The Eighth Part.

The Principall Passages of Germany etc. [No. 1.]

The Continuation of the Actions etc. . . . in the Upper Germanie. [No. 2.]

Diatelesma. The Moderne History of the World. [No. 3.]

Diatelesma. The second part of the Moderne History of the World.

[No. 4.]

Diatelesma: the fifth part. [No. 5.]

“A Continuation, etc. . . . The Fifth Part” and the “Supplement to the Sixth Part” are from Hazlitt; the others are in the B.M. The earlier numbers are by the author of the “Discipline,” and, like that, were issued anonymously; the Seventh Part is said on the title-page to be done “not by the former but another author”, signing himself in the Preface “N. C.”, who continued the series. A copy in the B.M. of the 2nd ed. of Pt. I. of the “Swedish Intelligencer” bears the words, “By Sir Tho. Roe”, in a contemporary hand, above the imprint. Roe, who had been ambassador to the Sultan from 1621 to 1628, was sent in 1629 to the Swedish King, to whom he suggested the invasion of Germany. He returned to England in 1630, where he lived retired, out of office, and with straitened means, until 1636. He died in 1644. However, Edmund Rossingham, in a letter to Edward, Viscount Conway, April 16, 1639, ascribes the authorship to the learned Dr. Watts, Chaplain to the General of the Forces in the Scotch Expedition of 1639. He writes, “This is [Dr. Watt’s] opinion, who has been in the

<sup>1</sup> By Arlanibæus, Frankfort, 1631, 4°; a Continuation, *ib.*, 1632, 4°.



wars of Germany. This is he that wrote the King of Sweden's story from his entry into Germany till his death";<sup>1</sup> and Anthony à Wood says, "Will. Watts . . . wrote also (1) The History of Gustavus Adolphus. . . . He also published the several numbers of news books in the English tongue (more than 40) containing the occurrences done in the Wars between the King of Sweden and the German. All published before the Civil Wars of England began."<sup>2</sup>

126. Sixteen-thirty-four. Fisher, Thomas.

Warlike Directions or the Souldiers practice.

*Entered to Harper* 21. *Jan.* 1633 [*i.e.* 1634].—Arber, iv. 312.

Second Edition. Sixteen-forty-three.

Warlike Directions : | Or The | Souldiers | Practice. | Set  
forth for the benefit of all | such as are, or will be Scholars  
of | Martiall Discipline. | But especially for all such Officers  
as | are not yet settled, or rightly grounded | in the Arte of  
Warre. | By a Practitioner in the same Art, T. F. | The  
second Edition, corrected and | amended. | *London,* | *Printed*  
*by Thomas Harper, and are to be sold | at his House in Little*  
*Britaine, 1643. |*

Octavo.

*Collation.* Pref., A2.—Cts., G<sub>1-4</sub>.—Err., G<sub>4</sub>.—Diags.—R.H.: "The Souldiers Practice."—Sigs. in 8°, A-G<sub>4</sub>.

*Copies.* B.M.

The Third Edition, corrected and amended. 1644, 8°. A-F in 8<sup>ms</sup>. Woodcuts.—Hazlitt, i. 157.

*Contents.* A drill book. It goes more fully into detail than any yet mentioned. The author, who had seen twenty-six years' service in the Low Countries, was for many years instructor to the Trained Bands of Kent. Like others of his time, he uses the word "fire-lock" when he means "wheel-lock." The former was the invention of the French, and was used for the first time about the year 1635.

127. Sixteen-thirty-four. Polybius.

The | History Of | Polybivs The | Megalopolitan. | The

<sup>1</sup> "Cal. of State Papers," 1639, Dom. Series.

<sup>2</sup> "Ath. Ox.," vol. i. c. 831, Lond., 1691.

five first Bookes entire : | With all the parcels of the subse- |  
quent Bookes unto the eighteenth, | according to the Greeke |  
Originall. | Also the manner of the Romane encam- | ping,  
extracted from the discription | of Polybivs. | Translated into  
English by Edward | Grimeston, Sergeant at Armes. | *London,*  
| *Printed by Nicholas Okes for | Simon Waterson. | 1634. |*

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp., enclosed in woodcut, ¶2.—Ded. to William, Lord Craven, ¶3.—Translator's Ded., ¶4-A3.—Err., A4.—Cts., Ccc3-Ddd3.—R.H.: "The History of Polybius."—Sigs. ¶, A-Z in 4<sup>s</sup>; Aa-Zz, Aaa-Ddd in 6<sup>s</sup>; D4, blank.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Translated from Louis de Meigret's French version, of which there is an ed. of 1552 in the B.M. The fragment relating to the military organization and encampments of the Romans ("De militia Romanorum et castrorum") forms part of Bk. VI. of the history, and was at first printed separately, eds. appearing in Venice, 1529, 4<sup>o</sup>, Basle, 1537, 8<sup>o</sup>, and Geneva, 1596, fol. See also Grævius' "Thesaurus Antiquitatem Romanarum," 1694, fol., vol. 10; Stewechius' ed. of Vegetius, Leyden, 1592, 1607, and 1644; and Schryver's "Veteres de re Militari scriptores," 1670, 8<sup>o</sup>.

128. Sixteen-thirty-four. Peacham, Henry.

The | Compleat | Gentleman. | Fashioning him absolut, in  
the most necessa- | ry and commendable Qualities concern-  
ing | Minde or Body, that may be required | in a Noble  
Gentleman. | Wherevnto is annexed a de- | scription of the  
order of a Maine Battaile or | Pitched Field, eight severall  
wayes : with the | Art of Limming and other Additions |  
newly Enlarged. | By | Henry Peacham Master of Arts: Some-  
time | of Trinitie Colledge in Cambridge. | . . . | *London,*  
*Printed for Francis Constable, and are to be sold at his | shoppe in*  
*Pauls Church yard, at the signe of the | the [sic] Crane. 1634. |*

Quarto.

*Contents.* This is the 2nd ed. The military "observations" will be found in chap. xx., pp. 240-250; also in the 3rd ed. (London, 1661, 4<sup>o</sup>), but not in the 1st (London, 1622, 4<sup>o</sup>). The observations comprise instructions in

the use of the musket and pike, and in drilling. A very full description of this chapter has been given in "Unit. Ser. Mag.," 1895, p. 617.

*Copies.* B.M.; Guildhall (1634).

129. Sixteen-thirty-four. Markham, Gervase.

The | Art Of | Archerie. | Shewing how it is most ne- |  
cessary in these times for this | Kingdome, both in Peace and  
War, | and how it may be done without | charge to the Country  
trouble to | the People, or any hinderance | to necessary  
Occasi- | ons. | Also, | Of the Discipline, the Postures, | and  
whatsoever else is necessarie | for the attayning to the | Art. |  
*London, | Printed by B. A. and T. F. for Ben: | Fisher, and are  
to be sold at his Shop, | at the Signe of the Talbot without  
Alders- | Gate. 1634. |*

Octavo.

*Collation.* Frontis., A1, woodcut of an archer.—Tp., A2.—Ded. to Charles I., A3-a1; another to William Trumball, a2-3; another to the Companies of Bowyers and Archers, a4-5.—Cts., a6-8.—R.H.: "The Art of Archerie."—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, A, a, B-M4.

In the Huth Cat. is described a copy formerly belonging to Heber, but dated a year earlier, 1633.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

*Contents.* So late in the seventeenth century it is somewhat surprising to find a writer of Markham's reputation advocating that the trained bands should be supplemented by corps of bowmen, "who would doubtless cause fear and amazement to all those that durst attempt an invasion." Not that he would underrate other weapons, but that such auxiliaries could be armed at little cost, and trained without inconvenience.

130. Sixteen-thirty-four. Barry, Gerat.

A Discourse | Of | Military Discipline, | Devided Into |  
Three Bookes, | Declaringe | The partes and sufficiencie  
ordained in a pri- | vate Souldier, and in each Officer; |  
Servinge in the Infanterie, till the election and office of  
the | Captaine generall; | And The Laste Booke Treatinge  
Of | Fire-wourckes of rare executiones by sea and lande, as  
alsoe | of firtifasions. | Composed by Captaine Gerat Barry

Irish. | *At Bruxells, | By the Widowe of Jhon Mommart. |*  
M.DC.XXXIV. |

Folio.

*Collation.* Engraved frontis.—Tp., a1.—Ded. to David, Earl of Barrymore, dated from the Court of Brussels, May 1. 1534., a2-3.—Pref., a4.—Cts., Dd2-Ee4.—Err., Ee42.—Licences from Philip of Spain and others, E5-6.—Printer's device, Ee62.—Tables and diags. (14 folding).—R.H.: "Military Discipline", "Fire-Wourckes", "Fortificationes and Instructiones."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, a, A-Z, Aa-Ee; Ee has 6 ff.—Bks. II. and III. have separate tpp.

*Copies.* B.M.; W.O.; Patent Office; R.A.I.

*Contents.* A compilation of no great merit. The bad spelling is accounted for by the book having been printed abroad. Barry was the translator of Hugo's "Siege of Breda" [No. 111].

131. Sixteen-thirty-five. Babington, John.

*Pyrotechnia | Or, | A Discovrse Of | Artificiall | Fire-  
Works: | In which the true Grounds of that Art are plainly  
| and perspicuously laid downe: | Together with sundry such  
Motions, both Straight and | Circular, performed by the helpe  
of Fire, as are not | to be found in any other Discourse of this  
kind, | Extant in any Language. | Whereunto is annexed a  
short Treatise of Geo- | metrie . . . Written by John Bab-  
ington Gunner, and Student | in the Mathematics. | London,  
| Printed by Thomas Harper, | for Ralph Mab, | MDCXXXV.*

Folio.

*Collation.* Ded. to the Earl of Newport, a02.—Pref., a03.—Cts., a04.—Verses, a05-6.—Engravings, one folding.—R.H.: "Pyrotechnia, or, Artificiall Fire-Workes."—Sigs. in 6<sup>s</sup>, a0, A-F. The treatise on Geometry has separate tp. and pag.

*Copies.* B.M.; W.O.; R.A.I.

*Contents.* Babington describes a fire-work that "may serve as well for service in war as for pleasure or triumph", which in its effect may be regarded as a prototype of our shrapnel shell. It consisted of a ball, twelve inches in diameter, hollowed to receive the charge, and having holes radiating from the concavity to the surface for the insertion of cylindrical chambers, each to contain a bullet. It was fired from a mortar.



LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY  
OF  
CALIFORNIA



From Barriffè's "Military Discipline," 1639.

132. Sixteen-thirty-five. G., F.

Dvell-Ease | A Worde with | Valiant Spiritts She- | wing  
the abuse of Duells, that | Valour, refuseth Challenges and  
| Priuate Combates. | . . . sett foorth by G. F. a Defendour  
of Christian Valoure. *Imprinted by Ann Griffin London 1635.*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Fine engraved folding tp.—Ded. to Prince Charles, A2-B1.—  
Two Prefs., C1-4.—R.H.: “Duell-case . . .”—Sigs. in 4°, A-N; B has one f.

*Copies.* B.M.

A religious dissertation on the evils of duelling.

133. Sixteen-thirty-five. Barriffe, William.

Military | Discipline: | Or, | The Yong Artillery Man. |  
Wherein is discoursed and showne the Po- | stures both of  
Musket and Pike: | the exactest way, &c. | Together with  
the Motions which are to be | used, in the exercising of a  
Foot-compa- | ny. With divers and severall formes | and  
figures of Battell; with their | reducements; very necessary |  
for all such as are stu- | dious in the Art | Military. | By  
William Barriff. | [Quotation from Psal. 144. 1.] | *London, |*  
*Printed by Thomas Harper, for Ralph Mab. 1635. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* 1st f. blank.—2nd f, Arms of Percy, verso blank.—Portrait of  
Barriffe, by G. Glover, “ætatis suæ. 35”, 201.—Tp., 202.—Deds. and  
Verses to Algernon, Earl of Northumberland, Sir Ralph Bosvile, and others.  
—Cts. and Err., Z4-7; Z8 blank.—Sigs. in 8°, 20, A (4 ff.), B-Z.—R.H.:  
“Military Discipline, or The young Artillery Man.”

The names of the principal members of the Artillery Company in 1635  
head the third Ded. These names vary, of course, in the later eds. The  
R.H. are the same in all.

*Copies.* Guildhall.

Second Edition. Sixteen-thirty-nine.

Military | Discipline: | . . . Whereunto is also added the  
Beneficiall Vse of the Half-Pike | joyned with the Musket.  
With the way to draw | up the Swedish Brigade. | The  
second Edition, Newly revised and much | enlarged. | By

William Barriffe, Lieutenant. | *London*, | *Printed by R. O. for Ralph Mab.* 1639. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Frontis., portrait of author.—Arms of Artillery Company, A1.—Tp., A2.—Deds., A3-8, ¶1-4.—Pref. and Verses, a1-4.—Cts., Dd1-4.—R.H., as before.—Tables and diags. (5 folding).—Sigs. in 8°, A, ¶, a, B-N, n, O-Z, \*, Aa-Dd4; ¶, a, n, and Dd are 4°, C has 10 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

Third Edition. Sixteen-forty-three.

Military | Discipline: | Or the Young | Artillery-Man. | [Wording of remainder as in 2nd ed., but lining different.] | The third Edition, Newly revised and much enlarged, | By, | Captaine William Barriffe. | [Quotation from the Psalms.] | *London*, | *Printed by John Dawson, and are to be sold by Andrew Crooke*, | *at the signe of the Green Dragon in Paules Church-yard*, 1643. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Frontis. has arms of Artillery Company.—Tp., A1.—Deds., A2-7.—Pref., A8.—Verses, a1-4.—Cts., Ff4-7.—Tables and diags. (5 folding).—R.H., as before.—Sigs. in 8°, A, a, B-Z, Aa-Ff; a, C and D are 4°, Ff8 blank.

*Copies.* B.M.; Guildhall; R.U.S.I.

Another Ed.: *London*, 1648, 8°. W.O.

Sixth Edition. Sixteen-sixty-one.

Militarie | Discipline: | . . . As also, Mars his Triumph. | And in this last Edition is added, | Some brief Instructions for the Exercising of the Cavalry, or Horse-Troopes. | The Sixth Edition, Newly Revised and Enlarged, | By Colonel William Barriffe. | . . . *London*, *Printed by Gartrude Dawson*, 1661. |

Quarto.

A Second Title:

Some Brief | Instructions | For the Exercising of the |



Cavalry, | Or, | Horse-Troopes. | Wherein is set forth | An  
 Abstract of the Duty of all the Officers | belonging to the  
 Cavalry, with the Duty and | Exercise of the Troopes, from  
 their entring upon | that Service, to the time of | their Dis-  
 banding. | As also is Included their Postures, Motions, and  
 Stipends, both | ac- | cording to the Antient and Modern  
 Discipline and Practise. | By J. B. | Licensed and Entered  
 according to Order. | *London*: | *Printed by Gartrude Dawson*,  
 1661. |

*Copies.* B.M.; R.A.I.

*Collation.* Frontis., portrait of author, 1st f. unsigned.—Arms of Artillery Company, 2nd f. unsigned.—Tp., A1.—Deds., A2-31.—Pref., A32.—Verses, A4.—Cts., Z4.—Tables and diags. (2 folding).—R.H., same.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, “Militarie Discipline”, A-Z. “The brief Instructions” has sigs. Aaa-Fff; it follows the last ed. of “Mars his Triumph” which has sigs. aa-dd2.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The fact of this book having passed through six editions in twenty-six years is sufficient proof of its importance. It gives a full account of the infantry drill as practised immediately before the Civil Wars. On p. 335 of the first edition, Barriſſe says that officers in several parts of Christendom were devising various contrivances—most of them clumsy and useless—for making Muskets defensive as well as offensive “by unscrewing the heads of their rests, and then screwing the staffs of their rests into the muzzle of the musket, with the arming of a pike at the lower end.” But it was not till some years later that these inventions developed into the bayonet; and so conservative were the authorities that the pike was not entirely discarded till after 1706.<sup>1</sup>

The treatise by J. B. was added to the 6th ed., owing to the changes brought about in Cavalry tactics during the Civil Wars; Cruso’s book, which Barriſſe had so warmly praised in 1635, and the existence of which, he says, had made it unnecessary for him to write on cavalry, was no longer up to date. J. B.’s treatise may have been issued separately, but it is now known only in connection with the “Military Discipline.”

William Barriſſe served as a major in Colonel Hampden’s regiment in 1642.<sup>2</sup>

134. Sixteen-thirty-six. Gunter, Edmond.  
 The | Description | and use of the Sector | Crosse-staffe &

<sup>1</sup> Sir James Sibald Scott, “The British Army,” vol. ii., 1868.

<sup>2</sup> “List of the Armies,” 1642.

other | Instruments. | . . . The 2<sup>d</sup> Edicion much Inlarged  
 by the | Author through the whole worke in his life | Time  
 w<sup>th</sup> a newe Treatice of Fortification | not before Printed, very  
 useful for all | such as are Studius of y<sup>e</sup> Mathematicall Prac:  
 | tis. | By | Edmond Gunter sometime Professor | of Astro-  
 nomy in Gresham Collidg | *London* | *Printed by W. I.* | 1636.  
 | *Are to be* | *sold by James* | *Boller at the* | *signe of the* | *Mari-*  
*gold in Paulls* | *Church yard* | 1636. |

Quarto.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The treatise on fortification, which commences on p. 49 of the third part, entitled "The generall use of the Canon and Table of Logarithms", and ends on p. 75, is on the use of right-angled triangles in fortification. In accordance with the recent practice of fortification, care is to be taken (I.) that the angle of the bulwark is a right angle or nearly so; (II.) that this angle may be defended from the flank and curtain on either side; (III.) that the lines of defence shall be within musket shot, *i.e.*, 240 yards; and (IV.) that the depth of the flanks and breadth of the rampart be sufficient to resist artillery, *i.e.*, about 100 feet thick on the ground. "Upon these considerations", Gunter goes on to say, "depend the rest of the lines and angles: whereof I will set down some Propositions, beginning with that which may resolve the works of others."

The 3rd ed. appeared London, 1653, 4°; the 4th, London, 1662, 4°; the 5th, London, 1673, 4°; the 1st, London, 1624, 4°.

135. Sixteen-thirty-six. Macchiavelli, Niccolo.

Machiavels | Discovrses. | upon the first Decade | of T.  
 Livius translated | out of the Italian; | With some marginall  
 ani- | madversions noting and | taxing his errors. | By E.  
 D[acres] | *London* | *Printed by Thomas Paine for* | *William*  
*Hills and Daniel Pakeman,* | *and are to bee sold in little* | *Brit-*  
*taine at the white Horse,* | *and at the Rainbow neere* | *the Inner*  
*Temple.* | 1636. |

Duodecimo.

*Copies.* B.M. (two).

Another ed., London, 1663-61, 12°, two pts. (B.M.). Eds. of original, Rome, 18 Oct., 1531, 8° (B.M.); and Florence, Nov. 10, 1531, 4°.—Brunet.



VIII.



*From Hexham's "Principles of the Art Military", 1637.*

*Contents.* Book II., Chap. 6. On Roman Warfare. Chap. 10. Money is not the sinews of war. Chap. 12. Whether it be better to act on the offensive or defensive. Chap. 16. How greatly the modern orders of battle differ from those of ancient times. Chap. 17. Of the esteem in which artillery should be held. Chap. 18. That the Infantry is more to be esteemed than Cavalry. Chap. 20. On auxiliaries and mercenaries. Chap. 24. Fortresses in general do more harm than good. Chap. 32. On the attack of places by the Romans. Chap. 33. On the freedom of action given to their commanders by the Romans. Book III., Chap. 10. A captain cannot avoid a battle when his opponent is determined on fighting. Chap. 11. A commander who can bring up supports after the first assault wins the day. Chap. 13. Whether it be better to have a good Commander and weak army, or the reverse. Chap. 14. On Sleights and inventions used during the fight. Chap. 15. The necessity of having only one man in supreme command. Chap. 18. The great necessity of gathering information. Chap. 37. On engagements preliminary to a battle. Chap. 38-39. On the commander-in-chief. Chap. 44. On Surprises. Chap. 45. Whether it be better to await the enemy's shock or to oneself deliver the assault.

136. Sixteen-thirty-seven. Hexham, Henry.

The | Principles | Of The | Art Militarie ; | Practised in  
the Warres of the | Vnited Netherlands. | Represented By  
Figvre, | The Word Of Command, | And Demonstration.  
| Composed by Henry Hexham Quarter-Master to | the  
Regiment of the Honourable Coronell Goring. | *London,* |  
*Printed by M. P. for Matthew Symmons, and are to | bee sold at*  
*his house in Barbican, neere the | Red Crosse. 1637. |*

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp., 1st f., unsigned.—Ded. to Henry, Earl of Holland, and Imprimatur, dated September 5, 1637, 2nd f.—37 pp. of plates, besides 4 folding plates.—R.H.: "The principles of the Art Military. Practized in the Warres of the vnited Netherlands."—Sigs. in 2<sup>s</sup>, 2 ff. unsigned, A-O<sub>2</sub> ; O<sub>2</sub>, blank.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another Edition. Sixteen-forty-two.

The | First Part Of The | Principles | Of The | Art Military,  
| Practised in the Warres of the United Netherlands,  
vnder the Commaund | of his Highnesse the Prince of Orange

our Captaine Generall. | For so much as concernes the duties  
of a Souldier, and the Officers of | a Companie of Foote, as  
also of a troupe of Horse, and the exercising | of them through  
their severall Motions. | Represented By | Figvre | The  
Word Of Commaund And | Demonstration. | Composed by  
Captaine Henry Hexham, Quartermaster to the | Honourable  
Colonell Goring. | [Quotation from Proverbs, xxi. 31.] | The  
second Edition newly corrected and amended. | *Printed at  
Delf in Holeand, for the lovers of the noble | Art Military. Anno  
1642. | Cum Privilegio. |*

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Ded. to William II. of Orange, A2.—Cts. and  
directions to binder, L3.—R.H.: “The first part of the Principles of the  
Art Military. Practised in the warres of the Vnited Netherlands.”—Sigs.  
in 2<sup>s</sup>, A-L, A (6 ff.); F and L are 4<sup>s</sup>; L4, blank.

The plates of the 1st ed. were used for this, with the words of command  
added in Dutch, but all the folding plates and four or five of the others are  
omitted. It has a supplement of 6 ff. (paged 1-12) on the duties of a troop  
of horse, with illustrations of its arms and of its exercising, both individually  
and *en masse*, some of which have been introduced by Grose into his  
“Military Antiquities”; and, while in the 1st ed. the text commences with  
the duties of a captain of infantry and proceeds downwards to those of a  
private, here the order of description is reversed, and also the list of infantry  
arms and armour is replaced by illustrations of the same. [V. Nos. 137,  
139, 163, 164.]

*Copies.* B.M.; R.U.S.I.

137. Sixteen-thirty-seven. Hexham, Henry.

An | Appendix, | Of the Quarter for the ransoming of  
Officers of all Qua- | lities, and Souldiers, concluded betweene  
the King of | of [*sic*] Spayne his side, and the side of the  
States Gene- | rall, of the vnited Netherlands. | Together,  
with the lawes, and articles of Marshall Discipline enacted  
| on the States side. | With their placcard of Musters. | And  
| Other necessaries depending on the warre. | *Printed ad  
Delfe, | By Ian Petersen Waelpote Boeck-printer, in | de Print-  
erie, Anno 1637. |*



ment (called | Mac-Keyes Regiment) levied in August 1626. | by S<sup>r</sup> Donald Mac-Key Lord Rhees, Colonell for | his Majesties service of Denmark, and reduced | after the Battaile of Nerling, to one Com- | pany in September 1634. at | Wormes in the Paltz. | Discharged in severall duties and Observations of service ; | first under the magnanimous King of Denmark, during his warres | against the Emperour ; afterward, under the Invincible King of | Sweden, during his Majesties life time; and since, under the | Directour Generall, the Rexchancellor Oxensterne | and his Generalls. | Collected and gathered together at spare-houres, by Colonell | Robert Monro, at first Lievetenant under the | said Regiment, to the Noble and worthy Captaine, | Thomas Mac-Kenyee, of Kildon, Bro- | ther to the noble Lord, the Lord Earle of | Seafort; for the use of all worthie | Cavaliers favouring the laudable | profession of Armes. | To which is annexed the Abridgement of Exercise, and di- | vers practicall Observations, for the younger Officer | his Consideration ; ending with the Souldiers | Meditations going on service. | *London Printed by William Jones in Red-Crosse streete. | 1637. |*

Folio.

*Collation.* In 2 pts., each with separate Tps., Cts., and Pag.—Ded. to the Elector Palatine, )(2-3.—Pref. and Verses, )(4-A4.—Cts., etc., N2-P4 and Fff-Hhh1.—Imprimatur, dated from Hampton Court, Dec. 8. 1636, Hhh1<sub>2</sub>.—R.H.: “Monro his Expedition and Observations”, “Practicall Observations”, “An Abridgement of Exercise”, and “Souldiers Meditations.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, )(, A-P, Aa-Zz, Aaa-Hhh2.

*Copies.* B.M. ; R.A.I.

*Contents.* Robert Munro, a cousin of Robert, Lord Foulis, had, in his youth, served in the Scots Guards of the King of France. In 1626, the ninth year of the Thirty Years' War, he took service with the Scots Regiment under Christian IV. of Denmark. He quitted it in 1633 to beat up recruits in England, but before his return the regiment had been cut to pieces at Nerlin. Included in the “Practical Observations” are some remarks on regulations to be observed in a garrison town, on treaties, and on artillery. In the chapter on artillery is a list of books in which references to gunpowder and cannon are to be found. Sigs. O2-P4 contain a list of the British officers in



the service of Gustavus Adolphus in the year 1632, and an itinerary of the marches of the forces under them during seven years.

This book has several things to recommend it; it is the first regimental history, it contains a store of information, and it is highly readable. A MS. note to the Roy. Art. Inst. copy states, "This book is exceedingly scarce, being printed at the sole expense of Lord Rhees, and most of the copies (which were but few) given to his friends."

139. Sixteen-thirty-eight. Marolois, Samuel.

The | Art of | Fortification, | Or | Architecture Militaire |  
as well Offensiuē as Defensiuē, compiled | & set forth, | By  
| Samuell Marolois | Reviewed, Augmented and Corrected |  
by Albert Girard | Mathematician: | & | Translated out of  
French into | English | by | Henry Hexam. | Printed | at  
*Amsterdam, for | M. Iohn Iohnson. | Anno 1638. |*

Folio.

*Collation.* Engraved emblematic tp., \*1.—Ded. to Sir Henry Vane, \*2.—R.H.: "The Fortification of Samuel Marolois."—40 folding plates, numbered, and one table.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, \*, A-F, Aa-Ff; \* and F are 2<sup>o</sup>.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The first work on fortification printed in English in which the subject is treated scientifically. For, though in several of the earlier books in English on the military art in general there are chapters, or sections, devoted to this branch, these notices, at the best, are fragmentary. Marolois' treatise describes the Dutch system, and has a table at the end showing the dimensions of a fortification, (1) when the angle flanked is 15° greater than the demi-angle of the polygon, and (2) when it is two-thirds of the polygon. It is profusely illustrated with plans, those of the English version being struck off from the plates used in the Latin edition. Girard's additions are in the form of observations. This translation is intended as a corollary to the "Three parts of the Principles of the Art Militarie", which, says Hexham, "are defectiue and incomplete vnless a fourth be added therevnto, which is the excellent art of Fortification." The work is unfinished; the author informs us on p. 46 of the second part that he had intended to have treated of "divers other dependances belonging to fortification," as of bridges, gates, ports, foundations, ordnance, etc., but the printer would not stay for the finishing of the book. [V. Orig. 821.]

140. Sixteen-thirty-nine. Roberts, John.

The | Compleat Cannoniere: | Or, | The Gunners Guide. |

Wherein are set forth exactly the Chiefe | grounds and princi-  
pals of the whole Art, | in a very briefe and Compendious  
forme, | never by any set forth in the | like nature before. |  
With divers excellent Conclusions, both Arith- | meticall and  
Geometricall belonging there- | unto : As also sundry service-  
able Fire- | workes, both for Sea and | Land service. | A  
Study delightfull and very usefull for men of the best | Quality,  
and imbrac'd by the greatest Princes. | Virtus Gloriam Paret.  
| Written by John Roberts of Weston neere | Bathe, Gentle-  
man, Practitioner and Professor | in the Arte thereof. | *London:*  
| *Printed by. J. Okes, and are to be sold by George Hurlock | at*  
*his shop in Thames-street neere S. Magnus | Church. 1639. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Frontis., woodcut of a cannon.—Tp., A2.—Deds. to Charles I.  
and the Earl of Newport, A3-4.—Cts., I2<sub>2</sub>-4.—Diags.—R.H.: “The  
Compleat Cannoniere.”—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-I.

*Copies.* B.M.; W.O.

*Contents.* Roberts goes over much the same ground as the writers on  
Artillery already noticed. He gives tables showing names, calibre, weight,  
charge, etc., of the various pieces of ordnance used by the English; a table  
of “dead ranges,” or distance from platform to first graze, and another table of  
“randoms.” He says, that it had been found by experience that the greatest  
range was to be obtained with an elevation of 42°; also, that a cannon fired  
at a range of 120 paces will pierce a wall or rampart, “meanly settled,” 10  
or 12 feet, but in close, sandy ground, 20 to 24 feet; and that, if properly  
managed, a cannon may be fired no less than one hundred times a day.  
P. 48 contains a mention of ricochet fire, to be used against troops on stony  
ground.

141. Sixteen-thirty-eight. Roberts, John.

Great | Yarmouths | Exercise. | In a very compleat and  
martiall manner per- | formed by their Artillery men, upon  
the | twenty second of May last, | to the great | commenda-  
tions and applause of the | whole Town, according to the  
| modern Discipline of | this our Age. | 1638. | Non solum  
nobis, sed patriæ. | Written by Iohn Roberts of Weston, |  
neere Bathe, Gent. | *London, | Printed by Thomas Harper, and*



LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY  
OF  
CALIFORNIA

*[Faint, illegible handwritten text in the top-left quadrant]*

*[Faint, illegible handwritten text in the bottom-left quadrant]*

*Collation.* Tp., \*1.—Ded. to Alderman Tho. Soame, President of the Artillery Garden, \*2-4.—“Imprimatur Tho. Wykes Aug. 28. 1639.”, F4.—Diags.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, \*, A-F. To this copy has been added an engraved portrait of Major-Gen. Lambert, printed in France.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another Edition. Sixteen-forty-five.

Mars | His | Triumph. | Or, | The Description | Of An |  
Exercise | Performed the xviii. of October, 1638. | in Mer-  
chant-Taylors Hall, | By | Certaine Gentlemen of the Artillery  
Garden, London. | *London*, | *Printed by John Dawson.* 1645. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., aa.—Ded., aa2.—Diags.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, aa-dd2.

*Copies.* B.M.

Another Edition. Sixteen-sixty-one.

Mars | His | Triumph : | Or, | The Description | Of An |  
Exercise | Performed the XVIII. of October, 1638. | in Mer-  
chant-Taylors Hall, | By | Certain Gentlemen of the Artillery  
Garden, London. | *London* : | *Printed by Gartrude Dawson,*  
1661. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* This ed., which was sent out bound up with the 6th ed. of the “Militarie Discipline” [see No. 133], closely resembles that of 1645; but in most cases the spelling has been corrected; e.g., p. 4, l. 1, “doore” becomes “door”; and “halfe”, wherever it occurs, “half”.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The copies printed were sufficient in number to supply each member of the author’s company with one.<sup>1</sup>

Five months before this, that is, in May, the Yarmouth Artillery had given a military display of a like kind, a description of which had been written and published by John Roberts (v. No. 141), from whom, perhaps, Barriffe borrowed the idea of this little work. Eighty men took part in the

<sup>1</sup> The strength of a company, originally 300, was fixed by an Order in Council of July, 1612, at 250. But little heed was paid to the regulation, for in 1641 we find the Artillery Garden making application for larger exercising grounds on the plea of the great increase to their numbers (Highmore’s “Hist. Hon. Art. Comp.”), so that in this year (1638) they had possibly reverted to their ancient strength.

display in London. The march past was followed by the manual and firing exercise, to the time of the fife and drum. There were three calls, the *Posture Tune*, the *Falling off Tune*, and the *Tune for the Motions*.

**The Posture tune.** .)



This was played during the Firing Exercise, once through to each posture.

**The Falling of Tune.** .)



This was for the Manual Exercise, and was played once over to every rank.

**The Tune for the Motions.**



This was played for all parade movements, such as Facings, Doublings, etc.

The "Torneo" of Pistofilo is the earliest work in which I have seen military music printed.<sup>1</sup> I cannot say whether Fantini's work on the Bugle mentioned by Ayala is with, or without, music. [V. Nos. 848 and 918.]

144. Sixteen-thirty-nine.

Lawes and Ordinances | Of Warre, | For the better Go-

<sup>1</sup> For a transcript of a most interesting warrant *re* martial music, tempo Charles I., see Grose, "Mil. Ant.", vol. ii., p. 45, ed. 1801. The original was formerly in the possession of the Earls of Huntingdon.

vernment of | His Maiesties Army Royall, in the | present Expedition for the Northern | parts, and safety of the | Kingdome. | Under the Conduēt of his Excellence, | The Right Honourable | Thomas Earl of Arundel and Surrey, | Earl Marshall of England, &c. | and Generall of His Majesties Forces. | *Imprinted at Newcastle by Robert | Barker, Printer to the Kings most Excellent Majestie: And by the | Assignes of John Bill.* | 1639. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Royal Arms, A<sub>1</sub>, 2.—Tp., A<sub>2</sub>.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-D.

*Copies.* B.M.

145. Sixteen-thirty-nine. Norwood, | Richard.

Fortification | Or | Architecture | Military. | Vnfold-  
ing the principall | mysteries thereof, in the reso- | lution of  
sundry Questions | and Problemes. | By R. N. | *London, | Printed by Tho. Cotes, for Andrew Crooke, and are | to be sold at the signe of the Beare in Pauls | Church-yard.* 1639. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* A<sub>1</sub>, blank.—Tp., A<sub>2</sub>.—Ded. to James, Marquis of Hamilton, A<sub>3</sub>.—Pref., dated London, 1637, A<sub>4</sub>.—Err., V<sub>4</sub>.—No R.H.—Diags. and Tables (3 folding):—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-V; R has 2 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Up to this time we have had nothing original written in English on fortification as a science, and, if we except a few pages in John Cruso's rendering of the "Discourses" of Du Praissac [see No. 146], only one translation, namely, Hexham's translation of Marolois [No. 136]. Norwood, who, in his youth, had seen a little service in the Netherlands, was a teacher of mathematics in London, and had written a treatise on the Doctrine of Triangles, "suitable to the late Inventions of Logarithms," which doctrine he has applied in this work to the science of fortification. For the rest, the materials of the book are drawn from foreign writers. Norwood refers his readers to Marolois' work for further information.

146. [Sixteen-thirty-nine.] Du Praissac.

The Art | Of | Warre, | Or Militarie discourses | ¶ Of  
leavying, marching, encamping; and embat- | tailing an  
armie. | ¶ Of building, defending, and expugning forts and |

fortified cities. | ¶ Of ordinance, petards, and fireworks. | ¶ Of  
the severall duties of officers, and souldiers. | ¶ Of the Grecian,  
and Romane Militia, and form- | ing of battaillons; &c. | By  
| The Lord of Praissac. | Englished by I[ohn] C[ruso]. | *Cam-*  
*bridge*: | *Printed by Roger Daniel, Printer to that | famous*  
*Universitie. And are to be sold by | John Williams at the Crane*  
*in Pauls church- | yard in London. |*

Octavo.

There is a second title-page:—

Sixteen-thirty-nine.

A short | Method | for the | easie resolving | of any |  
Militarie Question | propounded. | By | The Lord of Praissac.  
| Englished by I. C. | *Cambridge*: | *Printed by Roger Daniel,*  
*Printer | to that famous Univerſitie. | 1639. |*

*Collation.* Tp., A<sub>1</sub>.—Imprimatur, A<sub>1,2</sub>.—Ded. to Henry, Lord Mal-  
travers, A<sub>2</sub>; another, A<sub>2,2</sub>.—Cts., A<sub>3</sub>.—The “Short Method” has separate  
tp. and pag., but continuous sig.:—Tp., O<sub>1</sub>, and Ded. to Philip Skippon,  
O<sub>2</sub>.—No R.H.—Ills. and diags.—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, A to N, and O, which has  
6 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.; R.A.I.

*Contents.* A book frequently quoted from, and, in its time, highly esteemed.  
It has now become very scarce, and is almost unknown to bibliographers;  
neither Hazlitt nor Lowndes, Brunet nor Græsse, mentions it. The Second  
Part, which was intended by Du Praissac to be used as a “corollary,” or  
epitome of his other tracts, is to be found also bound separately. Bowes<sup>1</sup>  
gives an edition of the “Discourses” of 1642. [V. Orig. 634.]

147. Sixteen-thirty-nine. Ward, Robert.

Anima' Adversions | Of Warre ; | Or, | A Militarie Maga-  
zine Of | The Trvest Rvles, And Ablest | Instrvctions, For  
The Ma- | naging Of Warre. | Composed, | Of The Most  
Refined Discipline, And | Choice Experiments that these late  
Netherlandish, and | Swedish Warres have produced. | With  
divers new inventions, both of Fortifications | and Stratagem.

<sup>1</sup> “Cat. of Cam. Books,” 1894, 8vo.

| As also | Sundry Collections taken out of the most approved  
Authors, ancient, | and moderne, either in |

|                                      |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Greeke. }<br>Latine. }<br>Italian. } | { French.<br>Spanish.<br>Dutch. |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|

or

English.

In two Bookes. | By Robert Ward, Gentleman and Com-  
mander. | [Quotation from Pol. Lib. 5.] | *London, | Printed*  
*by Iohn Dawson, and are to be sold by Francis Eglesfield | at the*  
*signe of the Marigold in Pauls Church-yard. 1639. |*

Folio.

*Collation.* Bk. II. has separate Tp. and pag.—1st Tp., \*1.—Deds. to Charles I., Robert, Earl of Warwick, and William, Lord Maynard of Elton, \*2-\*5.—Verses, \*6-8.—Cts., A1-6.—Half-title runs: “Anima ’dversions Of Warre. The Second Booke. By Robert Ward Gentleman, and Commander. London, Printed by John Dawson, 1639.”—Woodcuts and ills. (2 folding).—Sigs. in 6<sup>s</sup>, Bk. I. (\*), A-Z, aa-ll; Bk. II. Aa-Ii. (\*) and ll are in 8<sup>s</sup>, ll8 blank; between sigs. I3 and I4 are inserted 2 ff., one having a woodcut diagram, the other its letterpress.

*Copies.* B.M.; W.O.; R.A.I.; R.U.S.I.

*Contents.* As a book of reference on nearly all branches of the military art this will be found of the greatest value, the author having gone for his information to the best sources available, adding, besides, excellent observations of his own. It has been much quoted from by modern writers on military antiquities. The subject-matter is arranged in twenty-two Sections, as follows:

I. The mutability of flourishing Kingdoms—the Assyrian, Persian, Macedonian, and Roman (pp. 1-25). II. How to provide for war in time of peace, with reference to victuals, weapons, money and shipping (pp. 26-30). III. On Fortification (pp. 35-105). IV. On the use of Artillery in Forts—taken from Ufano, Norton, Collado, and others (pp. 107-142). V. On conveying messages (pp. 143-146). VI. On mining (pp. 147-149). VII. On the duties of soldiers in Field and Fort (pp. 150-171). IX. On duels (pp. 183-193). X. On the office and duty of every officer in an Army (pp. 194-210). Grose, in his “Military Antiquities”, quotes extensively from this section. XI. On Drilling, or exercising Infantry (pp. 211-276). The detailed directions are given in words, and this feature of the work distinguishes it from others of about the same date, which relied on illustrations to make the meaning clear. XII. On the drilling or exercising of Cavalry, including the training of horses (pp. 277-320). XIII. On



Stratagems (pp. 321-361). XIV. Description of Engines and warlike instruments (pp. 362-394). Bk. II. Section XV. On the office and duties of a general (pp. 1-20). XVI. Precautions to be observed by a commander in advancing or retiring his army (pp. 21-28). XVII. On quartering, and encamping (pp. 29-41). XVIII. Military laws and Regulations (pp. 42-54). XIX.-XXI. Precautions to be observed before, during, and after a battle (pp. 55-66). XII. On disposing troops in fighting formation (pp. 67-98). This section contains also a chapter on the ancient Greek method of embattling an army, and another showing the space required for drawing up any given force.

148. Sixteen-forty. Rohan, Henri, Duc de.

The Complete | Captain, | Or, | An Abbridgement of  
 Cæsars | warres, with observations | upon them ; | Together |  
 With a collection of the order of the | Militia of the Ancients ;  
 | and | A particular Treatise of modern war : | Written | By  
 the late great Generall the Duke | of Rohan : | Englished by  
 J. C. [John Cruso] | Cambridge, | Printed by Roger Daniel,  
 Printer | to the Universitie : | And are to be sold at the Angel in  
 Popes-head- | alley in London. 1640. |

Octavo.

There is a half-title running :—

A | Treatise | Of | Modern War ; | Written | By the late  
 great Generall the | Duke of Rohan : | Englished by J. C. |  
 Cambridge, | Printed by Roger Daniel, Printer | to the Univer-  
 sitie. | 1640. |

*Collation.* Tp., in red and black, ¶1, and half-title, G6.—Imprimatur (April 24. 1640.), ¶1<sub>2</sub>.—Verses, ¶2.—Ded. to Sir J. Hobart, Sir T. Woodhouse, Sir J. Holland, Sir Hamon le Strange, Sir E. Waldgrave, Sir C. le Gros, Sir R. Kemp, and Dr. C. Corbet, A2 ; and to Sir T. Glenham, G6<sub>2</sub>.—Cts., N2.—R.H. in both pts. : “The Complete Captain.”—Sigs. in 8<sup>s</sup>, ¶ (2 ff.), A-N2.

*Copies.* B.M. ; Bod.

Another ed.:—1694. Bod. Cat.

Another Translation. Seventeen-eight.

The | Duke of Rohan’s Manual : | . . . . | Translated by a

Gentleman in the Army. | *London*, | *Printed for S. B. and Sold*  
*by B. Bragge, at | the Raven in Pater-noster-Row. 1708. |*

Octavo.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* This work enjoyed a great reputation during the seventeenth century; and the "Observations" have been added to the beautiful 1695 edition of Clement Edmonds' "Cæsar." In the section entitled "The Militarie Discipline of the Romans" is an extremely brief and vague chapter on the pay of Roman soldiers. Sir Henry Savile, writing forty years before, in a letter to Burleigh, dated 1595 (printed in the Somers Tracts, Vol. I.), has entered fully into the subject, reducing the Roman coins to the English equivalent of his time. [V. Orig. 645.]

According to Karcher, de Rohan wrote a "Traité sur la guerre des montaignes", wherein he maintains the principle, afterwards adopted by Napoleon: "la défençe des montaignes doit se faire dans les vallées."

149. Sixteen-forty. Northumberland, Earl of.

Lawes | and | Ordinances | of | Warre, | Established for  
the better conduct | of the Service in the | Northern parts.  
| By | His Excellence | The Earle of Northumberland, |  
Lord Generall of His Majesties | Armie and Fleet. | *London*:  
| *Printed by Robert Barker, Printer | to the Kings most Excel-*  
*lent Majestie: And by | the Assignes of John Bill. 1640. |*

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A2.—Arms of Percy, A2<sub>2</sub>.—R.H.: "Lawes and Ordinances of Warre."—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-D.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.

*Contents.* A copy was given to every Colonel and Captain joining the army under Northumberland. After the assembly of the whole force the regulations were read out distinctly by the Marshals of the Regiments, in the presence of officers and men. Every week, on pay-day, they were again read over to each company by the Captain, who also read them at every main-guard. The oath exacted of each man on taking service, is given on D3. For a lengthy description of this pamphlet see "Pro. Roy. Art. Inst.," vol. xvii., pp. 541-548.

150. Sixteen-forty-one.

An | Ordinance | Of The | Lords and Commons | in |  
Parliament. | For | The safety and defence of the King- | dom

of England, and Dominion | of Wales. | As | It was com-  
manded by both the said | Houses to be ingrossed, according  
to the | alterations and amendments ; the same having | been  
first resolved upon the Question by both | the said Houses, to  
passe : On Saturday, | the 5<sup>th</sup> of this present March, and |  
so to be printed. | Jo. Browne, Cler. Parl. | *London, Printed  
for Ioseph Humscott. 1641. |*

Quarto. 8 ff., verso of first and last blank.  
*Copies.* B.M.

151. [Sixteen-forty-one.]

The | Exercise of the English, in the | Militia of the  
Kingdome of | England. |

Quarto. 4 ff.

Instructions for exercising Pikemen, Musketeers, Harquebussiers, and  
Cuirassiers. Two woodcuts on first page (B1) represent a pikeman and a  
musketeer.

*Copies.* B.M.

152. Sixteen-forty-two.

The exercise for yong artillery men ; or the militia of  
the Kingdome in its posture of warre.

Quarto.

Bod. Lib. Cat., "Militia."

153. Sixteen-forty-two. Harwood, Sir Edward.

The | Advice | Of That | Worthy | Commander, | Sir  
Ed: Harwood, | Collonell. | Written by King Charles his  
Command, | upon occasion of the French Kings preparation:  
| and presented in his life time, by his owne hand, | to his  
Maiestie : Hitherto being a | private Manuscript. | Also a  
relation of his Life and Death. | Whereunto is also annexed  
divers remarkable In- | structions, written by the late, and  
ever-famous, | Earle of Essex. | All tending to the Securing  
and Fortifying of this | Kingdome, both by Sea and Land, and

now seasonably | published for the benefit of these Times. |  
. . . . London, Printed for R. Harford. 1642. |

Quarto.

*Collation.* Tp., A1.—Verses, subs. “M. Draper”, A2.—Ded., A3-4.—  
Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-E.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* Another “invasion tract,” published after the death of its author, who was killed at the siege of Maestricht. Harwood entered the school of war in the Low Countries early, says Hugh Peters, the writer of the “Relation of his Life and Death”, where, Sir Francis Vere discerning his merit, he got rapid advancement, attaining finally to the highest rank possible for an Englishman in the Dutch service, that of Colonel of a regiment.

154. [Sixteen-forty-two.]

A true Abstract | Of A | List, In which is set down  
the severall en- | tertainments allowed by His Majesty to |  
the Officers and other Souldiers of His Army. | With the  
Copy of an Oath given to all the | chiefe Commanders,  
Officers and Souldiers at | their entertainment into the King’s  
Service. | Also some few speciall Orders ordained in His Ma-  
| iesties Army. | London, Printed for John Matthewes. |

Quarto. 4 ff. The list of pay extends over four pages.

*Copies.* B.M.

155. Sixteen-forty-two. Cruso, John.

Castrametation, | Or The | Measvring Ovt | Of The |  
Quarters | For The | Encamping of an Army. | By J. C. |  
London, | Printed by R. C. for Andrew Crook, and are to | be  
sold at his shop at the signe of the Greene | Dragon in Saint  
Pauls Church-yard. | 1642. |

Quarto.

The second title-page runs :—

The | Order | Of | Military | Watches. | By J. C. |  
London, | Printed for Andrew Crooke. 1642. |

*Collation.* Pt. I. :—Tp., Aa.—Ded. to William Denny, A3.—Cts., A4.—

R.H. : "Castrametation or The Encamping of an Army."—Pt. II. :—Tp., H<sub>3</sub>.—Ded. to Philip Skippon, H<sub>4</sub>.—Verses, I<sub>1</sub>.—R.H. : "The Order of Military Watches."—Continuous pag.—Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-L<sub>2</sub>. Pt. II. was also issued separately. In the B.M. copy, a duplicate of the Ded. to Skippon has been inserted, from same set-up, but with new heading. The catchword to sig. I<sub>2</sub> comes on H<sub>4</sub><sub>2</sub> instead of on I<sub>1</sub>.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod. (2nd pt.).

*Contents.* About this time there are indications of a change for the better in English military literature; writers, instead of compiling works embracing the whole range of the art, are devoting themselves each to one, or, at most, two, branches of the subject. Pt. I. is the first English treatise exclusively on castrametation. Cruso borrows from Leo's "Tactics", cap. 2, Vegetius' "De re militari", and the chapter on Castrametation in Du Prais-sac's "Discourses." There is no earlier account of "military watches" dealing so fully with the subject as does Pt. II.

156. Sixteen-forty-two. Lupton, Donald.

A | Warre-like Treatise | Of The | Pike. | Or, | Some Ex-  
perimentall Re- | solves, for lessening the num- | ber, and  
disabling the use of | the Pike in Warre. | With the praise of  
the Musquet and | Halfe-Pike. As also the Testimony of |  
Brancatio, concerning the | disability of the Pike. | Penn'd  
for the generall good of our | Nation, by a well wisher to the  
com- | pleat Musquetier. | [Two lines of quotation from  
Horace.] | London: | Printed by Richard Hodgkinsonne | in Little-  
Britaine. 1642. |

Duodecimo.

*Collation.* Tp., A<sub>3</sub>.—Ded. to Robert, Earl of Essex, A<sub>4</sub>-6, subs. "Donald Lupton"; another, A<sub>7</sub>-10.—Cts., A<sub>11</sub>-12.—No R.H.—Sigs. in 12<sup>s</sup>, A-H<sub>6</sub>.

*Copies.* B.M.

*Contents.* The combination of Musket and Half-Pike—a sort of bayonet—was devised by Barriffe and John [Edward?] Davies [see Nos. 92 and 133]. Turner devotes over four pages in his "Pallas Armata" to refuting Lupton's arguments against the pike.

157. Sixteen-forty-two.

Englands | Savety In Navie | And | Fortifications; | The  
common Interest both of King | and People. | Conteining

Necessary | Observations | Concerning | Dover, | And other  
Sea-Towns | Of England. | Published for the necessary View  
of the | Right Honourable The High Court of | Parliament:  
And also for the | publique Safetie of the Kingdome, and | all  
other his Majesties Dominions. | *Printed for Io: Ch: and Iohn  
Bull.* | 1642. |

Quarto. 4 ff., verso of 1st, blank.  
*Copies.* B.M.

158. Sixteen-forty-two. M., R.

A Compleat | Schoole | of | Warre: | or, | A direct way  
for the Ordering and Exercising of a Foot | Company:  
Whereby may bee attained with ease, the perfection | both of  
Musket and Pyke in short time. | Now, as most necessary,  
thought fit to be set forth for | a generall good. | By an expert  
Commander, R. M. | *Printed at London for Richard Harper at  
the Bible and Harp | in Smithfield.* 1642. |

Quarto. 4 ff. A musketeer depicted on tp.  
*Copies.* B.M.

159. [Sixteen-forty-two.]

A Trve Description | OfThe | Discipline | OfWar | Both  
for Horse and Foot, used in His | Maiesties Army, under  
their Excel- | lencies William Earle of New-Castle, | and  
Prince Robert. | With the order and manner of their mar-  
ching and exercising in the Field: | As followeth; |

Quarto.

*Collation.* No tp.—Sig. A1 has the heading as above, surmounted by a  
woodcut of the Royal Arms.—4 ff., verso of last blank.—“Nov. 21<sup>st</sup>, 1642”,  
probably the date of printing, has been added in MS.

Contains directions as to the composition of a company of foot, instruc-  
tions for drilling musketeers, and for an army when on the march.

*Copies.* B.M.

160. Sixteen-forty-two. Leslie, Alexander, Earl of Leven.

Generall Lessley's | Direction | and | Order | For the exercising of | Horse and Foot. | Being | A most Exact, Compendeous, and Necessary | Direction for all such as are studiously devoted to the | due Exercise of Armes, | and principally | intended for the young sort of the | Militia. | London, | Printed by Richard Badger, for L. Blaikelock. | 1642. |

Quarto. 8 ff.

Copies. B.M.

*Contents.* On verso of title-page is a preface of 11 lines beginning, "My zeale for the publike good hath invited me to expose this short but excellent treatise to the publike view, being without controversy, the best of all moderne Tracts upon this subject." Only the instructions for handling Infantry are given; each company of which is to be composed of two-thirds Musketeers and one-third Pikes, ranged in files of eight deep. Fol. 7 verso concludes with an advertisement to the effect that the intention had been to include directions for cavalry, but that, defects having arisen in the "copy" during the publisher's (*i.e.*, the editor's) absence, these had been withheld.

161. Sixteen-forty-two.

Certaine | Orders | Meete To Be | Observed | Vpon Any Foraine | Invasion, | For those Shires that lye | upon the Sea Coastes. | With a Direction to the Justices of the Peace. | London, | Printed by R. C. for Michael Sparke, Senior, and are | to be sold at the signe of the blue Bible | in Greene-Arbor. | 1642. |

Quarto. Sigs. A and B.

Copies. B.M.

*Contents.* Particular stress is laid on the necessity of fixing a place of assembly to which the troops may resort on the first firing of the beacon which is to give the alarm of invasion; while the opposite course of running to the coast in small bodies is condemned.

162. Sixteen-forty-two.

Militia | Old and New. | One thousand six hundred forty



two. | Read All Or None ; | And Then Censure. | *London,* |  
*Printed 18 August. 2642. [sic] |*

Quarto.

A pamphlet, written by a Parliamentarian, discussing the ancient manner of choosing the Officers of the Crown, and referring to the recent ordinance of Parliament taking the command of the Militia out of the King's hands.

*Copies.* B.M.

163. Sixteen-forty-two. Hexham, Henry.

The | Second Part Of The | Principles | Of The | Art  
Military, | Practised | In the Warres of the United Provinces.  
| Consisting Of The Severall For- | mes Of Battels, Represented  
By The | Illustrious Maurice Prince of Orange | of  
famous memorie. | And His Highnesse Frederick Henry  
Prince of | Orange, that is Captaine Generall of the Army of  
the high | and mighty Lords the States [the second T turned]  
Generall | of the United Provinces. | Together with | The  
order and forme of Quartering, Encamping, and Approch-  
ing, | in a Warre offensive and defensive. | The second Edition  
newly corrected and amended by Captaine Henry Hexham, |  
Quartermaster to the Regiment of the Honourable | Colonell  
Goring. | *Printed at Delf in Holeand, By Antony of Heusden, |*  
*Anno 1642. | Cum Privilegio.*

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp., 1st f.—Ded. to George Goring, Baron of Hesperpoint, and Cts., 2nd f.—20 folding plates.—R.H.: “The second part of the Principles of the Art Military. Practised in the Warres of the Vnited Netherlands.”—Sigs. in 2<sup>s</sup>, 2 ff. unsigned, A-O.

*Copies.* B.M.; R.U.S.I.

*Contents.* The section on quartering and encamping (pp. 21-32) is mainly translated from Adam Freitag. Fourteen of the folding diagrams show the manner of forming horse and foot in vogue in the Low Countries between 1600 and 1642.

164. Sixteen-forty-three. Hexham, Henry.

The | Third Part | Of | The Principles Of The Art Mili-



tary. | Practised In The Warres Of The | United Provinces |  
 Vnder the Lords the | States Generall | And his Highnesse  
 the | Prince Of Orange. | Treating | Of Severall Peeces Of  
 Ordnance, | Carriages, Engines, Quadrants, Morters, Petards,  
 as also instructions for Master-Gunners, | and Canoniers, with  
 divers Instruments and Materials belonging to a warre with |  
 their severall uses and practises, most briefly and lively de-  
 monstrated by | Letter and Figvre. | Together With A List  
 Of All Necessary | Preparations appertaining to an Armie,  
 With a Quarter for the Generall of the | Ordnance, and of all  
 Officers belonging to his Traine. | Written and composed by  
 Captaine Henry Hexham, | Quarter-master to the truly |  
 honourable, Colonell Goring his Regiment, for the lovers of  
 the | Noble Art Militarie. | The second Edition Corrected  
 and Amended. | *Rotterdam* | Printed by *James Moxon*. 1643. |

Folio.

*Collation.* Tp., 1st f.—Ded. to Charles Lodovic, Elector Palatine, 2nd f.—Cts., P<sub>42</sub>.—Ills.—Sigs. in 2<sup>s</sup>, 2 ff. unsigned, A-P; P has 4 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.

Editions:—Hexham, in his translation of Marolois, 1637 [No. 139], speaks of all three parts [v. Nos. 136 and 163]. Hazlitt mentions an ed. of "The Third Part", Hague, 1640, sent out by Humphrey Mosley, London, 1641, in one volume, with the "First Part" and the "Second Part"; perhaps the ed. entered in the W.O. Cat. as London, 1641, fol.

*Contents.* Pp. 1-34 treat of the founding of ordnance and of gun carriages, mortars, etc., with 7 full-page engravings, and 3 separate plates. Hexham gives the recipes of Bianco, Ufano, and de Brissac for the composition of an alloy, suitable for the casting of cannon. Pp. 35 to 38, A question propounded to the Batavian engineers by the mathematician, Jean Baptiste of Antwerp, regarding the battering of a horn work, with its solution. Pp. 39 to 44, Two dialogues on the position of artillery, (i.) in attacking a fortress, (ii.) in a battle-field; the second translated from Diego Ufano. Pp. 45 to 47, On bridges, on the horse-water-mill for draining, invented by Vitruvius, etc., on an oven for baking bread, etc., with two plates. Pp. 48 to 53, A list of ordnance, munition, and other necessities to be carried with an army. Pp. 54 and 55, a description of the quarters of the train of artillery, with a plan. The plate on page 48 illustrates the implements used for making trenches and fortifications.

The three parts of the "Principles of the Art Military" were written

primarily for the use of English Gentlemen and Soldiers entering the States' service. The later editions were called for by the troubles in the author's native land. Hexham had translated the First Part into Dutch, and intended to do the same by the other parts. His long experience of warfare, and the careful selection of extracts from the best military writers of his time have contributed to render this series [Nos. 136, 137, 163, 164] extremely valuable. His literary labours ceased in 1643, with the preparation for the press of an edition of "The Appendix of the Lawes, etc." He records as a somewhat remarkable circumstance that, though he had served as a soldier for forty-two years, and had been present in many hot engagements, yet the enemy had never drawn one drop of blood from him.

165. Sixteen-forty-three. Norton, Robert.

The | Gunners | Dialogue. | With The Art Of | Great Artillery. |

See Bourne, William, "The Art of Shooting in Great Ordnance" [No. 38].

166. Sixteen-fifty-seven. Vere, Sir Francis.

The | Commentaries | Of | Sr. Francis Vere, | Being | Diverse pieces of service, wherein he had com- | mand, written by himself in way of | Commentary. | Published by | William Dillingham, D.D. | . . . Cambridge: | Printed by John Field, Printer to the famous University. | Anno. Dom. MDCLVII. |

Folio.

Copies. B.M. (four).

Collation. A1, short title.—Tp., A2.—Ded. to Sir Horace Townshend, subs. William Dillingham, A3.—Pref., A4-5.—Cts. and Err., A6.—Full-page portraits of Vere, his brother Horace, and Sir John Ogle.—6 fine maps, and engraving of Vere's monument.—Sigs. in 4°, A-Z, Aa-Dd; A and Dd in 6°, Dd6 blank. The B.M. copy (519.f.19) has MS. corrections in the margins in an old handwriting, and on the blank leaf at the end of the volume, a list of "errata" and the following notes: "Quære an auncienter Picture of Sr. Francis at E.

of Clares Sr. Horace at Lady Veres." "Mapps. By Faithorne. 

|         |         |
|---------|---------|
| Sr. Fr  | } Vere. |
| Sr. Hor |         |

Sir Jo Ogle. 15<sup>ll</sup>. By Gaywood. Newport. 4. Turnholt 4. Ostend 3. Mon<sup>mt</sup>. 3. By Mr. Vaughan. Seacoasts. Calles. Low Count. 00-34 5." Another copy, in the Grenville Library, has this note: "Large Paper. To this beautiful copy of a book very rarely seen in large paper, I have prefixed an





*From Vere's "Commentaries," 1657.*

autograph letter of Sir F. Vere, from the Low Countries in 1594, with his seal affixed to it." The letter is in French, and the address is to "Son Excellence," probably Maurice of Nassau. The writer had sent with it another from Essex to himself.

*Contents.* These interesting memoirs remained for many years in MS. The original, written by the author's own hand, and two copies transcribed from it, reposed in the libraries of the Earl of Clare, the Earl of Westmoreland and Lord Fairfax, his sons-in-law, while another copy was in Major-General Skippon's possession; all had been examined by Dillingham, the editor. The author, who was one of the most successful of Elizabeth's generals, relates his own experiences of the wars in the Low Countries from 1589 to the middle of 1601, breaking off very suddenly during the account of the siege of Ostend. Dillingham has continued the story of the siege, adding two narratives of the battle of Newport—one written some time before, in Latin, "by an elegant and learned pen," the other by Sir John Ogle, Vere's "lieutenant"—and introducing a quotation from Edmonds' "Cæsar," where one of the "observations" is pointed by a reference to Vere's generalship during the battle. Ogle's account of the Parley at Ostend is also given.



*Kingston's Device.*



BIBLIOGRAPHY OF MILITARY BOOKS.  
FOREIGN.

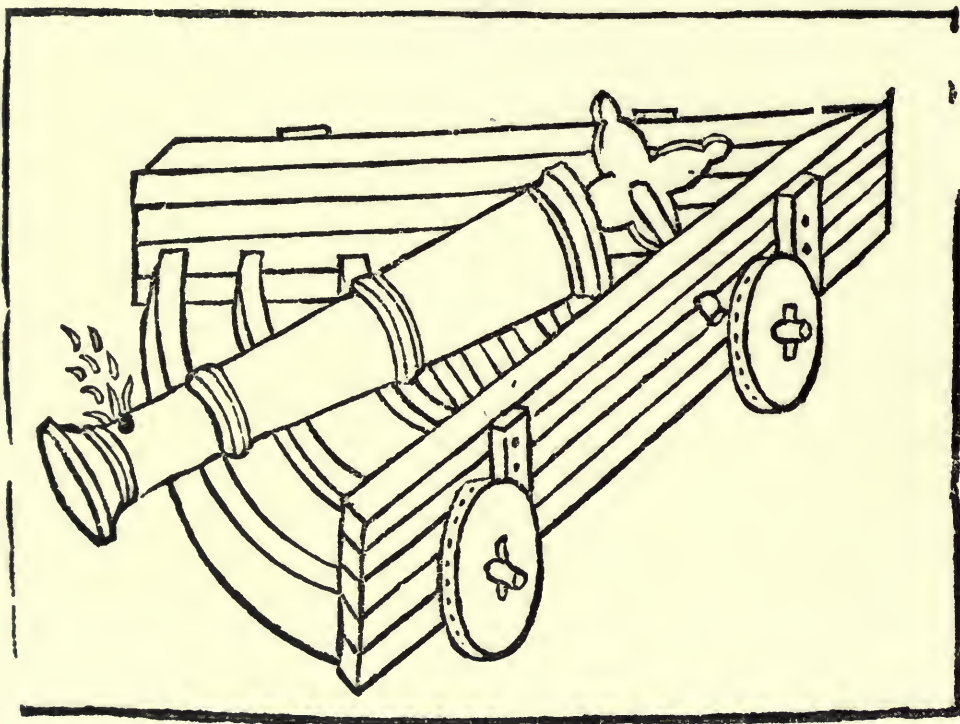
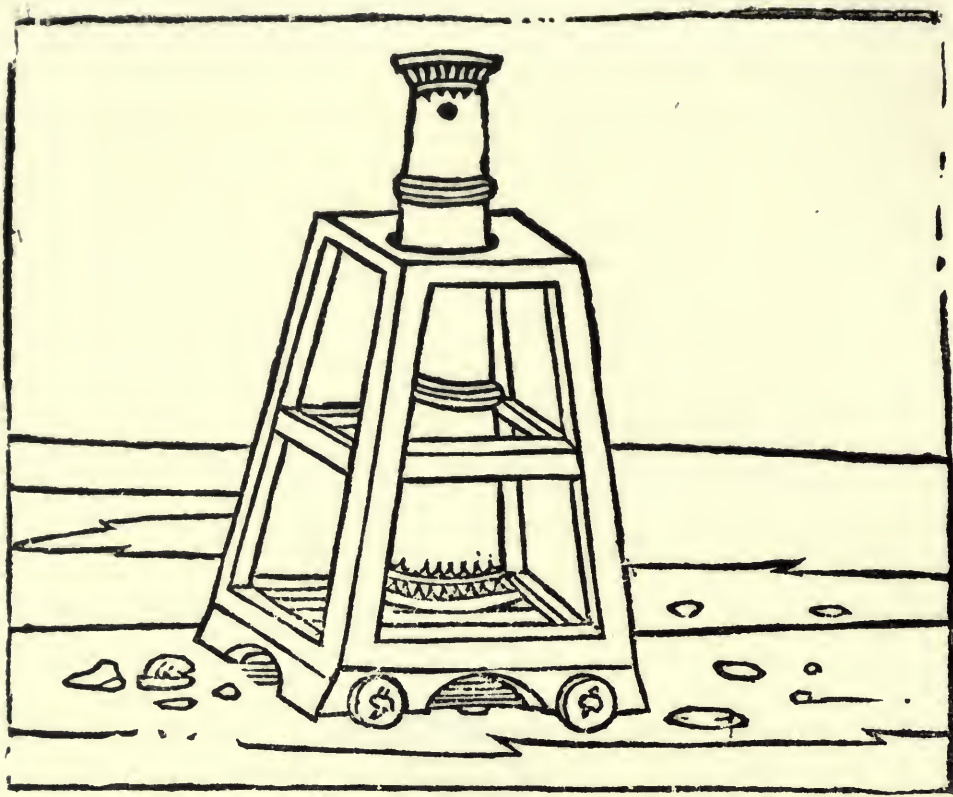






LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY  
OF  
CALIFORNIA





From Valtur, "De re militari", 1483.



## ART MILITARY.

500. Naples [circa 1471]. Puteo, Paris de.

Incipit solennis et vtilissimus libellus de re militari, vbi est tota materia duelli, seu singularis certaminis, nouiter compilatus. *Sixtus Reissinger*.

Folio. 7 + 181 ff.—Brunet.

Another ed.: Mediolani, 1508, fol. (*ib.*). Included also in the collection entitled: "Primum [—decimum septimum] Volumen Tractatum ex variis juris interpretibus collectorum", Lugduni, 1549, fol., vol. xii.; together with the "De duello" of Alciatus; the "De Imperatore Militum diligendo" of Cæpolla; the "De iure militum" of Cotereau; the "De bello" of Arias; the "De duello" of Legnano; the "De bello" of Lupus; the "De duello" of Castillo; the "Utrum preferendus sit doctor an miles" of Lanfranchini; the "De castellanis. De bello. De milite" of Laudensis; and the "De privilegiis" of Mantova. With Cæpolla, Cotereau, Arias, Lupus, Laudensis, and Mantova, it is included also in another collection—made by Zilettus—entitled: "Tractatus Universi juris", Venetiis, 1584, fol., vol. xvi., in which appears also the "De re militari" of Belli, and a different treatise of Legnano entitled "De bello."

Copies. B.M. (1549, 1584).

501. [Verona.] 1472. Valturius, Robertus.

*Begin*: [fol. 1 *recto*] [E]lenchus et index rerum militarium que singulis codicis hujus i volumibus continet. *Johannes ex Verona*.

Folio. 159 printed ff.

The 2nd ed. and an It. trans. were printed by Bonin di Boninis, Veronæ, 1583, fol. and 8°. Other eds.: Paris, *per C. Wechelum*, 1532 and 1535, fols.;

all in B.M. Almirante mentions an ed. of Paris, 1484, and Brunet a French trans. by de Meigret, Paris, 1555, fol. The 1st ed. has 82 woodcuts and the 2nd, 96; said to be from da Vinci's drawings. They represent the machines of war used by the ancients, with mediæval modifications, and are remarkably quaint and instructive. As Promis remarks, the work is, for those times, a prodigy of erudition, and was deservedly held in high estimation. The materials are derived from the ancient military writers, with whose works Valtur was well acquainted. He was a native of Rimini, and was living from 1413 to 1483. In 1463, he presented the MS. to the Sultan Mohammed II.—a rather singular action, considering how jealously, as a rule, his contemporaries endeavoured to keep the secrets of the military art from their great foe, the Turk.

*Copies.* B.M.

502. [Augsburg.] 1473. Colonna, Egidio.

*Begin:* Prologus in librum de Regimine Principum . . . incipit feliciter. [Pars tercia. Tercii libri:] Quid est militia & ad quid est instituta & q̄ omnis bellica operatio sub militia continetur.

Folio. Lib. III., Pt. III., has 13 ff. in double columns.

Eds.: Rome, *S. planck*, 1482, 4°; Venetiis, *S. Bevilaqua*, 1498, fol.; ib., *B. Vercellensi*, 1502, fol.; Romæ, *B. Zanetti*, 1607, 8°. Span. trans.: Sevilla, *M. Ungut & S. Polono*, 1494, fol. It. trans. of 1288, published by F. Corazzini, 1858, 8°.

*Copies.* B.M.

503. Paris. 1488. Pisan, Christine de.

L'art de cheualerie selon Vegece. *Begin:* [fol. 1 *recto*] Cy apres sensuit le liure des fais d'armes et de cheualerie Leql est diuise en quatre parties *etc.* *Anthoine Verard.*

Folio. 6 ff.; then A-M6 and N6 in 8°.

Usually attributed to Jean de Meung. [See No. 1.] Another ed.: Paris, *Phelippe le Noir*, 1527, 8°, entitled, like No. 504, "L'Arbre des batailles."

*Copies.* B.M.

504. Paris. 1493. Bonnor, Honorat, or Bonet, Honoré de.

L'arbre des batailles nouvellement imprime et corrige a Paris. *Jehan du Prè.*

Folio. A-M6 in 8°.

Grenville's note runs: "This edition appears to be unknown to all the Art Military. bibliographers. Du Verdier, Le Long, and after them Maittaire, and finally, Panzer on their authority, all quote the edition of Du Prè to be 1495. Brunet very justly doubts whether there be any such. I am convinced that Le Long and Verdier have mislead all the other bibliographers as to the date. I know of no other copy by Duprè either 1493 or 1495."

Eds.: Paris, *A. Verard*, 1493, fol.; ib., *M. le Noir*, 1505, 4°, and 1515, 4°; Lyon, *O. Arnoullet* [1510], 4°; all in B.M. Brunet describes a copy without imprint or date, which he believes to belong to the ed. printed by B. Buyer at Lyons, in 1477. Reprinted by Le Nys, Bruxelles et Leipzig, Anvers, 1883, 8°.

*Copies.* B.M.

505. Venexia. 1493. Cornazano, Antonio.

Opera bellissima delarte Militar . . . in terza rima. *Cristophoro da mādello*.

Octavo. A-K<sub>4</sub> in 6<sup>s</sup>; A has 8 ff., D, 5 ff.

Eds.: Venice, *Z. di Rusconi*, 1715; ib., *M. Sessa*, 1526; ib., *P. di N. da Sabbio*, 1536; Orthona ad Mare, *H. Soncino*, 1518, and Firenze, *P. Giunta*, 1520; all in 8°.

*Copies.* B.M.

506. Mediolani. 1509. Montis, Petrus de.

Exercitiorus: atque artis militaris collectanea In tris libros distincta. *J. A. Seinzenzeler*.

Folio. AA6, A-G<sub>9</sub> in 8<sup>s</sup>, 63 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.

507. Firenze. 1521. Macchiavelli, Niccolo.

Libro della arte della guerra. *Per li Heredi di Philippo di Giunta*.

Octavo. A-Q<sub>4</sub> in 8°.

First ed. Others are: ib., ib., 1529, 8°; Vinegia, *Aldo*, 1540 and 1546, 8<sup>os</sup>; ib., *Comin da Trino*, 1541, 8°; ib., *G. Gioliti e Fratelli*, 1550, 12°; ib., *D. Giglio*, 1554, 12°; Palermo, *A. Antonelli*, 1587, 8°. The last was probably printed secretly in London by John Wolfe before 28 Jan., 1584. The date occurs on a cancel of the title-page.—Brit. Mus. Cat. Poggiali is mistaken in giving an ed. of 1519; his copy, no doubt, was one of the 2nd ed., with the date misprinted. Haym mentions an ed. of Florence, 1551, 4°. The original MS. is in the Magliabecchia Library. See Eng. trans., No. 12.

Art  
Military.

508. [No place, author, nor date. 1525 ?]  
Kriegsordnung neu gemacht. Von Besatzung der Schlösser  
. . . Artikelsbrief der Kriegsslēut, sampt der selbigen  
Eyde *etc.*

Quarto. A-O in 4<sup>s</sup>; N has 2 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.

509. Strassburg. 1530. Preuss, Jacob.  
Ordnung, Namen, unnd Regiment alles Kriegsvolcks. Von  
Geschlechten, Namen unñ Zal aller Büchsen, in ein gantze  
Aerckelei eins Feldtzugs unñ Zeughauss gehörig *etc.* C.  
*Egenolph.*

Quarto. 4 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.

510. Venetiis. 1530. Porcia, Jacopo di.  
Clarissimi viri Jacobi Pvriliarvm comitis de re militari  
liber. *In ædibus Joannis Tacuini di Tridino.*

Quarto. a6, A-I4 in 8<sup>s</sup>.

Another ed. of ff. i-lv: *Basileæ, Per Balthasarem Lasium et Thomam  
Platterum, 1537, 8<sup>o</sup>*; printed with the fragment from Polybius, entitled  
"De romanorum militia et castrorum." See Eng. trans., No. 6.

*Copies.* B.M.

511. [Logrono.] 1536. Salazar, Diego de.  
Tratado de re militari. Tratado de cavalleria hecho a ma-  
nera de dialogo q̃ passo entre . . . . Gonçalo Fernandez de  
Cordoua llamado Gran Capitan . . . . y Don P. Māriq̃ de  
Lara duq̃ de Najara *etc.* *Miguel de Eguya.*

Folio. 68 ff.

An imitation of Macchiavelli's "Arte della Guerra."

*Copies.* B.M.

512. Lovanii. 1543. Nannius, Petrus.  
Dialogus . . . . de milite peregrino. S. *Zassenus.*

Quarto. D1-G5 in 4°.

Published with the "Oratio de Obsidione Louaniensi" of the same author. Art Military.

Copies. B.M.; Bod.

513. [Venice, 1544?] Forte, Angelo di.  
Veritatis redivivæ militia. [*Venturino Rossinello?*]

Octavo. A-F in 4°.

Copies. B.M.

514. Modena. 1544. Mirandola, Francesco.

Opera chiamata pratica et esperienza del guerreggiare moderno, in libri quattro distinta: il primo tratta dell' espeditione et governo d'un colonello di fanteria, con molti esempi nelle guerre moderne passate occorsi, et infiniti avvisi alla militia usitati et necessari: il secondo dell' ufficio del sargente maggiore: il terzo del battaglione quadro: il quarto et ultimo delle pertinentie dell' alfero. *Giovanni de Nicoli.*

Octavo. 75 ff.—Ayala.

515. Paris. 1548. Du Bellay, Guillaume, Sieur de Langey [*or rather* Raimond de Beccarie de Pavie, Sieur de Fourquevaux].

Instrvctions sur le faiçt de la Guerre. *Michel Vascosan.*

Folio. A (4 ff.), A-T4 in 6°.

Other eds.: *ib.*, *ib.*, 1549, fol.; *ib.*, *ib.*, 1553, 8°; Lyon, *B. Rigaud*, 1592, 8°; all entitled "Discipline Militaire." Ital. trans., Venetia, *M. Tramezzino*, 1550, 12°, and *ib.*, *G. M. Bonelli*, 1571.—Ayala. Span. trans., Barcelona, 1567—Almirante. For Eng. trans., see No. 41.

*M. Karcher* ("Ecrivains Militaires de la France," Londres, Bruxelles, 1866, 8°, p. 18) speaks of a work, having this title, by a writer whom he calls "Lanay," with the date 1543. He must mean "de Langey," and has mistaken the date.

Copies. B.M.

516. Turino. 1548. Assinito, Angelo.

Opera nova, et alli uomini di guerra importantissima, quale insegna ordini, modi et forma d'ordinar ordinanze di fanterie, et crescere quelle che con quelli formare battaglie quadre de

qual si voglia numero de picche . . . . con la fornitura dei  
suoi archibusieri . . . . *Martino Cravoto.*

—Ayala. Very rare.

517. Poitiers. 1551. Bruccioli, Antonio.  
De l'office d'un Cappitaine et chef d'exercite, dialogue  
huittiesme . . . : Traduit d'Italien en François: par Traian  
Paradin . . . . *Enguïlbert de Marnef.*

Quarto. A-E in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Copies. B.M.; Bod.

518. Napoli. 1553. Pagano, Marc' Antonio.  
Le tre giornate d'intorno alla disciplina dell' arme, e special-  
mente della spada.

Ottavo.—Ayala.

519. Pesaro. 1555. Gorgieri, Lauro.  
Trattato della guerra, del soldato, del castellano, et come ha  
da essere vno general di esercito. *B. Cesano.*

Quarto. A-L5 in 4<sup>s</sup>.

The Ep. Ded. is by Mutio. Collected from the ancients entirely.

Copies. B.M.

520. Venetia. 1556. Garimberto, Girolamo, Bishop of Gallese.  
Il Capitano Generale . . . . nvovamente mandato in Ivce.  
*Giordano Ziletti.*

Ottavo. \*, \*\* (2 ff.), A-Z, AA-NN in 8<sup>s</sup>.

Some copies bear date 1557. Another ed.: ib., ib., 1566.—Ayala.

Copies. B.M.

521. Vercelli. 1557. Levo, Gio. Battista.  
Discorso dell' ordine e modo d'armare, compartire et eser-  
citare la militia del duca di Savoia. *Pelipari.*

Quarto.

—Ayala. Another ed.: Torino, *M. Cravoto*, 1566.—*Ibid.*



522. Paris. 1558. Simeoni, Gabriele. Art  
Military.  
 Cesar renouvellé. Par les obseruations Militaires. . . .  
*Benoist Prevost pour Jean Longis.*  
 Octavo. a, A-H4 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
 Another ed., with another part added: Lyon, *Jean Marcorelle*, 1570, 8<sup>o</sup>.  
 Translated from the Italian.  
*Copies.* B.M.
523. Paris. 1558. Philip, Duke of Cleves.  
 Instrvction de tovttes manieres de guerroyer, tant par terre  
 que par mer, & des choses y seruantes: . . . *Guillaume Morel.*  
 Octavo. a (4 ff.), A-K4 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.
524. Vinegia. 1558-1562. Centorio, Ascanio de Hortensii.  
 Il primo (—quinto) discorso, sopra l'vfficio d'vn Capitano  
 generale di essercito. *G. Giolito.*  
 Quarto. \* (6 ff.), A-C2; A, B, AA-GG6; \*, \*\*, A-H; \*, \*\* (6 ff.),  
 A-P; a-c, A-Z, AA-NN, in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
 In five parts; separate title-page, Ded., Table of Contents, sigs. and pag. to  
 each. Eds.: Venice, 1568-9, 4<sup>o</sup>; Venezia, *Giolito*, 1567, 4<sup>o</sup>, and 1572.—Ayala.  
 The books have also been sent out separately.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1558-62); Bod. (1568-9).
525. Parisiis. 1559. La Ramée, Pierre de.  
 P. Rami . . . , liber de Cæsaris militia. *A. Wechel.*  
 Octavo. a (4 ff.), A-P4 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.
526. Lion. 1559.  
 Institution de la discipline militaire au royaume de France.  
*Macé Bonbome.*  
 Folio. A, B, a-z2 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.
527. Venetiis. 1559. Cyllenius, Domenicus.  
 Ad Emanvelem Philibertvm D. C. de vetere & recentiore

scientia militari, omnium Bellorum genera, terrestria perinde ac naualia, necnon tormentorum rationes complectente, opus, veluti ad quendam artis & disciplinæ ordinem redactum, cunctis Ducibus ac militibus perutile, nec minus domi, quàm foris conducibile. *Comin da Trino* for *F. de Portonari*.

Folio. †, A-L in 6<sup>s</sup>.

Copies. B.M.; Bod.

528. Modona. [1560.] Ferrara, Alphonso II. [d'Este], Duke of. Capitoli, et Ordini . . . Sopra la Militia, & Ordinanza del suo stato. *Gio. Battista Pigna*.

Octavo. 4 ff.

Another ed., rewritten entirely and much enlarged: ib., *V. Baldini*, 1596, 4<sup>o</sup>. 8 ff.

Copies. B.M.

529. Brescia. 1563. Cataneo, Girolamo.

Tavole brevissime per sapere con prestezza quante file uanno à formare una giustissima battaglia. Con li suoi armati di corsaletti, da cento fin à uentiduemilia e sei cento huomini. Et appresso vn facilissimo, et approuato modo di armarla di archibugieri, & di ale di caualleria secondo l'uso moderno. *L. di Sabbio* for *G. B. Bozola*.

Octavo. a (4 ff.), A-E6 in 8<sup>s</sup>.

Second ed.: Brescia, *T. Barola* [Bozola?], 1567, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Ayala. This forms Bk. III. of the "Arte Militare", Brescia, 1571, and Bk. IV. of the "Arte Militare", Brescia, 1584 [No. 542]. See Eng. trans., No. 19.

530. Franckfurt am Mayn. 1563. Fronsperger, Leonhard. Besatzung. Ein kurtzer bericht wie Statt/ Schlösser oder Flecken mit kriegs volck soll besetzt sein/ dass sie sich für dem Feinde erhalten mögen . . . *Johann Lechler*.

Folio. A-C in 6<sup>s</sup>.

In two books. Reprinted in "Kriegssbuch, Dritter Theyl", 1573 and 1598. See No. 544.

Copies. B.M.

531. Franckfurt am Mayn. 1564. Fronsperger, Leonhard. Art  
Military.  
Kriegs Ordnung und Regiment/ sampt derselbigen befehl,  
statt und Ampter/ zu Ross und fuss/ auch an Geschütz und  
Munition/ in Zügen/ zu Feld/ vor oder in Besatzungen/ gegen  
oder vor den Feinden zugebrauchen mit schönen Figuren  
auff neuw zugericht . . . *Johan Lechler.*

Folio. )( (4 ff.), A-X4 in 6°.

In five books.

Eds.: 1555, fol., and 1557, fol.—Brunet. This treatise and the “Geschütz und Fewrwerck” (No. 932) were recast and enlarged to 10 bks., under the title, “Von Kayserlichem Kriegsrechten Malefitz und Schuldhändlen/ Ordnung und Regiment”, Franckfurt am Mayn, *Georg Raber*, 1566, fol., A-Z, a-x in 6°; ib., *Martin Lechler*, 1571, fol.; ib. [?], 1578, fol.—Brunet; and ib., *Johan Feyerabendt*, 1598, fol. Reprinted, Berlin, 1819, fol. The eds. of 1571 and 1598 have the addition of Nos. 543 and 544, with separate title-pages, pagination, and signatures.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod. (1596).

532. Venetia. 1564. Giovacchino da Coniano.  
Trattato dell' ordinanze, o' vero battaglie.

See Book III. of Maggi's “Fortificatione delle citta” [No. 772], in which this fragment is included. Maggi had received it from Vincenzio Giustello, who had other works of Coniano in his possession, chiefly on fortification. Coniano was sergeant-major of the Italians serving on the English side, under Surrey, in the French expedition of 1544.

533. Pavia. 1564. Farra, Alessandro.  
Discorso dell' Vfficio del Capitano. *G. Bartoli.*

Octavo. A-E in 8°.

Another ed.: Venetia, *A. della Paglia*, 1556.—Ayala.

*Copies.* B.M.

534. Vinegia. 1566. Rocca, Bernardino.  
Imprese, stratagemmi, et errori militari . . . La Quarta  
Gioia, congiunta all' Anella della Nostra Collana Historica.  
*G. Giolito.*

Art  
Military.

Quarto. a-hz in 4<sup>s</sup>; A-Z, AA-GG in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
Edited by Tomaso Porcacchi. See Nos. 539 and 540.  
*Copies.* B.M.

535. Venetia. 1566. Adriano, Alfonso [Cicuta, Aurelio].  
Della disciplina militare del capitano. *Lodovico Avanzo.*

Quarto. a-d, A-Z, AA-ZZ, AAA-LLL, aa-ff in 4<sup>s</sup>; Tt and LLL are 6<sup>s</sup>.  
The second ed. was published under the pseudonym, "Aurelio Cicuta,"  
ib., ib., 1572, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1566); Bod. (1566).

536. Venetia. 1567. Cicogna, Giovan Matteo.  
Il primo libro del trattato militare, nel quale si contengono  
varie regole e diversi modi per fare con l'ordinanza battaglie  
nuove di fanteria, etc. *G. Bariletto.*

Quarto.—Ayala. The 1st ed.; another, ib., *C. Castelli*, 1583.—*Ibid.*

537. Venetia. 1568. Ferretti, Francesco.  
Della osservanza militare . . . Libri dve. Nel primo de'  
quali ordinatamente si ragiona de' costumi, & delle migliori  
regole, che deue apprendere, & osseruare colui, che disegna  
d'essere meriteuolmente segnalato soldato. Nel secondo per  
via d'opinione si discorre intorno a molte cose necessarie a  
douersi operare da cosi fatto soldato, per compito seruigio del  
suo signore, & della guerra etc. *C. & R. Borgominieri fratelli.*

Quarto. a-d, A-M in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
Ayala mentions an ed., ib., ib., 1577, and believes there is another of Ancona,  
1608, entitled "L'arte militare." See No. 548.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.

538. Medina del Campo. 1569. Gutierrez de la Vega.  
Nuevo tratado y compendio de Re militari. *F. del Canto.*

Mentioned by Huerta and by Lucuce.—Almirante.

539. Vinetia. 1570. Mora, Domenico. Art  
Military.  
Il Soldato . . . Nel quale si tratta di tutto quello, che ad un uero Soldato, & nobil Caualliere si conuiene sapere, . . . la quarta [quinta ?] Gioia etc. *Gabriel Giolito.*

Quarto. a (6 ff.), A-Z, AA-II in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Colophon: *In Venetia Per Giovan Grissio* 1569. Giolito's ed. is pirated, being only Grissio's with a new tp.—MS. note in B.M. copy, the writer of which had seen a copy with the original tp.; and Fontanini, ii. 365. Edited by Porcacchi. See Nos. 534 and 540.

*Copies.* B.M. (two).

540. Vinetia. 1570. Rocca, Bernardino.  
La seconda (terza) parte del governo della militia . . . La Sesta Gioia etc. *Gabriel Giolito.*

Quarto. \*, \*\*, \*\*\* (2 ff.), A-P4, in 8<sup>s</sup>; a-d in 4<sup>s</sup>; A-R4 in 8<sup>s</sup>.

A continuation of No. 534. The "Terza Parte" has separate tp. "La Collana Historica" is the collective title applied by Porcacchi to certain works edited or translated by him. [See Nos. 534, 539.] The second series (on Ancient Historians) began in 1570 with a trans. of Dictys of Candia (*Giolito*, 4<sup>o</sup>).

*Copies.* B.M. (two).

541. Brescia. 1571. Cataneo, Girolamo.

Modo di formare con prestezza le moderne battaglie di picche, archibugieri, et cavalleria; con tre avisi del modo del marchiare; in modo di dialogo. Di nuouo dato in luce, etc.  
*F. & P. M. dei Marchetti Fratelli.*

Quarto. \*, A-G in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Forms Bk. III. of the "Arte Militare", 1584, 4<sup>o</sup>. See No. 542.

*Copies.* B.M.

542. Brescia. 1571. Cataneo, Girolamo.

Dell' Arte Militare libri tre, ne' quali si tratta il modo di fortificare, offendere, diffendere, & fare gli Alloggiamenti Campali; Con l'essamini de' Bombardieri, & formare le Battaglie. . . . Terza impressione, ampliati e corretti. *V. Sabbio* for *T. Bozola.*

Quarto.

Contains: Bk. I. Opera Nuova di fortificare [No. 771]; Bk. II. Esamini de' Bombardieri [No. 662]; Bk. III. Tavole Brevissime [No. 529]. Reprinted Brescia, *P. M. Marchetti*, 1584, 4<sup>o</sup>, under the title, "Dell' Arte

Art  
Military.

Militare libri cinque" with the "Opera Nuova" as Bk. I., the "Nuovo Ragionamento" [No. 779] as Bk. II., and the "Modo di formare" [No. 541], as Bk. III.; the "Esamini" and the "Tavole Brevissime" becoming Bks. V. and IV. respectively. A Lat. trans. of the ed. of 1584 by Jean de Tournes, Lugduni, 1600, 4°.

*Copies.* B.M. (1571, 1584); Bod. (1600).

543. Franckfurt-am-Mayn. 1573. Fronsperger, Leonhard.  
Kriegssbuch, Ander Theyl. Von Wagenburgt umb die  
Feldleger . . . Item von allerley Geschütz und Feuerwerck,  
nach Geometrischen Art zugebrauchen, *etc.* *Martin Lechler.*

Folio. )(, A-Z, AA-QQ in 6<sup>s</sup>.

See No. 531 for First Part and Eds.; No. 544 for Third Part.

*Copies.* B.M.

544. Franckfurt am Mayn. 1573. Fronsperger, Leonhard.  
Kriegssbuch, Dritter Theyl. Von Schantzen unnd Befes-  
tungen umb die Feldt Läger auff zuwerfen und zu schlagen :  
auch von Ritter unnd Reuter Rechten . . . . Item des der  
alten Teutschen, auch der Mitternachtigen unnd anderer  
frembden Völcker Kriegss Ordnung, Sitten und gebrauch, *etc.*

Folio. )(, A-Z, AA-ZZ, AAA-OOO8, and \*8 in 6<sup>s</sup>. See Nos. 531 and 543.

*Copies.* B.M.

545. Venetiis. 1575. Ferretti, Giulio.  
De re et disciplina militari aureus tractatus. *B. Zalteri.*

Folio. a-i, A-Z, AA-NN<sub>4</sub> in 6<sup>s</sup>.

Taken from Justinian Agapitus. Ayala mentions the first ed., Venetiis, 1562, apud Ludovicum Avantium, which was entitled: "Consilia et tractatus." Ferrettus died in 1547, so that the work was published posthumously.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

546. Heidelberg. 1577. Hohenspach, Stanislaus.  
Kurtzer und notwendiger bericht der Feldtschreiberey, *etc.*  
*Jacob Müller.*

Octavo. A-F<sub>4</sub> in 8<sup>s</sup>.

Treats of secretarial work in an army.

*Copies.* B.M.

547. Parma. 1579. Isacchi, Giovanni Battista. Art  
Military.  
Inventioni . . . Nelle quali si manifestano varii Secreti et  
vtili auisi a persone di guerra, e per i tempi di piacere.  
*Setti Viotto.*

Quarto. A, B, A-Z2 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.

548. Ancona. 1579-80. Ferretti, Francesco.  
Diporti Nottvrni Dialloghi Familliarj *etc.* *F. Salvioni.*

Octavo. †, A-O in 8<sup>s</sup>; B and N are 4<sup>s</sup>.  
Colophon and Ded. bear date 1580. Ayala mentions eds. of Venice,  
1568, 1577; Rome, 1579, 1604; and Ancona, 1608, with title: "Dialoghi  
Notturni"; the last ed. was probably printed with No. 537. On ordering,  
marching, and quartering, with plates.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

549. Urbino. 1580. Galvani, Galvano.  
Il castellano : avvertimenti et ordini che convengono a un  
castellano in una fortezza semplice, con quel che far devono  
i soldati di quella, et cura de' prigioni che in essa saranno.  
*Olivio Cesano.*

Quarto.—Ayala.

550. Firenze. 1581. Carafa, Diomede.  
Gli ammaestramenti militari divisi in libri tre.

—Ayala. Eds.: Napoli, *Tarquinio Longo*, 1595, 1608, 4<sup>o</sup>.—*Ibid.*

551. Venetia. 1582. Rocca, Bernardino.  
De discorsi di guerra . . . Libri quattro, dove s'insegna a'  
Capitani & Soldati il modo di condurre esserciti, di far fatti  
d'arme, espugnare & difender Città *etc.* *Damiano Zenaro.*

Quarto. a-b, A-Z, AA-LL4 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
An ed. of Bologna, 1573.—Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.

552. Vinegia. 1582. Sansovino, Francesco.  
Informatione della militia Turchesca, & degli habiti de  
soldati Turchi . . . *Altobello Salicato.*

Octavo. A-D<sub>4</sub> in 8<sup>s</sup>.

Published with the Italian trans. of Du Choul's "Castramétation" [No. 702] under general tp., but separate sigs. and pag.

Copies. B.M.

553. Pamplona. 1582. Funes, Juan de.  
Libro intitvlado Arte Militar. En el qual se declara que  
sea el oficio de Sargento mayor: y que sea órden quadrada:  
y como se ha de caminar con vna compañía de Infantería, o  
con vn tercio ó exercito: *etc.* *Thomas Porralis.*

—Almirante.

554. Lyon. 1583. Savonne, Pierre.  
Instrvction de l'ordre militaire. Traitant de bataillons  
carrez d'hommes. [Second Livre . . . Traitant de bataillons  
carrés de Terrain.] *Thibaud Ancelin.*

Quarto. A-Q<sub>2</sub>; A-Q<sub>2</sub> in 4<sup>s</sup>. Two pts., with separate tpp.

This appears to be the 1st ed., though the Privilege is dated 1576.

Copies. B.M.

555. Mexico. 1583. Garcia de Palacio, Diego.  
Diálogos militares de la formacion é informacion de personas,  
instrumentos y cosas necesarias para el buen uso de la guerra.

(Pedro Ocharte.)—Almirante.

556. Ferrara. 1583. Francesco Maria II., Duke of Urbino.  
Discorsi militari . . . Ne i quali si discorrono molti auant-  
aggi, & disuantageggi, della guerra, vtilissimi ad ogni Soldato.  
*Dominico Mammarelli.*

Octavo. A-E<sub>4</sub> in 8<sup>s</sup>.

Ayala gives an ed. of Ferrara, 1582—very rare.

Copies. B.M.



557. Venetia. 1585. Brancaccio, Lelio.  
Della nvova disciplina & vera arte militare del Brancatio.  
Libri viii. *etc.* Aldo.

Folio. A-Z, AA-BB in 4<sup>a</sup>; C has 2 ff., I and BB, 6 ff.

1st ed.: Venice, *V. Baldini*, 1582, fol., the title of which Ayala gives thus: "Il Brancatio: della vera disciplina et arte militare." The author's baptismal name does not appear, and, for historical reasons, Ayala is almost certain that the work is Giulio Cesare Brancaccio's, and not Lelio's.

*Copies.* B.M. (1585); R.U.S.I. (1582, 1585); Bod. (1585).

558. Roma. 1585. Agrippa, Camillo.  
Dialogo . . . del modo di mettere in battaglia presto &  
con facilità il popolo di qual si voglia luogo con ordinanze &  
battaglie diuerse. *Bartholomeo Bonfadino.*

Quarto. A-F in 4<sup>s</sup>, and 8 pp. of plates; 28 ff.

Eds. of Genova, 1665, and Firenze, 1668.—Ayala.

*Copies.* B.M.

559. Roma. 1586. Evoli, Cesare d'.  
Delle ordinanze et battaglie *etc.* T. & P. Diani.

Folio.—Ayala. 1st ed., 1583.—*Ibid.*

560. Basle. 1587. La Noue, François de, *called* Bras-de-fer.  
Discovrs politiques et militaires du Seigneur de la Noue.  
Novvellement recueillis & mis en lumiere. *François Forest.*

Quarto. \*, \*\*, A-VVVV in 4<sup>o</sup>; 364 ff.

Eds.: *ib.*, *ib.*, 8<sup>o</sup>, issued simultaneously; [Basle ?] 1588, 8<sup>o</sup>, "imprimé nouvellement."—Brunet; La Rochelle, *Villepour*, 1590, 16<sup>o</sup>.—Brunet; Basle, *F. Le Fevre*, 1591, 16<sup>o</sup>; also in Chomedey's trans. of Guicciardini's "Historia d'Italia" ("Nouvelle édition . . . a laquelle ont esté adjoustées les Observations . . . du Sieur de la Noue"), Geneva, 1593, 8<sup>o</sup>; Basle, 1597, 4<sup>o</sup>; 1612, 8<sup>o</sup>.—Brunet; Genève, *P. & J. Chouët*, 1614, 16<sup>o</sup>. Several recent reprints: 1819, 8<sup>o</sup>; 1835, 8<sup>o</sup>; 1836, 8<sup>o</sup>. Eng. trans., No. 37.

*Copies.* B.M. (two eds. of 1587; 1591, 1593, 1597, 1614).

561. Helmstadii. 1587. Meier, Albert.  
Methodvs describendi regiones, vrbes & arces, & quid

singulis locis præcipuè in peregrinationibus homines nobiles ac docti animaduertere, obseruare & annotare debeant.  
*Jacobus Lucius.*

Octavo. A1-8 and B1-4.  
See Eng. adaptation, No. 44.  
*Copies.* B.M.

562. Brussellas. 1589. Valdés, Francisco de.  
Espeio, y deceplina militar, . . . En el qual se trata del officio del Sargento Mayor . . . con el Discvrso . . . por Don Sancho de Londonno. *Roger Velpius.*

Quarto. A-L2 in 4<sup>s</sup>. Two pts.  
The Discurso has separate tp., pag., and sigs. The wording and date of the Ded., 1571, point to a 1st ed. of that year. Huerta is right in giving another of 1586 [Brussels, *R. Velpius*], as appears from the Privilege to the ed. of 1589, which alludes also to a Fr. trans. The eds. of Madrid, *P. Madrigal*, 1590, 8°, and Madrid, *G. Dory*, 1591, 8°, are entitled "Dialogo militar." Others of Brussels, 1596, and Antwerp, 1601.—Almirante. Ital. trans., *E. Deuchino*, Venetia, 1626, 8°.—Ayala. See No. 563, and Eng. trans., No. 47.

*Copies.* B.M. (1589, 1590, 1591).

563. Brussellas. 1589. Londoño, Sancho.  
El discvrso sobre la forma de redvzir la disciplina militar, à meyor y antigvo estado. *Roger Velpius.*

Quarto. A-L in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
Written in 1568, by command of Alva. This ed. appeared with No. 562. Eds.: Bruselas, 1587, 8°; Madrid, 1593, fol.; Bruselas, *Velpius*, 1593, 8°.—Almirante. French trans., Bruxelles, *Velpius*, 1589, 8°. Eng. trans., No. 48.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1589, and trans.).

564. Cuenca. 1589. Nuñez Alva, Diego.  
Dialogos . . . de la vida del Soldado, en que se quenta la conjuracion, y pacificacion de Alemaña etc. *Juan Alfonso de Tapia.*

Octavo. A-Z, AA-II in 8°.  
Reprinted, Madrid, 1890, 8°, with Introduction.  
*Copies.* B.M.

565. Madrid. 1590. Antonio, Francisco. Art  
Military.  
Avisos para soldados y gente de guerra. *Pedro Madrigal*.  
Duodecimo.—Almirante.  
Huerta gives an ed. of 1597.
566. Madrid. 1590. Alaba y Viamont, Diego de.  
El perfeto capitan, instrvido En la disciplina Militar, y  
nueva ciencia de la Artilleria. *Pedro Madrigal*.  
Folio. †(4 ff.), †† and ††† (each 6 ff.), A-Z, AA-KK6 in 8°. In 6 bks.  
Bks. III.-VI. contain the "Nueva Ciencia." See No. 665.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.
567. Brusselas. 1590. Anonymous.  
Tratado de re militari, hecho a manera de dialogo qve passo  
entre . . . Don Gonzalo Fernandez de Cordova llamado Gran  
Capitan . . . y Don P. Manrique de Lara, Duque de  
Najara. *Roger Velpius*.  
Quarto. A-Z, AA-HH in 4°.  
Not mentioned by either Almirante or Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.
568. Verona. 1590. Spontone, Ciro.  
Il Savorgnano ovvero del guerriero: novello dialogo.  
Octavo.  
—Ayala. Another ed.: Bologna, *V. Benacci*, 1603, 8°.—Fontanini, ii.  
404. The book takes its name from Germanico Savorgnano, nephew of  
Mario (No. 587).
569. Madrid. 1592. Eguiluz, Martin de.  
Milicia, discvrso, y regla militar. *etc.* *Luis Sanchez*.  
Quarto. D, A-V in 8°.  
Another ed.: Anvers, *Pedro Bellerio*, 1595, 4°.  
*Copies.* B.M.
570. Venecia. 1592. Garrido y Figueroa.  
El libro del Soldado.  
Mentioned by Diana.—Almirante.

571. Fiorenza. 1594. Ammirato, Scipione, the Elder.  
Discorsi . . . sopra Cornelio Tacito. nuovamente posti in  
luce etc. *Filippo Giunti.*

Quarto. †, ††, †††, †††† in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-Z, AA-NN in 8<sup>s</sup>, OO-TT6 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
Eds.: ib., ib., 1598 and 1599; ib., *M. Valentino*, 1607; Brescia, *Appresso  
la Compagnia Bresciana*, 1599; Padova, *P. Frambotto*, 1642—all 4<sup>os</sup>; re-  
printed, Torino, 1853, 8<sup>o</sup>, with notes. Ayala gives an ed. of 1546, but this  
must be a misprint; the Pref. is dated Oct. 28, 1594. French trans.,  
Lyon, *C. Morillon*, 1619, 4<sup>o</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.

572. Madrid. 1594. Isaba, Marcos.  
Cverpo enfermo de la milicia española, con Discursos y  
auisos, para que pueda fer curado, vtilis y de prouecho. etc.  
*Guillermo Druy.*

Quarto. 4 ff. unsigned, then ¶, ¶¶, ¶¶¶, A-Z, AA-PP in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.

573. Roma. 1594. Patrizi, Francesco.  
Paralleli Militari . . . Ne' quali si fa paragone delle  
Milizie antiche, in tutte le parti loro, con le moderne. *Luigi  
Zannetti.*

Folio. \* (6 ff.), A-Z, AA-HH6 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.

574. Roma. 1595. Patrizi, Francesco.  
De Paralleli Militari . . . Parte II. Della militia riformata.  
Nella quale s'aprono, i modi, e l'ordinanze varie degli  
Antichi. etc. *Guglielmo Facciotto.*

Folio. †, A-0006 in 4<sup>s</sup>; 246 ff.  
*Copies.* B.M.

575. Lisboa. 1595. Carrião, João.  
Arte militar.

—Almirante.

576. Parma. 1595. Viotti.  
Ordini e privilegi della milizia di Parma.  
—Ayala, p. 392.
577. Brussellas. 1595. Escalante, Bernardino de.  
Dialogos, del arte militar. *Rutger Velpio*.  
Quarto. A-Z and AA6 in 4°.   
Eds.: ib., ib., 1588, 4°.—Huerta, and Privilege to ed. of 1595; Sevilla, *A. Prescioni*, 1583, 4°.—Almirante.  
*Copies*. B.M.; Bod.
578. Francofurti. 1595. Ranzovius, Henricus.  
H. R. . . . Commentarijs bellicvs, libris sex distinctvs  
præcepta, consilia, et strategemata, pugnae terrestri ac  
naualis, ex variis Eruditorum collecta scriptis, complectens  
*etc. Zacharias Paltbenius*.  
Quarto. )(, A-Z, AA-ZZ in 4°.   
*Copies*. B.M.; Bod.
579. Lyon. 1596. Hurault, Jacques, Sieur du Vieul.  
Trois livres des offices d'estat, avec vn sommaire des strata-  
gemes. . . . Seconde Edition *etc. François le Febure*.  
Octavo. §, A-S4 and T2 in 8°.   
See Eng. trans., No. 65.  
*Copies*. B.M.
580. Anveres. 1596. Mendoza, Bernardino de.  
Theorica y practica de gverra. *Emprenta Plantiniana*.  
Octavo. A-L in 8°, and 2 ff. unsigned.  
Other eds.: Madrid, 1595, and Amberes, 1619.—Almirante. Ital. trans.:  
Venetia, *G. B. Ciotto*, 1596, 4°.—Ayala; reprinted, ib., 1616.—Almirante.  
French trans.: Bruxelles, *R. Velpius*, 1597, 8°. Huerta mentions an ed. of  
Madrid, 1577, but Almirante knows nothing of it. See Eng. trans., No. 67.  
*Copies*. B.M. (1596, 1597); W.O. (1595).

581. Madrid. 1596. Mosquera de Figueroa, Christoval.  
Comentario en breve compendio de disciplina militar, en  
que se escribe la jornada de las islas de los Açores. *L. Sanchez.*  
Quarto. A-Z, AA-ZZ, Aa-Bb in 4<sup>s</sup>; Ii has 6 ff.; no Y.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.
582. Coloniae Agrippinae. 1597. Valtrinus, Joannes Antonius.  
De re militari veterum Romanorum. *In Officina Birck-  
mannica.*  
Octavo. A-Z, AA-LL6 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.
583. Napoli. 1597. Romano, Vespasiano.  
Trattato et modo di difendere la fanteria dalla cavalleria et  
discorso sopra la fortificazione delle fosse. *Appresso Gio.  
Iacomo Carlino et Antonio Pace.*  
Quarto.  
—Ayala, p. 54, from a copy in the Magliabecchia Lib. On p. 397 the  
work is given with different spelling. Very rare.
584. [London?] 1597. Ubaldino, Petruccio.  
Militia del Gran Dvca di Thoscana. Capitoli, ordini, &  
priuilegii della Militia, & Bande *etc.*  
Quarto. A-Iz in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
Ded. to Queen Elizabeth, from London, "il primo dell' anno 1597."  
*Copies.* B.M.
585. Venetia. 1599. Frachetta, Girolamo.  
Il Prencipe . . . Nel quale si considera il Prencipe, &  
quanto al gouerno dello Stato, & quanto al maneggio della  
Guerra. Riueduto & ampliato, *etc.* *Gio. Batt. Ciotto.*  
Octavo. A, B, a, b, A-Y in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
Another ed.: Venetia, *Combi*, 1647, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Ayala. See No. 627.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

586. Hanoviæ. 1599. Gentilis, Alberico. Art  
Military.  
A. G. . . . De armis Romanis Libri duo. Nunc primùm  
in lucem editi. Ad . . . Comitem Essexiæ, etc. *Apud Gug-*  
*lielmum Antonium.*  
Octavo. A-S6 in 8°. .  
An exact reprint, ib., *Apud Hæredes G. Antonium, 1612, 8°.* Rare.  
*Copies.* B.M.
587. Venetia. 1599. Savorgnano, Mario.  
Arte Militare Terrestre e Maritima. . . . Con vn essa-  
tissimo Trattato à parte dell' Artiglierie. etc. *F. di Franceschi.*  
Folio. a, b, A-Z, AA-DD in 4°; a, M, and DD are 6°. Plates.  
Another ed.: ib., *S. Combi, 1614, fol.* The work was edited and published  
by Cesare Campana, after the author's death.  
*Copies.* B.M.; W.O. (1614).
588. Modona. 1600. Pelliciani, Bartolomeo.  
Avertimenti Militari, . . . Vtili, & necessarij a tutti gli  
officij che possono essere essercitati in vn formato essercito,  
principiando dal soldato priuato, et ascendendo per ordine fino  
al carico del Capitano Generale. etc. *Gio: Maria Verdi.*  
Quarto. \*, a-d2, A-Z, AA-QQ2 in 4°. .  
This is the first ed. Another, ib., ib., 1606, 4°, "di nuovo dell' autore  
corretti et ampliati."—Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.
589. Firenze. 1601. Bacci, Giuseppe.  
Trattato di battaglie, squadroni et ordinanze diverse etc.  
—Ayala.
590. Venetia. 1601. Contarini, Pier Maria.  
Corso di guerra et partiti di Guerreggiare, e combattere  
. . . ; Ne' quali si tratta, come con minor Essercito habbi à  
guerreggiare, & combatter contra Essercito di gran lunga

maggiore. Come s' habbi à regger vna pugna depressa. E quanto s' habbi à fare in euento di Rotta. *Gratioso Perchacino.*

Quarto. a, A-Z, AA-ZZ, AAA-SSS2 in 4<sup>s</sup>; an extra leaf after NN4.

Very rare.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

591. Roma. 1602. Fiamelli, Giovanni Francesco.

Il principe cristiano guerriero, osservanze e precetti raccolti, osservati e messi in pratica da lui nelle guerre delli Paesi bassi e altrove, . . . dove si tratta di quanto fare dee non solo il principale, ma ancora qualsivoglia altro ufficiale, *etc.*  
*Luigi Zanetti.*

Quarto.

—Ayala.

592. Roma. 1603. Fiamelli, Giovanni Francesco.

Modo di ben mettere in ordinanza gli eserciti con una giunta di cose attenenti alli governi delli stati e di eserciti.  
*Luigi Zanetti.*

Quarto.

—Ayala.

593. Milan. 1603. Lechuga, Cristoval.

Discvrso . . . en qve trata del cargo de Maestro de Campo General, y de todo lo que de derecho le toca en el Exercito.  
*Pandolfo Malatesta.*

Quarto. A-Z, AA-FF5 in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Huerta gives an earlier ed. of 1600; but this may be a mistake, caused by one of the two copies in the Biblioteca Nacional in Madrid having the imprint torn, and the date replaced by hand—"1600."—Almirante. Ital. version, *ib.*, *ib.*, 1603, 8<sup>o</sup>, given by Ayala as the original.

*Copies.* B.M.

594. Napoli. 1603. Cassani, Alberto.

Essercitio militare, il quale dispone l'huomo à vera cogni-



zione del scrimire di Spada, e dell' ordinare l'Essercito à Art Military.  
battaglia. Con la tariffa della radice quadra, & Sorda ; con  
molti Essemi per cauar detta Radice etc. *Tarquinio Longo.*

Quarto. A-I in 4<sup>s</sup>.

The date at the end is 1602.

Copies. B.M.; Bod.

595. Fiorenza. 1604. Altoni, Giovanni.  
Il soldato . . della scienza, et arte della guerra. *V. German.*

Folio. †, A-Z, AA-II in 2<sup>s</sup>. 4 folding plates.

Copies. B.M.; Bod.

596. Siena. 1604. Cinuzzi, Imperiale. '  
La vera militar disciplina antica e moderna. *S. Marchetti.*

Quarto. \*, A (8 ff.), B-Z, Aa; a, A-Z, AA-GG; \*2, A-Z, AA-GG;  
in 4<sup>s</sup>. Three pts.

Each pt. has separate tp., pag., and sigs. Col. to Pt. 1 bears date 1603.  
Another ed.: Sienna, 1620, 4<sup>o</sup>.

Copies. B.M. (1604); R.U.S.I. (1620); Bod. (1604).

597. [?] 1605. [No imprint given.] Becke, Von der.  
Der Soldatenspiegel.

—Almirante; who remarks, "this Danish colonel describes perfectly the  
military period in which he flourished, 1544 to 1571, and is indispensable  
for understanding the German military system of the sixteenth century."

598. Paris. 1605. Vigenère, Blaise de.  
L'Art Militaire d'Onosender, Avtheur Grec. Ou il traicte  
de l'office et deuoir d'un bon chef de guerre. Mis en Langue  
Françoise et Illustré d'Anotations par B. de Vigenère Bour-  
bonnois. *Abel Langellier.*

Quarto. a, A-ZZZZZZZZ in 4<sup>s</sup>, 740 ff.

Copies. B.M.

599. Venetia. 1606. Eugeni, Girolamo.  
Memoriale di guerra utilissimo et necessario a generali et

governatori di fortezze et qualunque personaggio che segue l'esercitio delle armi nel quale si tratta dell' astuti tradimenti et stratagemmi che usano i capitani et soldati, volendo assediare e prender una fortezza per terra *etc.* *Gio. Batt. Ciotti.*

Octavo.  
—Ayala.

600. Venetia. 1606. Basta, Giorgio.  
Il mastro di campo generale. *Gio. Batt. Ciotti.*

Quarto. a (6 ff.), b-d, A-V in 4<sup>s</sup>; T has 8 ff.  
Edited by *Ciro Spontone.*

Other eds.: Venezia, 1612 and 1626.—Ayala, who gives also: "Compendio del mastro di campo"; which is perhaps only another ed., for the author had died before 1612.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

601. Roma. 1606. Fiamelli, Giovanni Francesco.  
I qvesiti militari di G. F. F. . . . Fattigli in diversi tempi da diversi Principi . . . e da lui risoluti con esempi, e con l'esperienza fatto insù la guerra, *etc.* *Carlo Vullietti.*

Quarto. \*, A-Z, Aa-Ff in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.

602. [Madrid. 1607.] Rojas, Christoval de.  
Cinco discvrsos militares. En el primero se trata, delas preuēciones que se deuen hazer en cosas de guerra. En el 2. de las pocas vitorias q̄ en nuestros tiempos alcançamos. En el 3. lo que se deuria hazer para esperar vitorias ciertas. El 4. el orden que se deue tener quãdo se aya perdido algun sitio repentinamente. En el 5. el modo de conseruar un Reyno en paz.

Quarto. A-H2 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
Almirante does not give this little work.  
*Copies.* B.M.

603. Brusellas. 1608. Fernandez de Eyzaguirre. Art  
Military.  
 Libro de Arithmetica, con vn Tratado de las qvatro formas  
 de esquadrones mas acostumbradas en la milicia. *I. Momarte.*  
 Quarto. 248 ff.  
 —Almirante.
604. Venetia. 1608. Balziani, Giulio.  
 Brevi regoli per formare squadroni. *Vincenzo Fiorini.*  
 Quarto.  
 —Ayala.
605. Roma. 1608. Serdonati, Francesco.  
 De' vantaggi da pigliarsi da' capitani di guerra contro i  
 nemici superiori di cavalleria.  
 Quarto.—Ayala.  
 A rare book, found in the Lib. of Saluzzo.
606. Trevigi. 1608. Colombina, Giovanni Battista.  
 Origine, eccellenza e necessità dell' arte militare, di dove  
 habbi havuto il suo nome la militia, et che cosa ella sia: con  
 un breve e facile discorso sotto interrogazione et risposta di  
 molte cose appartenenti alli bombardieri scolari, per sapersi  
 servire dell' artiglieria nelle fattioni cosi in mare come in terra,  
 et il modo di far il salnitro et la polvere. *Marco de Antonio.*  
 Octavo.  
 —Ayala, p. 143; the first ed. very rare.  
 Cicogna mentions an ed. of Venezia, 1617. Another of Venetia, *Giunta*,  
 1641, 4°.—Ayala.
607. Altenburgi. 1609. Facius, Caspar.  
 Casparis Facii Axiomata bellica, Ex ipsis rebus gestis Per  
 exempla veterum ac recentium Historiarum parcè ac quasi  
 gustu præbita. *In Officina Illostri.*  
 Octavo. ), A-I in 8°.  
 Copies. B.M.

608. Francofurti ad Mœnum. 1609. Reusnerus, Elias Leorinus.  
Stratagematographia Siue Thesavrvs bellicvs, docens, qvomo-  
modo bella . . . suscipi, . . . administrari, commode &  
sapienter confici debeant: *etc.* *E collegio Paltheniano.*

Quarto. 18 ff.; then A-ZZZ in 4<sup>s</sup>, 292 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

609. Anversa. 1610. Brancaccio, Lelio.  
I Carichi Militari. *Ioachimo Trognese.*

Quarto. \*, \*\*, A-Z, AA-NN6 in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Eds.: Venetia, *E. Deuchino*, 1620, 4<sup>o</sup>; also, *ib.*, *ib.*, 1626, *ib.*, *Giunta*, 1641, and Milano, *G. Bidelli*, 1620, 8<sup>o</sup>; all three with the title: "I carichi militari, fucina di Marte."—Ayala. Span. trans. by Scavino, Barcelona, *S. & I. Matevad*, 1639, 4<sup>o</sup>.

*Copies.* B.M.; W.O. (1620); Bod. (1610).

610. Napoli. 1610. Stilliola, Modestino.

Proposta di ordinar battaglie conforme alla vera disciplina degli antichi Greci et Romani, accomodata all' uso dell' armi che hora si costumano, nella quale si promettono infiniti vantaggi, oltre la maniera osservata da moderni.

This work is not known to exist, either in MS. or in print, but it is announced, under this title, in an MS. of Stilliola, entitled, "Arte della guerra di vari" (MS. Sanese, L. v. 19), as shortly to be published, "In Napoli, per Gio. Domenico Roncagliolo, 1610."—Ayala, p. 61.

611. Paris. 1610. Baccellini, Matteo.

Aforismi politici e militari . . . con la militia et l'arte di creare un essercito, d'armarlo, d'essercitarlo, alloggiarlo e condurlo alla giornata: il modo di edificare terre e fortezze *etc.* *Jean de la Haye.*

—Ayala. "The author states that he has reduced into 174 aphorisms, a tedious work in seven books."

612. Paris. 1610. Montgommery, Louis de.

La Milice Francoise, redvite a l'ancien ordre et discipline

Militaire des Legiōs : telle & cōme la souloyent obseruer les anciens François, à l' imitation des Romains, & des Macedoniens. . . . Dernière edition reveue & augmentee per l'auteur : *François Rousselet*. Art  
Military.

Octavo. A-N in 8°.

Copies. B.M.

613. Ronciglione. 1611. Bufalo, Fausto del.

Breve discorso della dispositione et ordine militare, dove si mostra il modo di far rassegnà, ordinanze, squadroni, trincièri et altre cose pertinenti al buon soldato, con una facil regola per tirare l'artiglieria et aggiustare l'archibugio.

—Ayala.

614. Bologna. 1611. Balducci, Alessandro.

Della Militia, libro I.

—Ayala.

615. Alenquer. 1612. Mendes de Vasconcelos, Luis.

Arte militar dividida em tres partes. A primeira ensina a peleijar em campanha aberta, a segunda nos alojamentos, & a terceira nas fortificações. Com tres discvrsos antes da Arte. *etc. Vicente Alvarez.*

Folio. ¶ (4 ff.), A-Z, AA-YY<sub>4</sub> in 6°, besides 13 folding plates.

12 of the plates have sigs. continuous with text. Part I. only, printed here.

Copies. B.M.

616. Lyon. 1613. Billon, Jean de.

Les Principes de l'Art militaire.

Quarto.

Eds.: Rouen, 1622, 8°; Rouen, *J. Berthelin*, 1641, 8°, "reueué et augmentée par l'Autheur" (a 4, A-Z, AA-DD in 8°); Rouen. Lyon, 1612.

—Almirante. Germ. trans.: Mümpelgardt, *J. Foillet*, 1613, 4°. See also  
No. 653.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1641, and trans.); W.O. (1613); Bod. (1622).

617. Milano. 1613. Della Croce, Flaminio.

Teatro militare . . . Diviso in dve parti. Nell' vna si tratta de i veri mezi per conseruare qualisiuoglia Piazza, con altri discorsi appartenenti alla Caualleria, Trattati doppii, & alli Generali d'esserciti. Nell' altra . . . si mostra in qual maniera . . . assicurare le Fortezze deboli. *B. Lantoni.*

Quarto. a, b, A-O2 in 4°.

Separate tp. to Pt. II., but continuous sigs. Second ed. enlarged: Anversa, *H. Aertssio*, 1617, 4°.

*Copies.* B.M.

618. Modona. 1613. Pellicciari, Bartolomeo.

Parte prima delle rassegne et modo per essercitare fanteria. Con Dichiarationi espedite, & Figure rapresentanti li siti, il numero della Soldatesca, & diuersi atti, che giornalmente occorrono in guerra. *Giulian Cassioni.*

Quarto. † (4 ff.), A-D6 in 8°, besides 14 plates.

The plates are numbered continuously with the text. French trans., entitled "Tyrocinium", Francfort sur le Main, *Lucas Iennis*, 1616, 4°. Both have portraits of the author. Ayala believes that the Second Part never appeared.

*Copies.* B.M.

619. Bruselas. 1614. Struccio, Alberto.

Imágen de la Milicia y de un Ejército firme con el favor del Marques Spinola.

Folio.—Almirante.

A Lat. ed. issued simultaneously—ib.

620. Antverpiæ. 1614. Lipsius, Justus.

De Militia Romana. Libri Qvinque. *Ex Officina Plantiniana.*

Quarto. A-Z, AA-ZZ, AA-DD6 in 4°.

The Privileges are dated 1594, 1597, 1605 (from Paris), and 1611 (to the Art Plantin Press). Eds.: *ib.*, 1598, 8°.—Almirante; *ib.*, *ib.*, 1630, 4° (an Military. exact reprint); with collected works, *ib.*, *ib.*, 1637, fol.; also Wesel, 1675, 8°.—Brunet.

*Copies.* B.M. (1614, 1630, 1637).

621. Oppenheim. 1615. Jacobi von Wallhausen, Johann.  
Kriegskunst zu Fuss, darinnen gelehrt und gewiesen wird :  
1. Die Handgriff des Musquet und des Spietztes. 2. Das exercitium oder wie man es nennet, das Trillen. 3. Shöne neue Bataille oder Schlaftordnungen. 4. Der ungerischen bishero geführten Regimenten Kriegs-Disciplin zu Fuss, nach behördlichen Art der rechten edlen Kriegskunst, *etc.*

Folio.—Almirante.

Reprinted in collected works, 1625.—*ib.* Trans.: Fr. by T. de Bry, Oppenheim, *H. Galler*, 1615, fol. ( ), ( ), A-V in 4°. Dutch: Leeuwaerden, *J. J. Starter*, 1617, fol.; *ib.*, *C. Fontaine*, 1630, fol., and Francfort, *U. Balck*, 1638.—Brunet. Russian (anonymous): [Moscow?], 1647, fol. All the trans. examined have plates by de Bry; 4 unnumbered, 30 numbered.

*Copies.* B.M. (trans. of 1615, 1617, and 1647).

622. Franckfurt. 1616. Jacobi von Wallhausen, Johann.  
Manuale Militare, Oder Kriegss Manual *etc.* *Paul Jacobi.*

Quarto. )(, A-Z, Aa-Bb2; A-D; in 4°.

19 numbered plates. At the end is a glossary.

*Copies.* B.M.

623. Paris. 1616. Desciau, Jean.  
L'Instrvction dv soldat. Tovchant le devoir des Gvets, Escovtes, Rondes, Sentinelles, & autres subiets de l'art militaire. *Denys Langlois.*

Octavo. A-C.

*Copies.* B.M.

624. Napoli. 1616. Frezza, Fabio.  
Massime, regole, et precetti Di Stato, & di Guerra *etc.* *T. Longo.*

Octavo. A-Z, AA-NN in 8°.

An earlier ed.: Venetia, 1614, 8°.—Ayala. Taken from the Ancients.

*Copies.* B.M.

625. Lucca. 1616. Dell' Orgio, Marc' Antonio.

Discorsi militari, ne' quali si tratta del vero modo di disciplinare i soldati al costume moderno; di far ordinanze et battaglie, e di quello che dagl' ufficiali convien farsi per il felice governo d'un reggimento di soldati, comunemente chiamato *terzo*. *Ottaviano Guidoboni*.

Quarto.—Ayala.  
Very rare.

626. Venetia. 1617. Cervellino, Enea.

Militare disciplina, fondamento reale della radice quadra, in cui sono diverse battaglie, da quali se ne cava battaglia quadra d'huomini, battaglia quadra di terreno, battaglia doblata et altre battaglie diverse che in esso libretto si contengono con ogni facilità et brevità, et anco hassi principio di fortificatione con altre regole militari, quali appartengonsi sapere da ogni condottiero, sargenti maggiori, capitani et soldati, per rendere buon conto delle loro attioni.

Quarto.—Ayala.  
Other eds.: Siena, 1620, and Venezia, 1641.—ib.

627. Venetia. 1617. Frachetta, Girolamo.

Il semenario de' governi di stato et di guerra. *E. Deuchino*.

Folio. a (8 ff.), b, A-XXX3 in 6<sup>o</sup>; 413 ff.

Second ed.; the Ded. to Philip III. is dated from Napoli, 1613; a new Pref. speaks of the 1st ed. as very incorrect. Other eds.: "Terza impressione", ib., ib., 1624, fol.; ib., *Combi*, 1647, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Ayala; Geneva, 1648, 4<sup>o</sup>. Two epitomes of this book were published while it was still in process of writing: "L'Idea del libro de governi di Stato" (Venice, 1592, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Bod. Lib.), and "Il Prencipe" (No. 585).

*Copies*. B.M. (1617, 1624); Bod. (1648).

628. Casale. 1617. Vincent I., Duke of Mantua.

Ordini et privilegi della militia a piedi, et a cavallo del stato di Monferrato, &c. Di nvovo riformato, *etc*. *P. Goffii*.

Quarto. 16 ff.



The date at the end is Nov. 10, 1590.  
*Copies.* B.M.

Art  
Military.

629. Bern. 1619. Friderich, Valentin.  
Kriegs kunst zu Fuss' unnd Eigēdlicher underricht mit  
sonderbarer Behendigkeit und geschwinden Vorthail allerhand  
Eydgnössischer Schlachtordnungen zu machen *etc.* *A. Weerlj.*

Quarto. )(, A-P in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.

630. Venetia. 1620. Cavalca, Alessandro.  
Essamine militare . . . intorno al rassegnare, & essercitare  
Compagnie di Cernide: Al perseguitare Banditi: Al guardare  
Piazze in tempo di sospetto, Al formare squadroni, e parate  
con altre cose appartenenti alla Militia. La seconda volta  
dato alla Stampa, con l'Aggiunta d'alcune dispute Militari, e  
di fortificationi; e tutti gli altri capitoli ampliati, & corretti.  
*Appresso i Sessa.*

Quarto. a, b, A-Z, AA2 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
Rare. 1st ed., *ib.*, *R. Meietti*, 1616, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Ayala; published without the  
author's consent.  
*Copies.* B.M.

631. Venetia. 1620. Gallo, Fabio.  
Regole de' squadroni d'infanteria. *Gio: e Varisco Varischi.*

Quarto.—Ayala.  
Reprinted in the "Fucina di Marte", *ib.*, 1641.—*ib.*; possibly the ed.  
given by Huerta, which Almirante takes to be a trans., or reprint, of No. 649.

632. Argentorati. 1624. Besoldus, Christopher.  
C. B. . . . Dissertatio Philologica, De arte jureque Belli.  
*Hæredum L. Zetneri.*

Quarto. A-Z, AA-GG2 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
The last section (Bb1,-GG2) in German.  
*Copies.* B.M.

633. Palermo. 1624. Lanario y Aragon, Francisco, Duke of Carpiñano.

Los tratados del Principe y dela gverra. *J. B. Maringo.*

Quarto. A-F1, A-GG; a-d, A-Z6 in 4<sup>s</sup>. 2 pts.

A fragment of an Italian work in 5 bks., completed before this trans. was published; but printed after it, Ayala thinks at Naples, in the same year. He gives an ed. in Italian: Naples, 1631, 4<sup>o</sup>, but whether of the whole, or of part only, is not clear. Pt. II. has separate Contents, Errata, pag., and sigs.

*Copies.* B.M.

634. Rouen. 1625. Du Praissac, —.

Les discovrs militaires. *Jean Bouley.*

Octavo. a (4 ff.), A-Y in 8<sup>s</sup>. 2 pts.

The fifth ed.; the earlier eds. are spoken of in the "Advertissement" (a4) as filled with errors. Eng. trans., No. 146.

*Copies.* B.M.

635. Milan. [1628?] Barroso, Bernardino.

Teoría, práctica y ejemplos. *Carlo Antonio Malatesta.*

Folio. 114 ff.—Almirante.

Said by Almirante to be one of the most curious of works on the art military, and one of the most important. He had seen four copies.

636. Urbino. 1629. Giorgi, Lodovico.

Istruzione per soldati novelli di fanteria, con alcuni brevi documenti di scherma.

Quarto.—Ayala.

637. Venetia. 1630. Sarti, Paolo.

L'archivio di diverse lettioni militari: opera altrettanto curiosa ai soldati, quanto necessario in tempo di guerra *etc.*  
*E. Deuchino.*

Sextodecimo.—Ayala.

638. Lisboa. 1631. Brito de Lemos.  
Abecedario militar.  
Quarto. In Portuguese.—Almirante.
639. Anvers. 1631. Vedel, Thomas.  
Reigles fort cvrievses povr former tovtes sortes de bataillons. Avecq vne Table de ceulx qui sont les plvs necessaires. Premièrement composez en Espaigñol, par Thomas Vedel et traduit en François par Nicolas Le Grand.  
Duodecimo.—Almirante.
640. Madrid. 1632. Perez de Xea, Miguel.  
Preceptos militares, orden, y formacion de esquadrones. *La Viuda de Alonso Martin.*  
Quarto. ¶, ¶¶ (2 ff.), A-Z, AA-SS1 in 4°. *Copies.* B.M.
641. Rouen. 1632. Le Normant, René.  
Discovrs povr le restablissement de la milice de France. Contenant les fonctions, depvis le simple soldat iusques à celles du General de l'armée, ensemble les exercices tant de l'Infanterie que Cauallerie: La forme de ranger les armées en bataille en raze Campagne & lieux Montueux: Le moyen pour recognoistre la capacité des Ingenieux en la Theorie & pratique de la Fortification, Castrametation feux d'Artifices etc. *Charles Osmont.*  
Quarto. a, b, A-Z, AA-VV2 in 4°. *Copies.* B.M.
642. Madrid. 1633. Camasa, Francesco Antonio.  
Tabla universal para ordenar en cualquier forma escuadrones. *Andres de la Parra.*  
Oçtavo.—Almirante.

643. Padova. 1634. Gianolio, Ferrante.  
Regole et ordeni della disciplina militare in lingua italiana  
e greca. *Crivellari*.  
Folio.—Ayala.  
The author was a Greek.
644. Milano. 1634. Girini, Stefano.  
Insegnamenti militari, o ver regole da formar squadroni,  
coi fondamenti d'aritmetica et geometria del soldato mon-  
ferrino. *Francesco Marellò*.  
Quarto. 50 pp.—Ayala.
645. Paris. 1636. Rohan, Henri de, Duc de.  
Le parfait Capitaine. Avtremment, l'abregé des . . . Com-  
mentaires de Cesar. Avec quelqves remarqves . . . suivy  
d'un Receuil de l'Ordre de guerre des Anciens etc. *Jean  
Houzé*.  
Quarto. Large Paper. ã, ë, A-CCC in 4<sup>s</sup>; 204 ff., besides frontispiece.  
Eds.: ib., *A. Courbé*, 1638, 4<sup>o</sup>, "reveu par l'Autheur"; [Leyden, Elzevir],  
1638, 12<sup>o</sup>; ib., ib., 1639 and 1641, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Brunet; ib., ib., 1648, 12<sup>o</sup>; Paris,  
1644, 43, 4<sup>o</sup>; ib., 1744, 12<sup>o</sup>; La Haye, 1745, 8<sup>o</sup>. Span. trans.: Amberes,  
*Plantin*, 1652, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Almirante. Eng. trans.: No. 148.  
*Copies.* B.M.
646. Napoli. 1637. Marincola, Domenico.  
Trattato dell' ordinanze di squadroni.  
—Ayala.  
Ayala knew of only one copy, that in the Library of Saluzzo.
647. Franckfurt. 1638. Troupitzen, Laurentius à.  
Kriegs Kunst, Nach Königlicher Schwedischer Manier eine  
Compagny zu richten, in Regiment/ Zug- und Schlacht-  
Ordnung zu bringen/ zum Ennst anzuführen und zu gebrauchen  
zu unterhalten in Esse würcklich. *Mattheo Merian*.  
Quarto. ), A-H in 4<sup>s</sup>. 31 numbered plates.  
*Copies.* B.M.

648. Francoforte. 1638. Fantini, Girolamo. Art  
Military.  
Modo per imparare a sonare di tromba tanto di guerra  
quanto musicalmente in organo *etc.* *Daniel Vuastch.*

Folio.—Ayala.

Fantini was drum-major to the Grand-Duke Ferdinand II.

649. Madrid. 1639. Gallo, Antonio.  
Destierro de ignorancias de todo género de soldados de  
infantería. *Francisco Martinez.*

Quarto.—Almirante.

Gallo wrote also the "Regimiento Militar" (Lisboa, 1644, 4°).

650. Roma. 1639. Dell' Uva, Flavio.  
Discorso delle regole et ordini che avra da tenere la fanteria  
in tutte le sue ordinanze *etc.* *Francesco Corbelletti.*

Quarto.—Ayala.

651. Barcelona. 1640. Moradell Donzell, Domingo de.  
Prelydis militars, en los quals se tracta lo que han de de  
saber, y obseruar los Oficiais majors, y menors de guerra, y  
los soldats de la insigne Ciutat de Barcelona, y lo modo han  
de jugar las armas, format esquadrans, repartir las bocas de  
foch, y altres actes militars. *Iaume Romeu.*

Quarto. ¶ (4 ff.), A-F6 in 8°.

Copies. B.M.

652. Lisboa. 1641. Miranda, Martin de.  
Disciplina militar.

Octavo.

—Almirante, from Huerta and Lucuce.

653. Rouen. 1641. Billon, Jean de.  
Svite des principes de l'art militaire. Ov il est amplement  
traicté des deuoirs du Sergent-Major *etc.* *Jean Berthelin.*

Octavo. A-K6 in 8°.

An ed. of Rouen, 1622, 8°. Issued with No. 657.

*Copies.* B.M. (1641); Bod. (1622).

654. Lisboa. 1641. Marinho de Azevedo, Luiz.  
Ordenanças militares para disciplina da Milicia Portugueza,  
recopiladas das que instituío en Flandres o Principe de Parma,  
*etc.*

Folio. 13 ff.—Almirante.

655. Napoli. 1641. Montalbini, Gio. Battista.  
Brevisimo trattato de' squadroni, dove con una sol  
regola facilissima s'insegna formare ogni genere d'ordinanze, e  
si mostrano vari usi et abusi degli antichi sin hora tolerati.  
*Roberto Mollo.*

Quarto.—Ayala.

656. Venetia. 1641. Piccinino, Spadino Francesco.  
Modo breve e facile per formare squadroni sino al numero  
di 20000 picche per l'esempio del qual numero si può ridurre  
in battàglia ogni grande esercito in più battaglioni. *F. Giunta.*

—Ayala, p. 49. Published in the "Fucina di Marte."

657. Rouen. 1641. Sainct Chaman, Henri de.  
Ordonnances militaires. Touchant l'ordre, Reglement,  
Discipline, Police & deuoir de l'Infanterie Françoise avec  
leurs priuileges . . . recuilly du Code Henry. *J. Berthelin.*

Octavo. K7-R in 8°; R7, blank, has set off from R6.

These ordinances were issued between 1534 and 1595. See No. 653.

*Copies.* B.M.

## ARTILLERY.

658. Vinegia. 1537. Tartaglia, Niccolo.  
Nova scientia inventa da N. Tartalea B[resciano]. *Stephano da Sabio*.

Quarto. \*, A-L in 4<sup>a</sup>.

Eds.: ib. [*Bascarini*?], 1550, 4°; ib. [ib.?], 1558, 4°; ib., 1606, 4°, "con una giunta al terzo libro", with the Collected Works. Ayala gives eds., Vinegia, *Curtio Troiano dei Navò*, 1562, 8°; ib., *C. Castelli*, 1583; both with the "Quesiti" added [see No. 660]. Neither of these works is rare.

Copies. B.M. (1537, 1550, 1558, 1606).

659. Venetia. 1545. Busca, Gabriello.  
Istruzione de' bombardieri, contenente un breve trattato delle cose più utili a sapersi per tale esercizio.

Quarto.

—Ayala, p. 140; the first ed. Other eds.: Venetia, 1554 and 1559, and Carmagnola, 1584.—Ayala; and Torino, *Gio: Domenico Tarino*, 1598, 4° [A-L in 4<sup>a</sup>], published with No. 785. This is Busca's first work. Very rare.

Copies. B.M. (1598); Bod. (1598).

660. Venetia. 1546. Tartaglia, Niccolo.  
Quesiti, e Inventioni diverse. *Venturino Ruffinelli*.

Quarto. A (6 ff.), B-Z, AA-KK in 4<sup>a</sup>. 1 folding plate.

Eds.: ib., *N. de Bascarini*, 1554, 4°; ib., 1606, 4°, with the Collected Works, edited by Gio. Batt. Manassi. Ayala gives an ed. of 1620, from Carpi.

For a translation of Bk. III., on sal nitre and the various compositions of gunpowder, see Henry Stubbe's "Legends no Histories", London, 1670, 4°, pp. 110-119. [See No. 658.]

Copies. B.M. (1546, 1554, 1606).

661. Nürnberg. 1547. Ryff, Walther Hermann.  
Der furnembsten, notwendigsten der gantzen Architectur

angehörigen Mathematischen und Mechanischen Künst. . . .  
 Der newen Perspectiua das I buch. . . . Weiteren inhalt des  
 II und III Buchs der Geometrischen Büxenmeisterey, und  
 Geometrischen Messung etc. *Johan Petreius.*

Folio. 344 ff. Sigs. to Bk. II.: A-N, AA-MM; to Bk. III.: A-N,  
 \*, \*\*6; in 4<sup>s</sup>. Woodcuts.  
*Copies.* B.M.

662. Brescia. 1564. Cataneo, Girolamo.  
 Vn trattato de gli essamini de' Bombardieri & di far fuochi  
 arteficiati. *L. di Sabbio* for *Gio. Batt: Bozola.*

Quarto. GG<sub>1</sub>, MM in 4<sup>s</sup>.

This forms Pt. II. of the "Opera Nuova", Brescia, 1564 and 1567  
 (No. 771); Bk. II. of the "Arte Militare", Brescia, 1571 (No. 542); and  
 Bk. V. of the "Arte Militare", Brescia, 1584 [ib.]. Ayala gives also eds.:  
 Venetia, 1582; and Vinegia, *A. Salicato*, 1596, 4<sup>o</sup>.

*Copies.* B.M. (1564).

663. Venetia. 1568. Ruscelli, Girolamo.

Precetti della militia moderna, tanto per mare quanto per  
 terra . . . ne' quali si contiene tutta l'arte del Bombardiero,  
 & si mostra l'ordine che ha da tenere il maestro di campo  
 quando vuole accampare il suo essercito etc. *Gli Heredi di  
 Marchiò Sessa.*

Quarto. †, A-P in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Eds.: ib., ib., 1572 and 1583, 4<sup>o</sup>; ib., 1595, 4<sup>o</sup>; and ib., *Alessandro de' Vecchi*,  
 1630, 4<sup>o</sup>, reissued with new tp., and no author's name, *per li Turrini*, ib., 1641,  
 under title, "Arte e precetti", etc. Germ. trans. in 2 pts.: Pt. I., *Apud L.  
 Iennis*, Pt. II., *Apud J. de Zetter*, Francofurti, 1620, 8<sup>o</sup>. The same small  
 woodcuts appear in all the orig. eds.; the trans. has 24 numbered plates.  
 From the Pref. by de Bolis, dated May 15, 1568, it would seem that the  
 author had died before publishing; but Ayala gives eds. of 1548 and 1562.

*Copies.* B.M. (all but ed. 1595); Bod. (1568, 1595); W.O. (1620).

664. Venetia. 1586. Collado, Luis.

Pratica Manuale di Arteglia; nella quale si tratta della  
 inuentione di essa, dell' ordine di condurla, & piantarla sotto  
 à qualunque fortezza, fabricar mine da far volar in alto le  
 fortezze, spianar le montagne, diuertir l'acque offensive à i



Regni & prouincie, tirar co i pezzi in molti e diuersi modi, Artillery. far fuochi artificiali ; con altri bellissimoi secreti all' essercitio dell' artiglieria appartenenti. Nuouamente composta & data in luce dal Signor L. C. Hispano, Bettico, Nebrisense *etc.*  
*Pietro Dusinelli.*

Folio. \* (6 ff.), A-Z in 4<sup>a</sup>. Sig. T has 2 separate plates.

Very rare ; the only ed. of the original form of Collado's famous work. Ayala, not having seen it, gives the trans. of the Spanish "Platica" as reprints of it. The B.M. copy formerly belonged to Thomas Digges, and has some of his MS. notes in the margins. See No. 668.

*Copies.* B.M.

665. Madrid. 1590. Alaba y Viamont, Diego de.  
Nueva sciencia de la Artilleria. *Pedro Madrigal.*

Folio. See No. 566.

What Tartaglia promised to do in the summary of the intended Fourth Book of the "Nuova Scientia" was performed by Alaba in this treatise, which forms Books III. to VI. (sigs. T8-Kk2 in eights) of the "Perfeto Capitan." It is strange that he should be so constantly overlooked ; Rieffel seems to have been ignorant of his existence.

666. Vicenza. 1590. Nazzari, Giambattista.  
Scelti documenti ai scolari bombardieri.

—Ayala.

667. Nürnberg. 1591. Brechtel, Franz Joachim.  
Büchsenmeisterey, Das ist : Kurtze doch eigentliche erklerung deren ding/ so einem Büchsenmeister fürnemlich zu wissen von nöten *etc.* *Katharina Gerlach.*

Octavo. A-Y in 8<sup>a</sup>. Two pts.

Pt. II. on Pyrotechnics. Reprinted, ib., *Paul Kauffmann*, 1599, 8<sup>o</sup>, with the same interesting little woodcuts.

*Copies.* B.M.

668. Milan. 1592. Collado, Luis.  
Platica Manval de Artilleria, en la qual se tracta de la excelencia de el arte militar, y origen de ella, y de las maqvinas

Artillery.

con que los antigvos començaron a vsarla, de la invencion de la polvora, y artilleria, De el modo de conduzirla, y plantarla en qualquier empresa, Fabricar las Minas para bolar las Fortalezas, y Montañas, Fuegos artificiales, Varios secretos, al arte de la Artilleria . . . muy necesarios. Y à la fin un examen de Artilleros. *Pablo Gotardo Poncio.*

Folio. \* (8 ff.), A-Z, AA-EE in 4<sup>s</sup>. 5 folding plates.

The Ded. is dated Feb. 5, 1593. Italian trans.: Milano, *G. Bordoni & P. Locarni*, 1606, fol., and Milano, *F. Ghisolfi*, 1641, fol. This is the "Pratica Manuale" in its second form, and is sufficiently different to be considered a distinct work. Collado, dissatisfied, probably, with the first attempt, rewrote the book in his native tongue. The woodcuts from No. 564 have been transferred to it, and more added.

*Copies.* B.M.

669. Venetia. 1592. Gentilini, Eugenio.

Instrvttione de' Bombardieri . . . oue si contiene l'esamina vsata dallo Strenuo Zaccharia Schiauina. L'Aggivnta che copiosamente dichiara, quanto nell' Esamina si comprende et vn discorso intorno alle fortezze *etc.* *F. dei Franceschi.*

Quarto. Three pts. with separate tpp. but continuous sigs. A, A-Q in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Eds.: *ib.*, *ib.*, 1598, 4<sup>o</sup>, entitled, "Instrvttione di Artiglieri"; *ib.*, 1605, 4<sup>o</sup>. Ayala gives, *ib.*, *Franceschi*, 1593; also *ib.*, *A. dei Vecchi*, 1606, 8<sup>o</sup>, and 1626, 4<sup>o</sup>, with the title, "Il perfetto bombardiere." Schiavina, it seems, was either a teacher of gunnery or a writer on it; but nothing is known of his work.

*Copies.* B.M. (1592, 1598); R.U.S.I. (1605).

670. Madrid. 1595. Isla, Lazaro de la.

Breve tratado del arte de artillería, geometria y artificios de fuego *etc.*

Duodecimo. 133 ff., with engravings.

—Almirante. "This little book, which is a small manual or catechism, has nothing notable about it, except its rarity.

671. Vicenza. 1596. Marzari, Giacomo.

Scelti documenti in dialogo à scholari bombardieri.

Quarto.

—Bod. Lib. Cat. Other eds.: Vicenza, *Perin*, 1579, and 1594, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Ayala.

*Copies.* Bod. (1596).

672. Antverpiæ. 1596. Lipsius, Justus. Artillery.  
 J. L. Poliorceticōn sive De machinis. Tormentis. Telis  
 Libri Qvinque etc. *Ex Officina Plantiniana.*  
 Quarto. \*, \*\*, A-I6 in 4<sup>s</sup>, with engravings.  
 Eds.: ib., ib., 1599, 1605, and 1625, 4<sup>os</sup>, all with same engravings; with  
 Collected Works, ib., ib., 1637, fol.; Lugduni, *H. Cardon*, 1613, fol.; and  
 Vesaliæ, 1675, 8<sup>o</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M. (all); W.O. (1605).
673. Venetia. [1598 ?] Capobianco, Alessandro, *called Bianco.*  
 Corona e palma militare di artiglieria, . . . Con vna giunta  
 della fortificatione moderna . . . Nuouamente composta, e  
 data in luce etc. *Fran: Bariletti.*  
 Folio. a (4 ff.), A-K4 in 6<sup>s</sup>.  
 Date both on tp. and colophon erased. Eds.: ib., ib., 1602; ib., ib.,  
 1618; and ib., *Antonio Bariletti*, 1647, fols.—Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1598); Bod. (1598).
674. Amstelredam. 1601.  
 Nieuwe const van Bossenschieten, principalick binnen  
 scheeps boort noodich te weten, vant grootste tot teleynte  
 gheschut te ghebruycken . . . Door een Lief-hebber der  
 selver const in licht gebracht. *Cornelius Claesz.*  
 Quarto. A-D in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.
675. Venetia. 1601. Tarducci, Achille.  
 Delle Machine, ordnanze, et quartieri antichi, et moderni,  
 come quelli da questi possino essere imitati senza punto alterare  
 La soldatesca dei nostri tempi, discorsi . . . Aggiuntoui dal  
 medesimo le fattioni occorse nell' Ongaria nel 1597, et la  
 Battaglia in Transilvania contra il Valacco 1600. Fatte dal  
 Signor Giorgio Basta etc. *Gio. Batt. Ciotti.*  
 Quarto. A (6 ff.), A-N6; A-C4; in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
 Separate tp. to Pt. II., and portrait of Basta. Another ed.: Venetia, 1600, 4<sup>o</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1601); Bod. (1600).
676. Paris. 1605. Rivault, David, Sieur de Fleurance.  
 Les elemens de l'artillerie. Concernans tant la premiere  
 inuention & theorie, que la practique du Canon. *Adrian Beys.*

Artillery.

Octavo. ā, ē, A-M in 8°. 4 plates.

Reprinted, *ib.*, *ib.*, 1608, 8°, "Augmentés en cette nouvelle edition & Enrichis de l'invention description & demonstration d'une nouvelle artillerie qui ne se charge que d'air ov d'eav pvre, & a neantmoins vne incroyable force. Plus d'une nouvelle facon de povldre a canon tres-violente qui se fait d'or, par vn excellent & rare Artifice non communiqué iusques à present. L'Histoire du progres & des premiers vsages des Armes a feu tant recentes qu'anciennes, est deduite en l'Auant-propos." Sigs.: ē, A-N6, A-E in 8°, besides a new Ded. of 2 ff. before the Addition. No separate plates.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod. (1605).

677. La Haye. 1606. St. Julien.  
Le Forge de Vulcain ou l'appareil des machines de guerre.

*Copies.* Lib. Roy. Art. Inst.

678. Venezia. 1606. Basta, Giorgio.  
Del governo dell' artiglieria.

—Ayala.

679. Madrid. 1606. Garcia de Cespedes.  
Libro de instrvmentos nvevos de geometria muy necesarios para medir distancias, . . . y otra vna question de artilleria etc. *Iuan de la Cuesta.*

Quarto. ¶, A-R in 4°.

*Copies.* B.M.

680. Padova. 1606. Galilei, Galileo.  
Le operazioni del compasso geometrico et militare. *Pietro Marinelli.*

Folio. \*, A-Q in 2°.

"Terza edizione," Padova, *Paolo Frambotto*, 1649, 4°; and Ayala gives eds. *ib.*, *ib.*, 1638, 1640, 4<sup>os</sup>; of Napoli, 1619; and Bologna, 1658. Reprinted, Milano, 1741, 8°.

*Copies.* B.M. (1606, 1649).

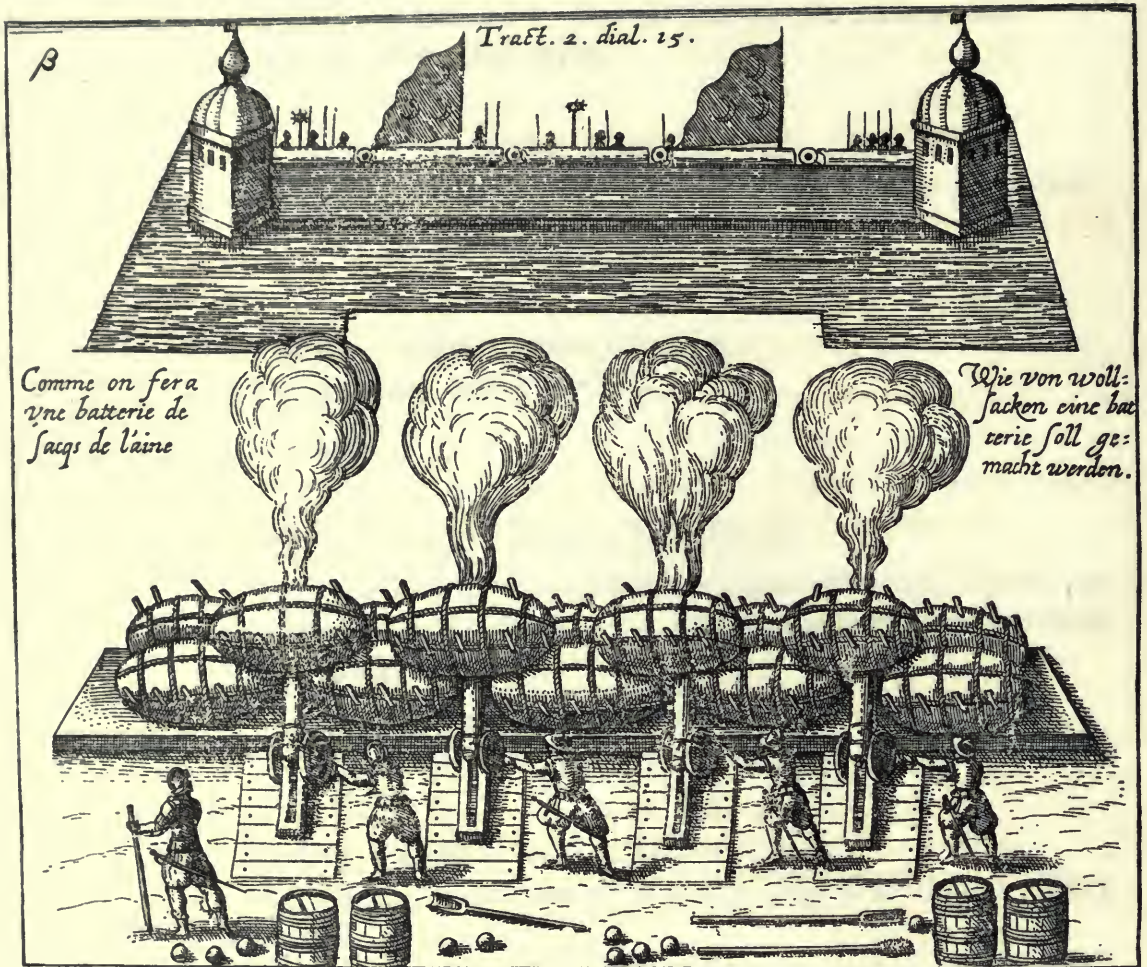


Architectural drawing of a building.

Handwritten text, possibly a name or address, located below the drawing.

Handwritten text, possibly a name or address, located below the drawing.

XII.



From "L'Artillerie" of Ufano, 1614.

681. Venetia. 1608. Pinelli, Antonio.  
Breve esamina a scolari bombardieri. *Marco Pinelli*.  
Quarto.  
—Ayala: "Twenty-two pages of questions and answers."
682. Palermo. 1610. Ajello, d'Ayelo Santo.  
Istruttione d'artiglieri, dove si contiene l'essamina usata nel regno di Sicilia. *Giovan Antonio de Francesco*.  
Octavo.  
Another ed.: 1669, 4°—both from Ayala.
683. Venetia. 1612. Gentilini, Eugenio.  
Breve disciplina a simplici artiglieri, la qual tratta la sustanza ch' egli deveno saper intorno l'uso delle artiglierie, nuovamente tratta fuori dalla real istruttione. *De Franceschi*.  
Quarto.—Ayala.
684. Bruxelas. 1613. Ufano, Diego.  
Tratado de Artillería y uso della platicado en las guerras de Flándes.  
Second ed., Bruselas, 1617, 4°.—Almirante. Fr. and Ger. trans. by J. T. de Bry, issued simultaneously, Franckfort, *Egenolf Emmel*, 1614, fol., with 27 beautiful plates, numbered (sigs.: (\*), A-X in 4°—Fr.; (\*):6, A-Y8 in 4°—Ger.). Another ed. of the latter, ib., Zutphen (*Alest*), 1621, fol., and Rouen, 1628, fol.—Almirante. Polish trans., 1643, fol., also with de Bry's plates.  
This is a very famous work, holding a prominent place in the history of artillery. Norton's "Gunner" [No. 114] is little better than a paraphrase of it. A trans. of a portion of it is introduced as a Second Part into Eldred's "Gunners Glasse", London, Printed by T. Forcet for Robert Boydell, 1646, 4° (pp. 109-176).  
*Copies.* B.M. (Fr. and Ger. trans. of 1614).
685. Hanaw. 1617. Jacobi von Wallhausen, Johann.  
Archiley Kriegskunst. Darinnen gelehret und fürge-

tragen werden die initia und fundamenta dieser Kriegskunst.  
*Edlen.*

Folio. (∴), A-K in 4<sup>s</sup>. 11 folding plates (by de Bry).  
*Copies.* B.M.

686. Franckfurt am Mayn. 1619. Bry, Johann Théodore de.  
Kunstbüchlein von Geschütz unnd Feuerwerck, auch von  
gründlicher Zubereitung allerley Gezeug und rechtem Brauch  
der Feuerwerck *etc.* *Paul Jacobi.*

Folio. )(, A-D6 in 4<sup>s</sup>. 2 plates.

De Bry, the engraver, was the translator and editor of several military  
works, which he has embellished with many beautiful plates of his own. He  
began the collection known as the "Grands Voyages", published at various  
dates from 1590 to 1634.

*Copies.* B.M.

687. Tubingæ. 1620. Besoldus, Christopher.  
ΠΕΝΤΑΣ Dissertationum Philologicarum. . . . II. De In-  
ventione Bombardarum *etc.* *Eberhard Wildius.*

Quarto. A-D in 4<sup>s</sup>. Half-title and separate sigs. to each pt.

Another ed.: Tubingæ, 1622, 4<sup>o</sup>.

*Copies.* B.M. (1620); Bod. (1622).

688. Venetia. 1621. Sardi, Pietro.  
L'Artiglieria . . . divisa in tre libri. Nel Primo dei quali,  
si discorre sopra le Macchine Antiche, et Armi da offendere  
il Nemico da lontano, che usauono gli Antichi. Nel secondo,  
si tratta, che cosa sia l'Artiglieria . . . con tutto, che necessa-  
rissima sia a quegli, che professione uogliono fare di Archi-  
tetto Militare e di Bombardiero . . . Nel Terzo Libro si  
tratta . . . dell' Vso di tale Artiglieria *etc.* *Giovanni Guerrigli.*

Folio. † (6 ff.), A-S in 4<sup>s</sup>. 8 separate plates.

Another ed.: Bologna, 1689, fol.—Ayala, p. 154.

For a trans. of Bk. III., chaps. 49 to 54, on saltpetra and gunpowder,  
see "Legends no Histories", by Henry Stubbe, London, 1670, 4<sup>o</sup>, pp. 97-  
109.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.



689. Amsterdam. 1625. Schmidlap, Joh. Artillery.  
De tormentis bellicis.

Quarto.

Entered among the printed books in the "Cat. Lib. Manuscriptorum"  
(Oxoniz, 1697, fol., p. 311).

690. Franckfurt. 1625.  
Kriegsmunition und Artillerey-Buch.

Folio.

Copies. W.O.

691. Madrid. 1626. Firrufino, Julio Cesare.  
Platica manval y breve compendio de artilleria. *La Viuda  
de Alonso Martin.*

Quarto. ¶, A-V in 4<sup>s</sup>, besides engraved tp.

According to Almirante, this is merely to be read as an introduction to  
the two later works, the "Teórica y Práctica", Madrid, 1648, fol., and the  
"Perfecto Artillero", Madrid, 1648, fol.

Copies. B.M.

692. Ulm. 1627. Furtenbach, Joseph.  
Halintro—Pyrobolia. Beschreibūg einer newen Büchsen-  
meisterey etc. *Jonas Sauer.*

Folio. ✕ (6 ff.), ✕ ✕ (5 ff.), A-N6 in 4<sup>s</sup>. Frontispiece and 44 copper-  
plates.

Revised and enlarged ed., entitled "Buchsenmeisterey-Schul", Augspurg,  
*Johann Schult*, 1643, fol., with same plates, but new frontispiece and por-  
trait after tp. Schult also printed in 1663 the "Mannhafter Kunst-Spiegel"  
of Furtenbach, which includes further researches on the subject of Artillery,  
Pyrotechnics, and Fortification. See also No. 824.

Copies. B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.

693. Venetia. 1628. Zonta, Camillo.  
Il capitano d'artiglieria.

—Ayala, p. 158. Ayala had not seen this ed., which is mentioned in  
Zonta's "Trattato della militar geometrica professione", Venetia, 1644; but  
he had seen that of Venetia, *Giuliani*, 1640, 8<sup>o</sup>.

Artillery. 694. Venetia. 1629. Rossetti, Orlando.

Corona de' bombardieri, ovvero esame diligentissimo, nel quale si scuopre ogni dubitatione desiderabile per esercitar un bombardiero, et ridurlo atto ad ogni fattione di guerra.

*Antonio Pinelli.*

Quarto.

—Ayala: "A very rare little book."

695. Franckfurt am Mayn. 1630. Faulhaber, Johann.

Ingenieurs-Schul / Erster Theyl: Darinnen durch den Canonen Logarithmicvm alle Planische Triangel zur fortification oder Architectura Militari, Optica, Geodæsia, Geometria, &c. . . . zu solviren *etc.* [Appendix oder Anhang. dess Ersten Theils *etc.*] *Johañ Nicolai Stolzenberger und Eberhardt Riefer.*

Octavo. A-L in 8<sup>s</sup>; and a (6 ff.); L6-8, blank.

With engraved frontispiece. Another ed., Nürnberg, *Wolfgang Endter*, 1637, 4<sup>o</sup>. In both eds. the Appendix has separate tp. No other part published (B. M. Cat.).

*Copies.* B.M.

696. Venetia. 1631. Sciaban, Luigi, Baron de.

Il Bombardiero veneto essaminato dal suo Generale; dialogo fatto Francese, & tradotto in Italiano *etc.* *Gio: Pietro Pinelli.*

Quarto. A-F in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Reprinted in the collection entitled "Fucina di Marte", Venezia, 1641, 4<sup>o</sup>.

—Ayala, p. 154.

Sciaban appears to have been a French gunner employed by the State of Venice. This catechism, which was written in French, and then translated and printed in Italian, was intended to be used in the examination of competitors for certain vacant posts in the Venetian artillery.

*Copies.* B.M.; Roy. Art. Inst.

697. Leida. 1638. Galilei, Galileo.

Discorsi e dimostrazioni mathematiche intorno à due nuoue scienze attenenti alla mecanica et i movimenti locali *etc.*

*Elzevir.*

Quarto. A-Z, AA-RR in 4°.

Fr. trans.: Paris, *Pierre Rocolet*, 1639, 8°. Eng. trans., in Thos. Salusbury's "Mathematical Collections", London, 1675, fol.; and another, "Done into English from the Italian, By Tho. Weston, late Master, and now published by John Weston, present Master, of the Academy at Greenwich. London: Printed for J. Hooke, at the Flower-de-Luce, over-against St. Dunstan's Church in Fleet-street. M.D.CCXXX." 4°. The work is in dialogue form.

698. Venezia. 1639. Sardi, Pietro.

Il capo de' bombardieri esaminato et approvato dal generale dell' artiglieria etc.

Quarto.—Ayala.

Another ed.: ib., 1641, ib. Ayala thinks that there is an error in the date, 1639, the Ded. bearing that of 1640. On the authority of Mandosio ("Biblioteca Romana", Romæ, 1682-92, 4°), he mentions another work of Sardi entitled "Discorso delle macchine belliche antiche e moderne."

699. Venetia. 1641. Gentilini, Eugenio.

Pratica di artiglieria, ovvero real istruttione di artiglieri.  
*Per li Turrini.*

Quarto.—Ayala.

This may be another ed. of No. 683.

700. Venezia. 1641.

La fucina di Marte o disciplina universale dell' arte militare.  
*Presso i Giunti.*

Quarto.—Ayala.

A collection of military works, containing reprints of Nos. 606, 609, 626, 631, 656, and 696.

701. Barcelona. 1642. Barra, Francesco.

Brev tractat de Artilleria recopilat de diversos autors.  
*Iaume Matheua.*

Quarto. \*, A-R2 in 4°. R2, blank, has set-off from R1.

Copies. B.M.

## CASTRAMETATION.

702. Lyon. 1557. Du Choul, Guillaume.  
Discovrs svr la Castrametation et discipline militaire des  
romains etc. *Guillaume Rouillé*.  
Folio. 2 pts. A-O, A-F5 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
Priv. dated 1553. Eds.: ib., ib., 1567 and 1581, 4<sup>os</sup>. Transs.: Sp.—ib.,  
ib., 1579, 4<sup>o</sup>; Ital.—ib., [ib. ?] 1556, fol.; ib., ib., 1559, fol., Large Paper;  
Padua, *I. Olmo*, 1558, 12<sup>o</sup>; and Vinegia, *A. Salicato*, 1582, 8<sup>o</sup>. Another  
ed. of Fr., Wesel, 1672, 4<sup>o</sup>. Dutch and Lat. transs., Amsterdam, 1684 and  
1685, 4<sup>os</sup>. The first Italian trans., in a Ded. dated 1555, mentions an ed. of  
orig. The ills. throughout are repetitions of Rouilly's.  
*Copies*. B.M. (all but trans. of 1556); Bod. (1581, 1556, 1579, 1685).
703. Rotterdam. 1617. Stevin, Symon.  
Castrametatio, Dat is Legermeting . . . Na d'oordening  
en 'tghebruyc. *Jan van Waesberghe*.  
Folio. \* (2 ff.), A-G in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
Fr. trans.: ib., ib., 1618, fol. and Leyden, *M. & B. Elzevier*, 1618, fol.,  
the second ed. from this press. Stevin's treatise on Decimals was published  
in English by Robert Norton, the Gunner, London, 1608, 4<sup>o</sup>.  
*Copies*. B.M. (all); Roy. Art. Inst. (1618).
704. La Haye. 1632. Solemne, David de.  
La Charge du mareschal des logis tant général que par-  
ticulier, soit de toute une armee de cavallerie et infanterie en  
général que d'une brigade et régiment de pied et à cheval.  
*H. Hondius*.  
Large Folio. Folding plates engraved by Hondius.—Brunet.  
An ed. of Amsterdam, *J. Fansson*, 1653, fol. (\*3, A-H6 in 4<sup>s</sup>), also with  
9 fine folding plates and 2 separate diagrams (B.M.).

## CAVALRY AND EQUITATION.

705. [1485 ?] Rusius, Laurentius.

*Begin.* Incipit Tabula omnium capituloꝝ libri presentis de natura. electione. educatione. gubernatōne. ac omnium morborum. equi. cognitione ⁊ curatōne. L. Ruzonis ml'ta experiētia ⁊ solitudine edocti. In sup̄ magna diligentia examinati de libro Alberti magni de animalibus, etc. *End.* Explicit liber Marescalcie Equorum.

Quarto. 103 ff. Without tp., imprint, or sigs. Nums. to ff. I-XCIX.

Other eds.: Parisiis, *C. Wechel*, 1531, fol.; ib., ib., 1532, fol. Span. trans.: Toledo, *Miguel Ferrer Año* 1564, fol. It. trans.: Venetia, 1544, 8° (Ayala); ib., *M. Tramezzino*, 1548, 8°; ib., *G. Cauiscalouo*, 1559, 8°; reprinted, Bologna, 1863, 8°. Fr. trans.: Paris, *Charles Perier*, 1559, 4° (some copies reissued with new tp., dated 1560); ib., ib., 1563, 4°; ib., *G. Auray*, 1583, 4°; ib., *A. Perier*, 1610, 4°.

*Copies.* B.M. (all but ed. of 1544).

706. Venetia. [1492.] Ruffo, Giordano.

*Begin.* [Fol. a2 recto]: Qui comēza el plogo nel arte de cognoscere la natura de cauael ⁊ quelli reger ⁊ gouernar ⁊ le lor ifirmitade cognoicere ⁊ liberare laqual vulgar mente se chiama arte de maraschalchi cōposita per nuser [*sic*] zordā russo de calabria dignissimo cavaliere etc. *Piero Bergamasco.*

Quarto. a-h3 in 4°. 31 ff. without tp., pag., or catchwords. a1 recto is occupied by a woodcut.

Other eds.: Venetia, *Per gli Heredi di G. Padouano*, 1554, 8°; Bressa, *T. Ferante*, 1611, 4°. Another It. trans.: Venetia, *R. Borgominiero*, 1561, 8°, and Bologna, *G. de Rossi*, 1561, 4°.

On fol. h2 recto of the ed. of 1492 we are informed that the work was written in Latin, and translated into Italian by Gabriel Bruno. In all the Italian translations it is ascribed to Giordano Russo, Rusto, or Ruffo. This

Cavalry  
and  
Equitation.

treatise, also, was derived from Albertus Magnus ; it bears a strong resemblance to that of Rusius.

*Copies.* B.M.

707. Napoli. 1550. Grisone, Federigo.  
Gli ordini di cavalcare. *Giouan Paolo Sukanappo.*

Quarto. 2 ff., A-Z, AA-HH, AAA-HHH2 in 4°. 25 woodcuts of bits.

Other eds.: Pesaro, *B. Cesano*, 1556, 1557, and 1558, 4<sup>oa</sup>; Vinegia, *A. Salicato*, 1582, 8°; ib., *A. Muschio*, 1590, 4°. Fr. trans.: Paris, *G. Auuray*, 1579, 4°. Span. trans.: Baeça, *J. B. de Montoya*, 1568, 4°. Same woodcuts in all Ger. trans., by Fayser von Arnstein, Augspurg, *M. Manger* for *G. Willer*, 1570 and 1573, and Frankfurt, *G. Tampach*, 1623, fols., with ills., which in the 2nd ed. are coloured. [Arnstein published at Augsburg (*Manger* for *Willer*, 1576, fol.) the "Hippiatria", a veterinary work.] Ayala gives eds. of orig., Venice, 1551, 1553, 1571, 1584, 1620; and Fr. trans., Paris, *Perier*, 1615, 4°.

*Copies.* B.M.

708. Venetia. 1566. Sansovino, Francesco.  
Origine de cavalieri . . . Nella quale si tratta l'inuentione,  
l'ordine, & la dichiarazione della Caualeria di Collana, di  
Croce, & di Sprone etc. *Camillo & Rutilio Borgominieri.*

Ottavo. \*, A-T in 8°.

Other eds.: Venetia, *Gli Heredi di M. Sessa*, 1570, 8°; Vinegia, *A. Salicato*, 1583, 8°.

*Copies.* B.M. (1566, 1570, 1583); Bod. (1566, 1570).

709. Venetia. 1573. Corte, Claudio.  
Il Cavallerizzo . . . nel qual si tratta della natura de'  
Caualli, delle Razze, del modo di gouernarli, domarli, &  
frenarli. Et di tutto quello, che à Caualli, & à buon Cauallerizzo s' appartiene; Di nuouo . . . corretto & emendato & aggiuntoui di molte cose necessarie etc. *Appresso Giordano Ziletti.*

Quarto. a-d in 4°, A-T4 in 8°; H has 4 ff.

The B.M. copy was once Thomas Digges', and bears his autograph. Another ed.: Lyone, *P. Roussin* for *A. Marsilij*, 1573, 4°. Ayala gives an ed. of Venetia, 1572, *presso Ziletti*; is there a misprint, or is it the 1st ed.?

*Copies.* B.M. (1573, 1573); Bod. (1573, 1573).

710. [1575.] Bruyn, Abraham de.

Diversarvm gentivm armatvra equestris. Ubi fere Europæ  
Asiæ atq̃ Africae equitandi ratio propria expressa est.

Cavalry  
and  
Equitation.

Quarto.

No text. Frontispiece and 2 emblematic plates, followed by 77 others, many of them showing the apparel, arms, and trappings of cavalry in various countries.

Copies. B.M.

711. Sevilla. 1580. Suarez de Peralta.

Tractado de la Caballería de la gineta y brida. *Fernando Diaz.*

Quarto.

—Almirante and Brunet. According to the latter, rare.

712. [Zurich ?] 1588. Loehneyss, Georg Engelhard.

Von zeumen Grundtlicher bericht des zeumens und ordentliche Aussteilung der Mündtstück und Stangen wie dieselbenn nach eines jeden Pferdts arth und eigenschafft sollenn gebraucht werden.

Folio. A-000 in 2<sup>s</sup> (H and L in 3<sup>s</sup>), with numerous full-page woodcuts of bits, etc.

Another ed.: in Part II. of the "Cavalleria." See No. 721.

Copies. B.M.

713. Venetia. 1589. Caracciolo, Pasquale.

La gloria del cavallo . . . Ne' quali si descriuono gli ordini appartenenti alla Caualleria, & a far un eccellente Cauallero, insieme con tutti i particolari, che son necessari nell' alleuare, custodire, maneggiare, e curar Caualli si in pace e viaggio, come in Guerra, & alla Campagna; accommodandoui essempli tratti dall' Historie Antiche, & Moderne etc. *Niccolò Moretti.*

Octavo. ✕, a-c, A-RRR<sub>4</sub> in 8<sup>s</sup>.

In 10 books. 1st ed.: Vinegia, 1566, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Ayala. 3rd ed.: Venetia, B. Giunti, G. B. Ciotti & Compagni, 1608, 4<sup>o</sup>, "aggiuntevi le postille e tre libri di Giovanni Antonio Cito Napolitano."

Copies. B.M. (1589, 1608); Bod. (1566).

714. Malaga. 1600. Aguilar, Pedro de.  
Tratado dela cavalleria dela Gineta . . . añadido enesta im-  
pression muchas adiciones del mesmo Auctor. . . . Contiene  
diuersos auisos y documentos, y otras muchas reglas vtiles y ne-  
cessarias, assi para lo que toca a la dotrina y enfrenamiento  
de los cauallos, como para la perfeccion y destreza que enesta  
facultad conuiene que tengan, en cosas de paz y de guerra los  
cavalleros. *Iuã Rene a costa de los herederos del Autor.*  
Quarto. ¶ 8, ¶¶, A-Z, AA-CC2 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.
715. Vinetia. 1600. Massario Malatesta, Alessandro.  
Compendio dell' heroica arte di cavalleria . . . Precetti  
qvattro. *A istanza de Francesco Bolzetta, Libraro in Padoua.*  
Quarto. †, B-N in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
Eds.: Danischa, *A. Hünefeldt*, 1610, fol., "Corretto dal modesmo autore  
ed aggiuntoui il quinto precetto del modo di ordinar vn squadron di Cavalleria  
*etc.*"; and Venetia, 1660.—Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1600, 1610); Bod. (1600).
716. Madrid. 1600. Vargas Machuca, Bernardo de.  
Libro de exercicios de la gineta. *Pedro Madrigal.*  
Oçtavo. ¶, ¶¶, A-P in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
Another ed.: ib., *D. Flamenco*, 1619, 8<sup>o</sup>, entitled, "Teorica y exercicios  
de la gineta."  
*Copies.* B.M.
717. Nápoles. 1602. Silvestre, Diego.  
Discurso sobre la carrera de la lanza armado y desarmado.  
Quarto.  
—Almirante.
718. Valladolid. 1606. Villalobos, Simon de.  
Modo de pelear á la gineta. *Andrés de Merchon.*  
Oçtavo.  
—Almirante.



719. Venetiis. 1607. Massario Malatesta, Alessandro. Cavalry  
 Tractatus de modo eqvos fraenandi . . . Cvm diversorum and  
 fraenorum variis figuris quibus ad præsens omnes bellicosi Equitation.  
 populi vtuntur *etc.*  
 Folio. 92 plates of bits. 18 pp. of letterpress.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.
720. Pisa. 1609. Righi, Giuseppe.  
 Breve dichiarazione dell' istrumento ritrovato per resistere  
 alla cavalleria.  
 —Ayala.
721. Remling. 1609-10. Loehneyss, Georg Engelhard von.  
 Della Caualleria. Grundtlicher Bericht von allem was zu  
 der Reutterei gehörig und einem Cauallier davon zu wissen  
 geburt.  
 Folio. In two vols., each with separate tp., etc. Vol. I. 3 ff., A-III,  
 ( ), ( † ), ( † ), in 2<sup>s</sup>. Vol. II. 2 ff., A-4th Q, in 2<sup>s</sup>, then 9 ff.; M, and 4th Y  
 have 4 ff., Y has 3 ff., 5th P has 1 f. Vol. II. has 28 separate plates; both have  
 numerous full-page cuts. The B. M. copy of Vol. II. is imperfect, wanting  
 all between 3rd K and 4th V, and between 5th G and 5th K.  
 Rare. Includes a recast of No. 712. Another ed., *ib.*, 1624.—Brunet.  
 Reprinted with collected works, Nürnberg, 1729, fol.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1609-10, 1729).
722. Napoli. 1610. Sereno, Bartolomeo.  
 Trattati . . . dell' vso della lancia à Cauallo. Del com-  
 battere a piede Alla Sbarra. Et dell' imprese, et inventioni  
 Caualieresche. *Gio: Battista Gargano & Lucretio Nucci.*  
 Quarto. A-CC in 4<sup>s</sup>. CC<sub>41</sub>, blank, has set-off from CC<sub>3</sub>.  
 Edited by Cesare Alberini, the author having entered a Benedictine  
 monastery.  
*Copies.* B.M.
723. Anversa. 1611. Melzo, Ludovico.  
 Regole Militari sopra il governo e servitio particolare della  
 cavalleria. *Gioachimo Trognæsis.*

Folio. \*, A-T4 in 6°. 16 folding plates.

Reprinted, Venice 1626, and 1641.—Ayala. Span. trans., by Gali, Milan, *I. B. Bidelo*, 1619, fol., with same plates. Trans. in Ger. and Fr. (double columns), Franckfurt, *C. Rödte* for *P. Mareschal*, 1625, fol., without plates. Almirante mentions eds. of a Fr. trans. by Paul Varroi, Antwerp, 1615, and a Ger. trans., Frankfort, 1643. For Eng. trans., see No. 122.

Copies. B.M. (1611, 1619, 1625); Bod. (1611).

724. Venetia. 1612. Basta, Giorgio.

Il governo della cavalleria leggiera . . . vtile a soldati, giovevole à' Guerrieri, et Fruttuoso à' Capitani, et Curioso à Tutti. *Bernardo Gionti, Gio. Batt. Ciotti & Compagni.*

Quarto. a, b, A-Q in 4°.

A posthumous work, edited by Pietro Armiato. Eds.: Francoforte, 1612; Oppenheim, *G. Galler*, 1616; Brusselle, 1624; Milano, *B. Bidelli*, 1625.—Ayala. Fr. trans. by de Bry: Hanaw, 1614, fol.; Rouen, *Berthelin*, 1616, and 1627, fols., all with his plates (12 folding). Span. trans.: Bruselas, *I. de Meerbeeck*, 1624, 4°. Eng. trans., No. 123.

Copies. B.M. (1612 and 4 trans.); Bod. (trans. of 1624).

725. Venetia. 1617. Pelliciani, Bartolommeo.

Universale Istruttione per servizio della cavalleria in tutte l'occorrenze di guerra etc. *Antonio Pinelli.*

—Ayala.

726. Loano. 1619. Gaiani, Gio. Battista.

Arte di maneggiar la spada a piedi, et a cavallo. *Francesco Castello.*

Quarto. ❧, ❧❧2, A-P6 in 4°.

Copies. B.M.

727. Lyon. 1620. La Noue, Pierre de.

La cavalerie Françoisse et Italienne ou L'art de bien dresser les cheuaux, selon les preceptes des bonnes écoles des deux Nations; . . . Naüement représentée in quatre Tableaux . . . Premier Tableaux. *Claude Morillon.*

Folio. Frontispiece. ¶2, A-V in 4°. Engravings.

Frontispiece is dated 1621. There is an ed. of the "Second Tableau," Geneve, *I. Chouët*, 1643, fol., also in B.M. The remaining parts are not

mentioned by bibliographers; like the second part, they were to have been  
veterinary treatises. Cavalry  
and  
Equitation.

Copies. B.M.

728. Madrid. 1621. Vargas Machuca, Bernardo de.  
Compendio y doctrina nueva de la gineta. *Fernando Correa de Montenegro.*

Octavo. A<sub>4</sub>, A-D<sub>2</sub> in 8°.

Copies. B.M.

729. Milano. 1622. Birago, Francesco.

Discorsi cavallereschi . . . Ne' quali con rifiutare la dottrina Cauallerescha del Sig Gioumbatista Olevano. S'insegna ad honorevolmente racchettare le Querele nate per cagion d'honore. *Gio: Battista Bidelli.*

Octavo. a, b<sub>4</sub>, A-N in 8°.

Reprinted in ed. of collected works, Bologna, 1686, 4°.

Copies. B.M.

730. Paris. 1624. Pluvinel, Antoine.

Manege Royal ov lon pevt remarqver le defavt et la perfection dv chevalier en tovs les exercices de cet art, dignes des Princes, fait & pratiqué en l'instruction du Roy par A. A. . . . le tout gravé & représenté en grandes figures de tailles douces par Crispian de Pas etc. *Se vendant Chez Guillaume Le Noir.*

Oblong Folio. 23 ff. of letterpress. Frontispiece and 6 + 63 numbered plates, many in duplicate.

This is the 2nd ed. The author had died while the engraving was in progress, and the work was published at the expense of de Pas.

Orig. ed.: Paris, *C. Cramoisy*, 1623, fol. Others: ib., 1625, and ib., 1629, fols. (both from Brunet). Also: Paris, 1627, fol.; Paris, *Toussaint Quinet*, 1640, 8° (without the plates); Paris, *E. Loyson*, 1660, 8°; Amsterdam, *J. Schipper*, 1666, fol. Trans. into Ger., with Fr. text, Franckfurt-am-Mayn, 1628, fol., and 1629, fol. (Brunet); and Franckfurt-am-Mayn, *M. Merian*, 1640, fol. All the eds. of the orig., except the first and that of 1660, have the title, "L'Instruction du Roy"; the ed. of 1660, "L'Exercice de monter à cheval."

Copies. B.M. (1624, 1627, 1640, 8°, 1640, fol., 1660, 1666).

731. Anversa. 1625. Della Croce, Flaminio.  
L'essercitio della cavalleria et d'altre materie . . . Diviso  
in cinque libri. *Henrico Aertssio*.  
Folio. a-c, A-BBBB in 4°. 15 copper-plates.  
Reissued, Anversa, ib., 1629, fol., with a new title-page, and the  
"Proemio" reprinted. Another ed., Anversa, 1628, fol. (Bod.).  
*Copies.* B.M.; Bod. (1628).
732. Lisboa. 1629. Bracelos, Duque de.  
Tratado de Gineta.  
—Almirante.
733. Antverpiæ. 1630. Hugo, Hermanus.  
De Militia Equestri antiqva et nova ad regem Phillipvm  
IV. Libri qvinque. *Ex Officina Plantiniana B. Moreti*.  
Folio. \*, A-Z, AA-VV in 4°. Tp. engraved. Ills.  
Reprinted, ib., ib., 1642, with similar title.—Almirante. From this work  
most of the writers on the subject immediately succeeding have borrowed.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.; W.O.; R.U.S.I.
734. Antuerpiæ. 1630. Texeira, Albornas Juan.  
De Militia equestri antiqua et nova.  
Folio.  
—Almirante.
735. Franckfurt am Mayn. 1634. Jacobi von Wallhausen,  
Johann.  
Kriegs-Kunst zu Pferd, darinnen gelehret werden die Fun-  
dament der Cavallery/ in vier Theilen: Als im Lantzierer/  
Rûhriffierer/ Carabiner/ vnd Tragoner etc. *W. Hofmann* for  
*W. Fitzer*.  
Folio. )(, A-I6 in 4°. 43 separate plates (by de Bry?).  
Fr. trans. by de Bry, ib., *P. Jacques*, 1616, fol., with same plates; re-  
printed Zutphen, 1621, fol., of which there are copies with imprint, Am-  
sterdam, 1635.—Graesse. Reprinted with collected works, 1625.—Almirante.  
"L'Art de Chevalerie", a trans. by L. Jennis from the German of Wallhausen,  
is a political treatise, concluding with 40 pp. on equitation, with plates  
(Francfort, *P. Jaques*, 1616, 4°).  
*Copies.* B.M. (1634 and trans. of 1616, fol.).

736. Udine. 1636. Aquino, Gio. Paolo d'. Cavalry  
Disciplina del cavallo con l'vso del Piliere, Dialoghi *etc.* and  
*Niccolò Schiretti.* Equitation.

Quarto. a 6, A-Z, AA-CC in 4<sup>o</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.

737. Madrid. 1642. Micheli, Marquez José.  
Tesoro militar de Caballeria antiguo y moderno, modo de  
armar caballeros y profesar, segun las cêremonias de cualquier  
orden militar; regla debajo la cual militan; origen que  
tubieron y á que fin *etc.* *Diego Diaz de la Carrera.*

Folio.  
Title from Almirante.  
*Copies.* Bod.

## EXERCISES FOR MUSKET AND PIKE.

738. The Hage. 1607. Gheyn, Jacob de:  
The Exercise of Armes.  
Folio.  
Being brought out first in English, this is treated as an English work.  
[See No. 79.]
739. Franckfurt am Mayn. 1615. Jacobi von Wallhausen,  
Johann.  
Alphabetum pro tyrone pedestri, Oder der Soldaten zu  
Fuess ihr A. B. C. *G. Kempfer* for *T. de Bry*.  
Quarto. A-E in 4<sup>s</sup>. 4 folding plates.  
*Copies.* B.M.
740. Hanaw. [1617.] Jacobi von Wallhausen, Johann.  
Künstliche Picquen-Handlung. Darinnen schriftlich und  
mit Figuren dieses Adeliches Exercitium angewiesen und  
gelehret wirdt *etc.*  
Folio. \*, A and B in 4<sup>s</sup>, and 10 folding plates.  
The plates illustrate 203 positions taken in using the Pike.  
*Copies.* B.M.
741. Neurnberg. [1620.] Isselbourg, Pierre.  
Künstliche Waffenhandlung der Musqueten uñ Piquen . . .  
Maniement des Mosquets & Piques, en conformité de l'ordre  
de . . . Maurice d'Orange. *In verlegung P. Iselburgen.*

Oblong Quarto. )‡(, A-L2, containing 36 copper-plates.  
German and French in double columns.  
*Copies.* B.M.

Exercises  
for  
Musketry  
and Pike.

742. Siena. 1621. Pistofilo, Bonaventura.

Oplomachia Nella quale con dottrina morale, politica, e militare, e col mezzo delle figure si tratta per via di teorica, e di pratica del maneggio, e dell' vso delle Armi. Distinta in tre discorsi di Picca, d'Alabarda, e di Moschetto. *Hercole Gori.*

Oblong Quarto. †, A-Z, AA-RR in 4<sup>s</sup>, including many engravings.  
Ded. to Sir Kenelm Digby, with his portrait.  
*Copies.* B.M.

743. Padova. 1641-38. Alfieri, Francesco Fernando.

La picca, e la bandiera . . . Nella quale si monstra per via di Figure vna facile, e nuoua Pratica, et il maneggio, e l'vso di essa, con la difesa della Spada. *Sebastiano Sardi.*

Oblong Quarto. Two pts. \*, A-E, \*6, A-H in 4<sup>s</sup>, including plates.  
Pt. II., "La Bandiera", has a separate title-page, dated 1638. Not mentioned by Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M.

## FENCING.

744. Venetia. 1517. Marozzo, Achille.  
Opera nova de Achille Marozzo, bolognese, mastro generale  
de larte de larmi. *Appresso gli eredi di Marchio Sessa.*

—Gelli. This is the 1st ed., discovered by Tribolati in the Library of Pisa. Ayala, too, mentions it. "Tribolati's discovery," says Gelli ("Bib. della Scherma", p. 131), "gives to Marozzi the post of honour in the history of fencing in Europe, his being the most ancient work known on the subject."

The 2nd ed., in B.M., is as follows:

Mutinæ. 1536.

Opera nova [chiamata duello . . . che tratta de casi occoreti  
ne l'arte militare etc.] *In aedibus D. Antonio Bergolæ Sacerdotis.*

Quarto. 7 ff., then A-T in 4°, including woodcuts.

Other eds.: [Modena, 1540?] 4°; Venetia, G. *Padouano*, 1550, 4°; Venetia, A. *Pinargenti*, 1568, 4°, entitled "Arte dell' Armi", with colophon dated 1569, and plates by Fontana, all preceding eds. having same woodcuts.

*Copies.* B.M. (all but 1st ed.); Bod. (1536); R.U.S.I. (1568).

745. Roma. 1553. Agrippa, Camillo.

Trattato di scientia d'Arme, con un Dialogo di Filosofia.  
*Antonio Blado.*

Quarto. 70 pp., including 57 copper-plates.

Other eds.: Venetia, A. *Pinargenti*, 1568, 4°, and ib., R. *Meglietti*, 1604, 4°, with 51 and 52 copper-plates respectively, reproduced by Fontana from those of the 1st ed. The two large plates in the 1st ed. have been ascribed to Michelangelo, to da Vinci, and to Stradano (Gelli). Ayala, on the authority of Giacomini, says that Agrippa also wrote some dialogues entitled: "De muniendis arcibus et inexpugnabilibus adversus quorumcumque hostium impetum reddendis."

*Copies.* B.M. (1553, 1588, 1604); Bod. (1553, 1604); Roy. Art. Inst. (1553).



746. Venetia. 1570. Grassi, Giacomo di. Fencing.  
 Ragione di adoprar sicuramente l'Arme si da offesa come da difesa *etc.* *Giordano Ziletti & compagni.*  
 Quarto. \*, A-T in 4<sup>s</sup>, including portrait and woodcuts.  
 Very rare. Ayala had seen a copy in the King's Lib., Turin, without the title-page. Eng. trans., No. 61.  
*Copies.* B.M.
747. Venetia. 1572. Agocchie, Giovanni.  
 Dell' arte di scrimia libri tre. Ne' quali breuemente si tratta Dell' arte dello Schermire, Della Giostra, Dell' ordinar Battaglie *etc.* *Giulio Tamburino.*  
 Quarto. A-V3 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.
748. Rome. 1575. Agrippa, Camillo.  
 Modo da comporre il moto nella sfera . . . conforme al Dialogo del trattato della scienza dell' arme. *Apud Heredes A. Bladii.*  
 Quarto. 4 ff. No tp.  
 For the "Dialogo" see No. 745.  
*Copies.* B.M.
749. Vinetia. 1575. Vizani, Angelo.  
 Lo Schermo . . . nel quale per uia di Dialogo fi discorre intorno all' eccellenza dell' armi, et delle lettere : intorno all' offesa & alla difesa : & s'insegna uno schermo di spada sola da filo *etc.* *Giorgio Angelieri.*  
 Quarto. \*, \*\*, \*\*\*, A-X3 in 4<sup>s</sup>, including author's portrait, and copper-plates.  
 Sent out again, Bologna, G. Rossi, 1588, 4<sup>o</sup>, with new tp. and an introduction by Cavalcabo in place of portrait and author's Deds. An ed. of Venetia, 1578, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1575, 1588).
750. San Lucar de Barrameda. 1582. Carranza, Jeronimo de.  
 Libro . . . que trata dela Philosophia delas armas y de sv

Fencing.

destreza y de la aggressiō y defension christiana. *En casa del mesmo Autor.*

Quarto. Woodcut frontispiece and tp., then A 2, B 2, C 8, ¶ 8, A 12, and B-MM, ¶, ¶¶6 in 8<sup>s</sup>.

Reprinted, Madrid, 1600.—Almirante. Gelli mentions the first ed., ("very rare and much prized"), *Luciferi Fano*, 1569.

*Copies.* B.M.

751. Augspurg. 1600. Meyer, Joachim.

Gründtliche Beschreibung der . . . Kunst des Fechtens, in allerly Gebreuchlichen . . . Wehren. *M. Manger in verlegung E. Willers.*

Oblong Quarto. a, b, A-Q, A-Z, A-D, A-M in 4<sup>s</sup>, including woodcuts.

*Copies.* B.M.

752. Madrid. 1600. Pacheco de Naruaez.

Libro de las grandezas de la espada, en que se declaran mvchos secretos del que compuso el Comendador Geronimo de Carrança etc. *Los herederos de Iuan Iñiguez de Lequerica.*

Quarto. †, ††, †††, A-Z, AA-SS in 8<sup>s</sup>.

Very rare.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

753. Florence. 1601. Docciolini, Marco.

Trattato in Materia di Scherma.

Quarto.

*Copies.* R.U.S.I.

754. Copenhagen. 1606. Fabris, Salvator.

Sienza [*sic*] e pratica d'arme, . . . divisa in dui Libri etc. *Henrico Waltkirch.*

Folio. Frontispiece. A-Y7 in 6<sup>s</sup>, including engraved tp., portrait of Christian IV. of Denmark, and 190 copperplates.

Another ed.: Padova, *Terzi*, 1624, fol.—Ayala. Ger. trans.: Leiden, *I. Elzevir*, 1619, fol., with 190 woodcuts; another, with Ital. text and same copperplates, Leipzig, 1713, fol. Ayala mentions a Ger. trans. of Norimberg, without date or size.

*Copies.* B.M. (1606, 1619, 1713).

755. Venetia. 1606. Giganti, Nicoletto.  
 Scola, ovvero teatro, Nelquale sono rappresentate diuerse maniere, e modi di parare, e di ferire di Spada sola, e di Spada, e Pugnale *etc.* Gio: Ant: & Giacomo de Franceschi.  
 Oblong Quarto. a, b, A-M in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
 Another ed.: Venezia, 1608.—Ayala. Fr. and Ger. trans., by J. de Zetter, Francofurti, *Apud J. de Zetter*, 1619, obl. 4<sup>o</sup>, in double columns with same plates.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1616, 1619).
756. Madrid. 1608. Pacheco de Narvaez.  
 Cien conclusiones o formas de saber de la verdadera destreza, fundada en ciencia, y diez y ocho contradicciones a las de la comun. *Lodovico Sanchez.*  
 —Gelli.
757. Siena. 1610. Capoferro, Ridolfo.  
 Gran simvlacro dell' arte e dell' vso della scherma. *Salvestro Marchetti e Camillo Turi.*  
 Oblong Quarto. 68 ff., including plates.  
 Rare. The Pref. is dated 1610. The date 1601, given by Ayala, is probably a misprint.  
*Copies.* B.M.
758. Madrid. 1612. Pacheco de Narvaez.  
 Compendio de la filosofia y destreza de las armas, de Geronimo de Carrança. *L. Sanchez.*  
 —Gelli. "Rare. . . . This work . . . resembles the preceding [No. 756], of which it is a complement."
759. Leipzig. 1612. Cavalcabò, Hieronymo.  
 Neues kunstliches Fechtbuch . . . aus dem geschriebenen Welschen Exemplær durch . . . de Villamont . . . in Französische Sprach transferirt, nun aber . . . verdeutscht durch C. von Einsidell. *Typis Beerwalden: Jacob Poppereich.*  
 Oblong Quarto. )(, A-H in 4<sup>s</sup>. 6 plates.  
 Colophon bears the date 1611. Ayala does not mention the original.  
*Copies.* B.M.

- Fencing. 760. Madrid. 1618. Pacheco de Narvaez.  
Carta al Duque de Cea, diciendo su parecer acerca del libro de Geronimo Carrança.  
—Gelli.
761. Madrid. 1625. Pacheco de Narvaez.  
Modo facil y nvevo para examinarse los Maestros en la Destreza de las Armas; Y Entender sus cien conclusiones, o formas de saber. *Luis Sanchez.*  
Octavo. 2 ff., then ¶ 4, A-M<sub>4</sub> in 8°.   
“Very curious and rare.”—Gelli. Another ed.: “Adicion a la filosofia de las armas . . . por el mismo autor”, 2 pts., Zaragoza, 1658-60, 8°.   
*Copies.* B.M.
762. Madrid. 1635. Pacheco de Narvaez.  
Engano y desangano de las errores que se en querido introducir en la destreza de las armas.  
—Gelli.
763. Madrid. 1639. Pacheco de Narvaez.  
Advertencias para la ensenanza de la destreza de las armas, asi a pie come a cavallo.  
—Gelli. Nos. 756, 758, 760, and 762 are treated by Gelli as distinct works. He concludes with the following work, remarking that the many annotations made to it by the son of Narvaez render it somewhat dissimilar to the preceding treatises, although it embraces the same theories and the same ideas:  
Madrid. 1672. Nueva ciencia y filosofia de la destreza de las armas, su teorica y pratica. Valuable.
764. Padoua. 1640. Alfieri, Francisco Fer. de.  
La scherma.  
Quarto.  
(Bod. Lib. Cat.) This is probably an early ed. of “L’Arte di ben maneggiare la Spada . . . Nuouamente riveduta e corretta”, Padova, 1653, obl. 4°, in which the author, in a Ded. (dated 1653), speaks of bringing his works again to light.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1653).





*From the "Architectur" of Ryff, 1547.*

## FORTIFICATION.

765. Venetia. 1524. Della Valle, Battista.

Vallo: libro cōtinente appartenentie ad Capitanii, retener  
& fortificare una Citta cō bastioni, con novi artificii de fusco  
aggiōti . . . et de expugnare una Citta *etc.*

Ottavo. \*, A-I in 8<sup>s</sup>, including woodcuts.

Eds.: Napoli, 1521 (the first—discovered by Ayala); Venezia, 1526, 12°; ib., *Ravano e compagni*, 1631, 12°, and ib., *F. di Levò*, 1564, 12°—Ayala; ib., *Ravano*, 1528 and 1539, 8<sup>os</sup>—Promis; ib., *N. d' Aristotile detto Zoppino*, 1529, 8°; ib., *P. de' Ravani*, 1535, 8°; ib., *Gli heredi di P. de' R.*, 1543 and 1550, 8<sup>os</sup>; ib., *G. Guarisco & compagni*, 1558, 8°. The date 1545, in Ayala, is a misprint for 1543. Fr. trans.: Lyon, *I. Moderne*, 1529, 4°—Promis; and ib., ib. [1554], 8° (this copy is unsewn). Same woodcuts in all.

“Il Vallo” (The Defence), where it concerns engineering and artillery, is taken almost entirely from the ancients. Della Valle has no scientific knowledge whatever, and writes from experience only. But the elementary character of his work made it accessible to the rudest soldier, and it ran through eleven editions in thirty-seven years, that is to say, more than any other military book in those times.

*Copies.* B.M. (1524, 1529, 1535, 1543, 1550, 1558, and 1554); Bod. (1535 and 1558).

766. Nürenberg. 1527. Dürer, Albrecht.

Etliche underricht, zu befestigung der Stett, Schloss, und flecken. [*Hieronymo Formschneyder?*]

Folio. A-F2 in 4<sup>s</sup>. 10 folding woodcuts signed continuously with text.

Eds.: Nuremberg, 1530 and 1538, fols.; Arnheim, 1603, fol., and Berlin, 1803, 8°—Brunet; Berlin, 1823, 8°. Lat. trans., entitled: “De urbibus, arcibus castellisue condendis”, Paris, *C. Wechsel*, 1535, fol., with same cuts (A-H6 in 4<sup>s</sup>). Some copies of this sent out with new tp. without imprint, probably intended to follow the “Institutiones Geometricæ” of same author.

Fortifica-  
tion.

Fr. trans.: Paris, 1870, fol. Dürer is the earliest writer on the modern science of fortification.

*Copies.* B.M. (1527, 1535, 1823, 1870); Bod. (1535).

767. Venice. 1554. Zanchi, Giovanni Battista.  
Del modo di Fortificar le citta. *Plinio Pietrasanta.*

Quarto. A-H in 4°.

Eds.: *ib.*, 1556, 4°—Promis; *ib.*, *D. & C. da Nicolini da Sabio*, 1560, 4°, which is the 2nd ed., with ff. 1-5 reprinted—Promis; and *ib.*, *R. Meietti*, 1601, 4°, issued by Baglioni, with Nos. 769, 783, and 787, in which very inferior ed. the author is called "Geronimo." Same woodcuts in all. Promis states that "La manière de fortifier villes, chasteaux et faire autres lieux forts", put forth as his own work by François de La Treille (Lyon, 1556, 4°), is nothing more than a translation of Zanchi. Zanchi evidently knew nothing of foreign writers on fortification, for he claims to be the first to write on the subject, expressly stating that there were no other works of the sort, and he endeavours to account for this on the supposition that veteran captains were unwilling that others should "learn, in idleness and for amusement, what they had striven to acquire, with great fatigue, and after long experience." He remarks that the invention of artillery, moreover, necessitated a new system of fortifying cities, and that those who might have been qualified by experience to write on the subject were not sufficiently versed in its theory to do so. He himself was certainly the first Italian to write exclusively on it.

*Copies.* B.M. (1554, 1560, 1601).

768. Vinegia. 1554. Cataneo, Pietro.  
I quattro primi libri di Architettvra . . . nel primo de' qvali si dimostrano le buone qualita de 'siti, per l'edificationi delle città & castella, sotto diuersi disegni: *etc.* *Aldus.*

Folio. \* 2, A-D in 4<sup>s</sup>, including numerous woodcuts.

Reprinted Venetia, 1567, fol., with an addition of 4 Books, treating, like Books II., III., and IV., of civil architecture. The last 14 chapters of Book I. are on fortification.

*Copies.* B.M. (1554); Bod. (1554, 1567).

769. Venetia. 1557. Lanteri, Giacomo.  
Dve Dialoghi . . . ; ne i qvali s'introdvce messer Giro-



lamo Catanio Nouarese, & messer Francesco Treuisi ingegnere Fortifica-  
Veronese, con un Giouene Bresciano, a ragionare del modo di tion.  
disegnare le piante delle fortezze secondo Euclide; et del  
modo di comporre i modelli, & torre in disegno le piante  
delle città. *Vincenzo Valgrisi & Baldassar Costantini.*

Quarto. \*, A-M in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Eds.: Venetia, 1559, 8<sup>o</sup>, and Roma, 1583.—Ayala; Venetia, *T. Baglioni*,  
1601, 4<sup>o</sup>, with the "Modo di fortificare" of same author [No. 770], two  
treatises of Lupicini [Nos. 783 and 787], and Zanchi's tract [No. 767].

*Copies.* B.M. (1557, 1601); Bod. (1557, 1601).

770. Vinegia. 1559. Lanteri, Giacomo.

Dvo Libri . . . del modo di fare le fortificationi di terra  
intorno alle Città, & alle Castella per fortificarle. Et di fare  
cosi i Forti in campagna per gli alloggiamenti de gli esserciti;  
come anco per andar sotto ad una Terra, & di fare i Ripari  
nelle batterie. *Bolognino Zaltieri.*

Quarto. aa-dd2, A-Q in 4<sup>s</sup>. N, O, P, in 2<sup>s</sup>.

Lat. trans.: ib., *V. Valgrisi*, 1563, 4<sup>o</sup>, entitled "De modo substruendi",  
etc. Reissued, ib., 1571, with prelim. matter reprinted, under pseudonym  
"Riolante Jabico", with title, "De subtilitate", etc. Same woodcuts. 2  
half-sheets (B and O in orig., B and N in trans.), occupied by folding diags.

*Copies.* B.M.

771. Brescia. 1564. Cataneo, Girolamo.

Opera Nuova di fortificare, offendere et defendere; et far  
gli alloggiamenti campali, secondo l'uso di guerra . . . un  
trattato de gl' essamini de' Bombardieri, & di far fuochi  
arteficiali. *L. di Sabbio a l'istanza di Gio: Batt: Bozola.*

Quarto. \* 6, A-ZZ, AA-MM3 in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Another ed.: Brescia, 1567, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Ayala. Reprinted in "Dell' Arte  
Militare libri tre", Brescia, 1571, 4<sup>o</sup>, where it forms Bk. I. [see No. 542];  
and in "Dell' Arte Militare libri cinque", Brescia, 1584, 4<sup>o</sup>, where also it  
forms Bk. I. Fr. trans. by J. de Tournes, printer, entitled "Le Capitaine",  
Lyon, *J. de Tournes*, 1574, and ib., *J. Roussin*, 1593, 4<sup>o</sup>.

*Copies.* B.M. (1564, 1574, 1593).

772. Venetia. 1564. Maggi, Girolamo, *and* Castriotto, Giacomo.  
Della fortificatione delle citta, di M. G. M. e del Capitan  
I. C. . . . Libri III. Ne' quali, oltre le molte inuentioni di  
questi Autori si contiene tutto quello di più importanza, che  
fino ad hora è stato scritto di questa materia; con infinite cose  
che da molti Signori, Capitani, & Ingegneri dell' età nostra si  
sono hauute. Discorso del Medesimo Maggi sopra la Fortifi-  
catione de gli alloggiamenti de gli esserciti. Discorso del  
Capitan Francesco Montemellino sopra la fortificatione del  
Borgo di Roma. Trattato dell' Ordinanze, ò uero Battaglie del  
Capitan Giovacchino da Coniano. Ragionamento del sudetto  
Castriotto sopra le fortezze della Francia. *Rutilio Borgominiero.*

Folio. †, A-Z, AA-OO6 in 4<sup>s</sup>; CC, DD, FF, and GG are 2<sup>s</sup>.

Numerous full-page woodcuts. Ed.: Venetia, 1584, fol.

Copies. B.M. (1564); Bod. (1584).

773. Venetia. 1564. Castriotto, Giacomo Fusto.  
Della fortificatione delle città.

See Maggi's "Fortificatione" [No. 772].

774. Venetia. 1564. Montemellino, Francesco.

See Maggi's "Fortificatione delle citta" [No. 772].

775. Venetia. 1567. Mora, Dominico.

Tre Quesiti in Dialogo sopra il fare batterie, fortificare vna  
città, et ordinar battaglie quadrate, con una disputa di pre-  
cedenza tra l'arme & le lettere. *G. Varisco & compagni.*

Quarto. a, A-S2 in 4<sup>s</sup>.

This is the 1st ed. Haym is wrong in giving an earlier ed. of 1550; and  
Orlandi ("Scrittori Bolognesi", Bologna, 1714, 8<sup>o</sup>) perhaps wrong in giving  
a later one of 1570.—MS. note to B.M. copy.

Copies. B.M.; Bod.

776. Roma. 1569. Theti, Carlo.

Discorsi di fortificationi. *Giulio Accolto.*

Quarto. A-G6 in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Fortifica-  
tion.

This is the very rare 1st ed., published against the author's wish while still incomplete. It was afterwards rewritten and enlarged to about eight times the original size; in which form it should be described as a distinct work. The eds. of the new treatise are: Venetia, *B. Zaltieri*, 1575, 4<sup>o</sup>; ib., *N. Moretti*, 1589; Rome, 1585, and Vicenza, for *G. de Franceschi*, 1617, fol.—Ayala. Another ed. in 2 pts., Venetia, 1589, fol.: Pt. I., *F. de Franceschi* (†, A-M4 in 2<sup>s</sup>, and 2 plates); Pt. II., *N. Moretti* (†, A-Y, A-S in 2<sup>s</sup>, and 17 plates).

*Copies.* B.M. (1569, 1589); Bod. (1589).

777. Venetiis. 1569. Ballino, M. Giulio.

De Disegni delle piu illustri citta, et fortezze del mondo parte I; la quale ne contiene cinquanta: Con vna breve historia delle origini, et accidenti loro, secondo l'ordine de' tempi. *Bolognino Zaltieri*.

Large Quarto. 2 ff., then 50 double ff. of plates with letterpress at back. Another ed. of this year issued by same printer with 3 additional ff. and the plates numbered. Ayala believes that no more parts were printed.

*Copies.* B.M. (both); Bod.

778. Venezia. 1570. Alghisi, Galasso.

Delle fortificationi.

Folio. \*4, a-e4, A-BBB7 in 6<sup>s</sup>, including plates.

In three books. Another ed., of 1575, not so fine.—Ayala.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

779. Brescia. 1571. Cataneo, Girolamo.

Nvovo Ragionamento del fabricare le fortezze; si per prattica, come per theorica etc. *V. da Sabbo a l'istanza de F. & P. M. Fratelli de' Marchetti*.

Quarto. \*, A-K in 4<sup>s</sup>; D, F, and G are 2<sup>s</sup>. 2 folding diags.

Reprinted in "Dell' Arte Militare libri cinque", Brescia, 1584, 4<sup>o</sup>

[No. 542].

*Copies.* B.M.

780. Bologna. 1575. Locatelli, Vincenzo.

Invito generale ai professori del reparare, fortificare, edificar

luoghi, et a quelli che dopo costruiti detti luoghi, accettano carico di difenderli contro le tremende offese oggidì usate da' Maomettani, cioè de' cannoni, colubrine, basilischi, zappe e pale. *Benacci.*

Quarto.

—Ayala, p. 104. Very rare.

781. Anvers. 1579. Pasino of Ferrara, Aurelio di.

Discours Sur plusieurs points de l'architecture de guerre, Concernants les fortifications tant anciennes que modernes. Ensemble le moyen de bastir & fortifier vne place de laquelle les murailles ne pourront aucunement estre endommagées de l'artillerie. *Christofle Plantin.*

Folio. A-M in 4<sup>s</sup>. 4 separate plates.

Pasino was architect to the Duke de Bouillon. He wrote this work in French, dedicating it to William of Orange.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

782. Parigi. 1581. Barozzi, Giacinto.

Seconda proposta in materia d'una difesa per debito cristiano con quell' ordine che si può vedere, e sino a quel segno che per ora può convenientemente bastare.

Quarto.

—Marini, on the authority of Tiraboschi.

783. Fiorenza. 1582. Lupicini, Antonio.

Architettura militare Con altri Auuertimenti appartenenti alla Guerra. *Giorgio Marescotti.*

Quarto. A-L4 in 4<sup>s</sup>.

At the end is an Addition with continuous sigs., entitled "Discorsi Militari" (not the same with No. 787), dated 1578, and having a Ded. affixed, dated 1576 (15 pp.). Another ed., Torino, 1585.—Ayala. Reprinted, Venetia, R. *Meietti*, 1601, 4<sup>o</sup>, and issued by Baglioni with Nos. 767 and 769.

*Copies.* B.M. (1582, 1601); Bod. (1582).

784. Venetia. 1584. Barbaro, Daniele.

I dieci libri dell' Architettura di M. Vitruvio, tradotti et

commentati da Monsig. D. B. . . da lui riueduti & ampliati; Fortifica-  
& hora in piu commoda forma ridotti. *F. de' Franceschi.* tion.

Quarto. \*4, A-NN in 8<sup>o</sup>.

This is the 4th ed. The 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 5th, are of Venice, 1556, fol.; 1567, 4<sup>o</sup>; 1567, fol. (Latin); 1629, 4<sup>o</sup>.—Promis. Others of Amsterdam, 1649, fol. (Lat.), and of Venezia, 1747, 8<sup>o</sup>. At the end of Bk. I. Barbaro gives the plan of an hexagonal fortress.

*Copies.* B.M. (1584, 1747); Bod. (1567, fol., 1649).

785. Turino. 1585. Busca, Gabriello.

Della Espvgnatione et difesa delle fortezze. *Niccolo Bevilacqua.*

Quarto. †, A-FF2 in 4<sup>o</sup>. Woodcuts.

Another ed., with same woodcuts, ib., *G. D. Farino*, 1598, 4<sup>o</sup>, "Di nuovo corretti et ampliati. . . aggiuntovi nel fine l'instructione de' bombardieri." Pref. bears date 1581, that of 1st ed.

*Copies.* B.M. (1585, 1598); Bod. (1598); R.A.I. (1601).

786. Geneva. 1585. Aconzio, Giacomo.

*Ars Muniendorum oppidorum.*

This work is given on the authority of Marini and Guarnieri, but no one has ever seen a copy. In a letter to John Wolfe, dated London, Dec. 21, 1562, printed in his "Stratagematum Satanæ" [Basiliæ, 1565, 12<sup>o</sup>], Aconzio speaks of a work with this title, written by himself years before, and not yet published; and calls himself the first to write on fortification, thus proving that he was ignorant of the works of Tartaglia, Dürer, Zanchi, Cataneo, etc. He died in England in 1565.—Promis.

787. Firenze. 1587. Lupicini, Antonio.

Discorsi militari . . . Sopra l'espugnazione d'alcuni siti.  
*Bartolommeo Sermatelli.*

Quarto. A-K6 in 4<sup>o</sup>.

Reprinted and issued with the "Architettura Militare" of the same author [No. 783], with Zanchi [No. 767], with the "Modo di disegnare le piante" and the "Modo di fare le fortificazioni" of Lanteri [Nos. 769, 770], Venetia, 1601, 4<sup>o</sup>.

*Copies.* B.M. (1587, 1601).

788. Parigi. 1588. Ramelli, Agostino.

Le diverse et artificiose machine . . . nellequali si contengono uarij et industriosi Mouimenti degni di grandissima Speculatione, per cauarne beneficio infinito in ogni sorte d'operatione; Composte in Lingua Italiana et Francese.

Folio. \*, \*\*, A-Z, AA-KK<sup>2</sup> in 8<sup>s</sup>.

"The only copy of this rare book in *Large Paper* which has been known to Bibliographers in modern days was bought from the Macarthy Library by Mr. Beckford. I believe this to be the same book."—Grenville's note. The small paper copies also are well known to be scarce. Ger. trans.: Leipsig, *G. Eiger*, 1620, fol., with ills. reproduced.

*Copies.* B.M. (in L. P. and small); R.A.I.; Bod.

789. Strasburg. 1589. Speckle, Daniel.

Architectura von Vestungen. Wie die zu unsern Zeiten mögen erbawen werden . . . Sampt den Grund Rissen, Visierungen, und Auffzügen fur Augen gestellt. *Bernhart Tobin.*

Folio. )(, (\* \*\*), A-EE<sup>4</sup> and Errata. Plates.

Another ed.: ib., *L. Zetner*, 1599, fol., with same plates. Rumpf gives an ed. of Dresden, 1705, fol. Speckle is one of the best known of the German writers on fortification.

*Copies.* B.M. (1589, 1599); W.O. (1589).

790. Venetia. 1592. Gentilini, Eugenio.

. . . Discorso intorno alle fortezze.

Quarto.

A continuation of the "Instruttione de' Bombardieri", with continuous pag. For eds., see No. 646. Ayala says the ed. of 1606 had separate tp. and Ded.

791. Venetia. 1596. Lorini, Buonaiuto.

Delle Fortificationi . . . Libri Cinque. Ne' qvali si mostra con le piv facili regole le Scienza con la Pratica, di Fortificare le Città, & altri luoghi sopra diuersi siti . . . Nvovamente dati in lvice. *Appresso Gio. Antonio Rampazetto.*

Folio. 116 ff.; sigs. in 10<sup>s</sup>, 8<sup>s</sup>, 6<sup>s</sup>, 4<sup>s</sup>, and 2<sup>s</sup>. Large woodcuts.

Portrait of Lorini, *at.* 50. Eds.: ib., 1597, fol.; ib., ib., 1609, fol., with

a 6th Bk. added; portrait of Lorini, *æ*t. 70; same cuts. Another ed., 1659.— Fortification. Ayala. Ger. trans.: Franckfurt am Mayn, *Matthias Becker*, 1607, fol., without Bk. VI.; cuts reproduced in copper.

According to Ayala, the first ed., which he had seen, was printed in 1592; but there must be a misprint, for that of 1596 is the first. It is of the greatest rarity, very few copies having been printed, and these for presentation to certain Christian princes only, each having a special Dedicatory Epistle. The B.M. copy has the dedication to Vincenzo Gonzaga, dated 28 October, 1596. See Gamba, "Serie dei Testi di lingua", Milano, 1812, 12°, and Poggiali, "Serie di testi di Lingua stampati", Livorno, 1813, 8°.

*Copies.* B.M. (1596, 1607); Bod. (1597, 1609).

792. Montbeliard. 1597. Flamand, Claude.

La gvide des fortifications et condvitte militaire, ov sont contenus sept liures de Mathematicque, & Geometrie, contenant ce qu'est le plus necessaire, pour l'vtilité de la vie humaine. *Faques Foillet*.

Octavo. 2 pts., with separate tpp. A-M4, A-R3 in 8°.

*Copies.* B.M.

793. Madrid. 1598. Rojas, Christoval de.

Teorica y practica de fortificacion, conforme las medidas y defensas destros tiempos, repartida en tres partes. *Luis Sanchez*.

Folio. \*4, A-X in 6°; T has 4 ff., O and V 2 ff.

Reprinted under title: "Compendio y breve resolucion de fortificacion", Madrid, 1613, 8°.—Almirante.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

794. Venice. 1598. Belici, Giovanni Battista.

Nvova Inventione di fabricar fortezze, de varie forme, in qvalvnque sito di piano, di monte, in acqua, con diuersi disegni, et vn trattato del modo che si hà da osseruare in esse, con le sve misvre et ordine di levar le piante, tanto in fortezze reali, quanto non reali *etc.* [*R. Meietti?*] *Appresso Tomaso Baglioni*.

Folio. \*, A-N2 in 6°; \*, G, and H are 2°; I has 1 f.; no K. Woodcuts.

Ayala believes that the eds. of 1602 and 1708, mentioned by some of the bibliographers, never existed. He gives Meietti as the printer of the 1st ed.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

795. Melun. 1598. Bachot, Ambroise.

Le gouvernail . . . Le quel conduira le curieux de Geometrie en perspective dedans l'architecture des fortifications, machines de guerre & plusieurs autres particularitez y contenues. *Imprimé souz L'auteur.*

Folio. 4 ff. with engraved tp. and frontispiece, the fly-leaf having set-off from tp.; then A-C in 6<sup>s</sup>, and 4 ff. of plates with text on verso, followed by 23 single ff. and 8 double ff. of plates, and 14 ff. with designs on both recto and verso.

*Copies.* B.M.

796. Roma. 1598. Barozzi, Giacinto.

Offerta di un nuovo modo di difendere qualsivoglia fortezza per debole che sia reputata da qualsivoglia numeroso esercito con poca gente. *Gli heredi di Antonio Blado.*

Quarto.

—Ayala: "Merely one leaf of print."

797. Madrid. 1599. Gonzalez de Medina Barba.

Exámen de fortificacion.

Quarto. Many copperplates interspersed with the text.—Almirante.

798. Brescia. 1599. Marchi, Francesco.

Della Architettura militare, . . . Libri tre. Nelli quali si descrivono li veri modi, del fortificare, che si vsa a' tempi moderni. Con vn breve, et vtile trattato, Nel quali si dimostrano li modi del fabricar l'Artigliaria et la prattica di adoperarla, da quelli che hanno carico di essa. *Appresso Comino Presegni. Ad istanza di Gasparo dell' Oglio.*

Folio. 6 ff., A-6th T, †, ††, in 6<sup>s</sup>. ††6, blank, has set-off from ††5.

This ed. is of extreme rarity. Ayala had seen a copy with a slight alteration in the wording of the title-page, and a Ded. by Dell' Oglio, dated 1600. Though commenced in 1546 the work was not completed until 1560, in which year Marchi presented a copy in MS. to Philip of Spain, then King-Consort of England. He died in 1597. Fontanini speaks of an ed. of 1577, and Haym follows suit, the mistake originating with Orlandi. It seems that Marchi had his designs engraved one by one, and gave away copies to his friends. In process of time these were collected into book form, whence



the belief in the early ed.—Zeno, ii. 396. Marini's splendid reprint is well known; it has introduction, notes, and bibliography (Roma, 1810, fol.). For some remarks on the method of Marchi, see A. de la Ville's "Nouvelle manière de fortifier les places", 1689, 8°, and E. Corazzi's "L'Architettura Militare di F. Marchi", 1720, 4°.

*Copies.* B.M. (two of 1599, 1810); Bod. (1599).

799. Francfort. 1602. Perret, Jacques.

Architectura et Perspectiva des fortifications & Artifices . . . Mis en lumière par la vefve et les deux fils de Theodore de Bry. *Wolf Richter.*

Folio. 68 ff. of plates and letterpress.

Eds.: Paris, 1601, fol. (the 1st), perhaps the above with a different title-page.—Brunet; and Paris, 1620, fol., both with plates by de Leu. Ger. trans., by T. de Bry, Oppenheim, *H. Galler*, 1613, fol., with plates of ed. of 1602.

*Copies.* B.M. (1602, 1613, 1620); Bod. (1602); R.A.I. (1602).

800. Roma. 1603. Scala, Giovanni.

Della prattica della geometria necessaria per l'architettura militare e fortificazione.

Quarto.—Ayala.

801. Rome. 1604. Fiamelli, Francesco.

Il principe Difeso . . . Nel quale si tratta di Fortificazione, Oppugnazione, Espugnazione, e Propugnazione, ò Difesa. *Luigi Zannetti.*

Folio. \*, A-CC6 in 4°. 1 folding diag.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

802. Paris. 1604. Errard de Bar-le-duc, Jean.

La Fortification demonstree et redviète en art . . . Edition seconde reveue et augmentee. *A la rose blanche rue S<sup>e</sup> Jacques.*

Folio. Engraved tp. and ã, A-II4 in 2°. Numerous fine engravings.

Eds.: Francfort sur le Mein, *W. Richter*, 1604, fol., "Premierement imprimee a Paris. Maintenant mis en Lumiere par la vefve & les deux fils de Theodore de Bry"; Oppenheim, *ib.*, 1617, fol.—Brunet; Paris, 1619-22, revised and augmented by A. Errard, "Contre . . . l'Impression contrefaiète

Fortifica-  
tion.

en Allemagne," and 1620-19, fols. A Ger. ed. *circa* 1610.—See Priv. to ed. of Paris, 1620-19. The Privilege to the 2nd ed., extending the copyright to another ten years, alludes to the first copyright accorded to Errard over his "mathematical" works, "Scavoir la Geometrie, la Fortification, etc.," in 1594; which is the date ascribed by Promis to the 1st ed.; the "Advertisement" states that it has been augmented by several new plates, which, by collating with the de Brys' reprint, we know to be 10 in number; occurring on pp. 4, 7, 21, 69, 73, 74, 86, 93, 106, and 127. Errard concludes this 2nd ed. thus: "Nous esperons . . . de publier en bref les versions Italiene, et Allemande, de cet œuure, acompagné de quelque autre traiçte, de semblable sujet." Rumpf mentions the German trans. Neither this passage nor the Privileges occur in the de Brys' ed., which I believe to be a pirated ed., preceding the author's reprint. It has a pref. to the effect that the [1st] ed. of Paris having become rare, and being very costly, it is reprinted in a smaller and cheaper form in both German and French. It is peculiar in having a date (1600) affixed to the author's Ded. to Henry IV.

*Copies.* B.M. (two of 1604, 1619, 1620); Bod. (1604).

803. [n. p.] 1605. St. Julien.  
Architectura Militare.

*Copies.* Roy. Art. Inst.

804. Neapoli. 1608. Porta, Gio. Bat.  
De munitione libri tres.

Quarto.—Ayala. An ed. of 1652.—ib. Taken from Maggi and Castriotto.

805. Messina. 1610. Rinaldini, Giovanni.

Conclusione che non si devono fare le piazze basse ne' fianchi delle fortezze.

—Ayala. The subject-matter of this is of little value.

806. Francofurti. 1610. Faulhaber, Johann.

Mathematici Tractatus duo nuper . . . Prior, Novas geometricas et opticas aliquot singularium Instrumentorum inventiones, . . . De novo excogitatum . . . Sermone Latino versi.  
*Sumptibus Antoni Humini, excudebat Ioannes Bringer.*

Quarto. 2 pts., with sep. tpp., but continuous sigs., etc. A-G3 in 4<sup>a</sup>.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

807. Venezia. 1615. Scamozzi, Vincenzo. Fortifica-  
tion.  
Idee dell' architettura universale.  
Folio. 2 vols.  
—Ayala. Eds.: Piazzola, 1688, and Venezia, 1714—*ibid.*  
In 1593 Scamozzi was working as an engineer in Palmanova.
808. Monaco. 1617. Groote, Alessandro de.  
Neovallia : dialogo, nel quale con nuova forma di fortificare  
piazze si esclude il modo di far fortezze alla regale come quelle  
che sono di poco contrasto. *Vedova Berghin.*  
—Ayala.
809. Rotterdam. 1617. Stevin, Symon.  
Nieuwe maniere van sterctebou, door Spilstuysen. *Ian van  
Waesberghe.*  
Folio. (..), A-I2 in 4°. 1 folding diag.  
Fr. trans.: Leyden, *M. & B. Elzevier*, 1618, fol., with same woodcuts.  
*Copies.* B.M.
810. Venetia. 1618. Sardi, Pietro.  
Corona imperiale dell' Architettura militare Diuisa in due  
Trattati. Il primo contiene la Teorica, il secondo contiene la  
Pratica. *Barezzo Barezzi a spese dell' Autore.*  
Folio. X6, a, b, A-NN, A-K6 in 4°, including 41 copperplates by  
Grispoldi.  
Other eds.: *ib.*, *Giunti*, 1639, fol., and Bologna, 1689.—Ayala. Fr.  
trans.: Franckfort, 1622, fol.; *ib.*, *H. Paltheni au frais de J. de Zetter*,  
1623, fol., with same designs in sep. plates.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1618, 1623); R.A.I. (1618); Bod. (1622).
811. Milano. 1619. Busca, Gabriello.  
L'Architettvra Militare . . . nella quale si da contezza  
ad ogni professore, e seguace della Guerra tanto di grande,  
quanto di basso titolo, Del modo di fortificare luochi deboli,  
cinger Cittadi, fabricar fortezze, cosi al monte, come alla  
pianura, e della maniera di diffenderle da qualsiuoglia batteria,  
& assalto. *Gio: Battista Bidelli.*

Fortifica-  
tion.

Quarto. a, A-Z, AA-GG in 4°. Folding plates.  
1st ed.: Milano, 1601, 4°. *Copies.* B.M. (1619); Bod. (1601); R.A.I. (1601).

812. Milan. 1620. Barca, Pietro Antonio.  
Avvertimenti e regole circa l'architettura civile, scoltvra, pittvra prospetiva et architettura militare per offesa, e difesa di fortezze. *Pandolfo Malatesta.*

Oblong Folio. A-F6 in 8°. 2 large folding plates. Pt. II. has 16 ff., with copperplates.

The "Architettura Militare" has half-title without imprint, and continuous pagination and signatures. Ayala gives the work also separately.

*Copies.* B.M.

813. Venetia. 1624. Tensini, Francesco.  
La fortificatione, guardia, difesa, et espvgnatione delle fortezze. *Euangelista Deuchino.*

Folio. †8, A-K6, A-K6, A-Q in 4°. 44 plates.

Eds.: ib., *Bariletti*, 1630, fol., and 1655, 4°, and Torino, 1674.—Ayala.

*Copies.* B.M.

814. Bologna. 1625. Zambelli, Leone.  
Politica militare.

Quarto.

—Ayala. Rare. Another ed.: Bologna, 1635—*ibid.* "Belongs properly to military architecture."

815. Francoforte. 1625. Angeli, Lorenzo.  
Estratto e brevissimo ristretto di fortificazione.

Duodecimo.

—Ayala, p. 83.

816. Hagæ-Comit. 1625. Hondius, Henrik.  
Description & breve declaration des Regles Generales de la Fortification, de l'Artillerie, des Amunitions, & viures; des officiers, & de leurs commissions. Des retranchemens de

Camp, des Approches, avec la maniere de se defendre, & des feux artificiels. . . . Le tout traduit du Flamend en langue Française par A. G. S. *Ex officina Henr: Hondii.* Fortification.

Folio. 3 ff., A-C6, D-O1 in 4°. 18 plates, 3 of them folding.  
Brunet does not mention the original.

*Copies.* B.M.; R.A.I.

817. Antverpiæ. 1626. Hugo, Hermannus.  
Obsidio Bredana Armis Philippi IIII avspiciis Isabellæ  
dvctv Ambr. Spinolæ Prefecta. *Ex officina Plantiniana.*

Folio. A-R6. 7 separate plates, besides those with text.

Other eds.: ib., ib., 1629, fol. (the 2nd). Fr. trans.: ib., ib., 1631, fol.,  
with same plates. Almirante mentions eds. of orig. of 1630 and 1632, and  
Span. trans., Amberes, 1627. For English trans., see Nos. 110 and 111.  
Included on account of the plates.

*Copies.* B.M. (1626, 1629).

818. Roma. 1627. Scala, Giovanni.  
Delle Fortificationi. . . . Nuouamente ristampate con  
aggiunta d' diuerse piante. *Giuseppe de Rossi.*

Folio. Engraved tp. and Ded., followed by 64 ff. of plates and letter-  
press.

The B.M. copy has 3 ff. at the end with pen-and-ink etchings. Edited  
by de Rossi. An ed. of 1596.—Ayala.

*Copies.* B.M.

819. Venezia. 1627. Sardi, Pietro.  
Discorso per il quale, con vive e certe ragioni, si rifiutano  
tutte le fortezze ad perpetuitatem fatte con semplice terra in  
qualsivoglia forma e modo come inutili. *Sarzina.*

Quarto.

—Ayala. Very rare; not mentioned by either Guarnieri or Marini.

820. Venice. 1628. Sarti, Antonio.  
I Crepuscoli del Torneo delle militare avvertenze da diversi

autori et successu di guerra de' nostri tempi raccolte et divisi in XII libri ne' quali si vede per suppositione l'offesa et la difesa d'una metropoli, fortificata di reali difese in sito piano etc.

—Ayala. See No. 823.

821. Amsterdam. 1628. Marolois, Samuel.

Fortification ov Architectvve Militaire, tant offensive que deffensive: . . . Corrigeé & augmentee par Francois van Schoten. *Guillaume Iansson Cæsius.*

Folio. A-HH in 4<sup>s</sup>, with woodcuts. 13 folding plates and a table.

Published with the "Geometrie" under general tp., "Oeuvres Matematicques." Eds.: Hagæ-Com., 1614, fol.; Amsterdam, *I. Iansson*, 1651, fol., "corrigée par A. Girard." Latin trans.: ib., ib., 1633, fol., under title, "Artis Muniendi." Germ. trans.: ib., ib., 1627, fol. The eds. of 1651, 1633, and 1627, have same plates (40, numbered, separate), from the designs of ed. of 1628.

*Copies.* B.M. (1628, 1651, and translations); Bod. (1614); W.O. (1633).

822. Venezia. 1630. Sarti, Paolo.

La simmetria dell' ottima fortificazione regolare.

Ottavo.

Ayala, p. 120, who remarks: "This little work merits some attention, having been written at the age of 17."

823. Venetia. 1630. Sarti, Antonio.

La reale et rogolare fortificatione descritta in quesiti et risposte. *Evangelista Deuchino.*

Folio.

—Ayala. Another ed.: ib., ib., 1634—*ibid.* The following is perhaps the same work: Venezia, 1630, "L'Aurora delle opere di fortificazione regolare."—Ayala. Sarti entitled another work, "*I crepuscoli del torneo*" [No. 820].

824. Ulm. 1630. Furtenbach, Joseph.

Architectura Martialis; das ist: Ausführliches Bedencken,



über das, zu dem Geschütz und Waffen gehörige Gebäw, Fortification. etc. *Jonas Sauer.*

Folio. ):6, ):( ):2, A-M3 in 4<sup>s</sup> and A12. 12 numbered plates.  
 In two parts. For works on Artillery, see No. 692.  
*Copies.* B.M.

825. Macerata. 1630. Floriani, Pietro Paolo.  
 Difesa et offesa delle piazze. *Giuliano Carboni.*

Folio.  
 —Ayala. Ed. in B.M.:

Venice. 1654.

Difesa et Offesa Delle Piazze . . . Opera non solo vtile, e necessaria à Capitani, e Gouvernatori di Fortezze, ma anco di sommo profitto à studiosi dell' Historie Militari, cosi antiche, come moderne. Seconda Impressione.

Folio. Frontispiece. \*, a-c, A-CC6 in 4<sup>s</sup>. 50 plates and 1 folding map.  
 Another ed.: Londra, 1725.—Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1654).

826. Parma. 1636. Lombardi, Alessandro.

Della fortificatione regolare, perfezionato e messo a stampa da I. Foliati. *Mario Vigna.*

Folio.  
 —Ayala, p. 104.

827. Roma. 1637. Maggieri, Silvio.

Difesa, ovvero risposta ad alcune obbiezioni fatte alla fortificazione italiana da diversi.

Octavo.  
 —Ayala, p. 106. Rare.

828. Venetia. 1639. Sardi, Pietro.

Corno dogale della Architettura militare. *Appresso i Giunti.*

Folio. Engraved tp. and 2 ff., preceded by half-title, then \*6, \*\*, A-N2, N6-GG6 in 4<sup>s</sup>; R, S, T, Y and EE are 2<sup>s</sup>. 44 numbered plates, included in text and separate.

Fortifica-  
tion.

Another ed. : Venezia, 1689, fol.—Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M.

829. Milano. 1639. Barca, Giuseppe.  
Breve compendio di fortificatione moderna. *Filippo Ghisolfi.*

Quarto.

—Ayala. Another ed. : Bologna, *N. Tebbaldini*, 1643, 4°.—Ayala.

830. Paris. 1639. Ville, Antoine de.

De la charge des gouvernevs des places. . . . Ov sont contenvs tovş les ordres qu'on doit tenir pour preparer les choses necessaires dans vne place, tant pour la conseruer, comme pour la deffendre, & pour s'empescher de toute sorte de surprises ; vn discours facile pour reconnoistre tovş les deffauts des places, & pour y sçavoir remedier ; vn abregé de la fortification . . . : de plvs y est adioveste un traité des parties de guerre. *Matthieu Guillemot.*

Folio. ā6, A2, B2, C-OO6 and PP in 4<sup>s</sup>. 7 plates, 1 only separate.

Eds. : [Amsterdam ?] 1640, 12° ; Paris, 1656, 8° ; Amsterdam, 1674, 12°. De Ville was author of the "Obsidio Corbeiensis" (Parisiis, 1637, fol.) and the "Siège de Hesdin" (Lyon, 1639, fol.), both with diagrams of fortifications, etc. *Copies* in B.M.

*Copies.* B.M.

831. Lyon. 1640. Ville, Antoine de.

Les Fortifications . . . Contenans La maniere de fortifier tovte sorte de places . . . Avec l'ataqve, et les moyens de prendre les places . . . Puis la Defense . . .

Folio. 4 ff., then ē2, A-LLL in 4<sup>s</sup>. 53 plates, all but 8 signed continuously with text.

A second title-page bears the date 1641.

Another ed. : Amsterdam, 1672, 8°.

*Copies.* B.M. (1640, 1672).

832. Franckfurt am Mayn. 1640. Dilich, Wilhelm.

Peribologia ; oder Bericht von Vestungs gebewen Vieler



orter vermehret wie auch mit gebürenden grundt und auffrissen versehen und Publicirett durch J. W. D. *Ant.* Fortifica-  
*Humm.* tion.

Folio. 88 ff. of text, about 400 ff. of plates.

Dilichius was the most renowned of the German writers on fortification of this time. Vauban has closely followed him. Besides the "Peribologia" he wrote a lengthy work entitled "Kriegsbuch, darin die alte und neue Militia eigentlich beschreiben", etc., Cassel, 1607 and 1608, 4°, with copperplates. —Rumpf. Reprinted with the "Peribologia", Frankfurt, 1689, fol.

*Copies.* B.M. (1640, 1689).

833. Nürnberg. 1641. Treu, Abdias.

Compendium Fortificationis, Oder Kurtzer Mathematischer Unterricht von der Fortification, Oder Bestung-Baw. *In verlegung Jeremie Dümlers.*

Duodecimo. A-G in 12°. 18 separate copperplates.

*Copies.* B.M.

834. Venice. 1642. Sardi, Pietro.

Discorso sopra la necessita e utilita dell' Architettura Militare.

Quarto.

*Copies.* R.U.S.I.

835. Franckfurt am Mayn. 1642. Meynier, Honorat de.

Fortification-Baw Oder Kurtze und grundtliche Beschreibung der Kunst, einen Orth, gegen allen gewaltsamen Angrieff der Feinde, so durch Zwerchschnitte, Gänge, Vündergrabung, Geschütz, oder andere Kriegs Instrumenta zu geschehen. . . . Erstlichen in Frantzosischer Sprach beschrieben etc. *Wolfgang Hoffmann.*

Quarto. A-C in 4°. 22 copperplates.

*Copies.* B.M.

836. Leyden. 1642. Freitag, Adam.

Architectvra militaris nova et aucta. Oder Neue vermehrte

Fortifica-  
tion.

Fortification von Regular Vestungen, von Irregular-Vestungen und Aussen wercken Von praxi Offensivâ und Defensivâ Auff die neweste Niederlandische Praxin gerichtet und beschrieben. . . . Letzte edition verbessert. *Abraham Elzevier*.

Folio. \*, A-Z5 in 4<sup>s</sup>. 8 double ff. of tables, and 36 plates.

Eds.: 1st, ib., *A. & B. Elzevier*, 1635—See Priv. to ed. of 1642; ib., ib., 1635, fol.—Graesse, "Livres rares", ii. 634; Amsterdam, 1665, fol. Fr. trans.: Leide, *Elzevir*, 1635, fol., and Paris, 1668, fol. Same plates in all.

*Copies.* B.M. (1642, 1665, and both eds. of Fr.); R.A.I. (1642, and Fr. of 1635).

## MANUFACTURE OF FIREARMS AND POWDER.

837. Brescia. 1577. Cataneo, Girolamo.

Arte di fare le armi et i fucili.

Ayala, p. 141. Cited by Gassendi and Cotty, but no copy is known. Marchetti, in the Ded. of his collected ed. of Cataneo (Brescia, 1584, see No. 542) expressly states that he had "diligently brought together *all* that had been written" by the great engineer, up to the time of printing; yet he omits this treatise. It is doubtful that it ever existed.

838. Amstleredam. 1593.

Der Bussen Meesterye. Hier begint een seer uytnemende boecxkē, dickwils versocht eñ warachtich bevonden om alderhande gheschut te schieten, ende om Salpeter, poeyer eñ alderhande vyerwerckē sonderlinghe te bereyden, en is seer profytelijck voor allen Busmeesters oft Busschieters . . . nu eerst overgheset uyt den Hooghduytsche *etc.* *E. Muller voor C. Claesz.*

Quarto. A-H in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Copies. B.M.

839. Padoua. 1607. Zonca, Vittorio.

Novo Teatro di machine et edificii. *etc.* [*Pietro Bertelli.*]

Folio. a, A-P2 in 4<sup>s</sup>, including plates.

Between pp. 82-87 are descriptions of two powder mills with illustrations.

Eds.: *ib.*, *F. Bertelli*, 1621, 4<sup>o</sup>, and 1656, fol. Ayala gives, *ib.*, 1627.

Copies. B.M. (all three); Bod. (1607, 1656).

840. Anversa. 1625. Bossi, Giuliano.

Breve trattato d'alcune inventioni che sono state fatte per

Manufac-  
ture of fire-  
arms and  
powder.

rinforzare e raddoppiare li tiri degli archibugi e moschetti, con alcune ragioni perchè non possono servire generalmente combattendo in guerra, con il beneficio che si può havere nella guerra da gli avvantaggiosi archibugi et doppi moschetti inventati. e messi in luce. *Girolamo Verdussen.*

Duodecimo.

—Ayala, p. 139.

841. Parigi. 1629. Bossi, Giuliano.

Breve discorso delli doppii archibvgi a rovta inventati per G. B.

Bossi's improved weapon was a double-barrelled harquebus with a wheel-lock. The date of printing is given as 1679 by Ayala, probably a misprint.

Octavo. Tp. and A-C3 in 4<sup>s</sup>.

*Copies.* B.M.

842. Paris. 1640.

Instrvction generale et particuliere, pour vn Commissaire des Pouldres & Salpestres, & afin d'instruire les ouuriers qu'il establira pour la manufacture & composition des Salpestres. *René Baudry.*

Quarto. A-E2 in 4<sup>s</sup>; C has 2 ff.

*Copies.* B.M.

## MEDICAL.

843. Paris. 1545. Paré, Ambroise.  
La Methode de Traicter les playes faictes par Hacque-  
bvttes . . . fleches, dartz . . . : aussi des combustions speciale-  
ment faictes par la pouldre à canon. *Gaulterot*.  
Octavo. A-14 in 8°.   
"Translated out of Latine and compared with the French. by Tho. John-  
son. London. Printed by Richard Cotes, and Willi: Dugard . . . 1649." Fo  
Copies. B.M. (1545, 1649).
844. Rome. 1552. Ferrius, Alphonsus.  
De sclopetorum siue archibusorum. *V. & A. Dorico*.  
Quarto. A-S2 in 4°.   
Also in "De chirurgia scriptores optimi", Tiguri, 1555, fol. (pp. 287-  
310); "De Curandis vulneribus", Antwerp, 1583, 4° (pp. 1-91); and in  
Uffenbach's "Thesaurus Chirurgiæ", Francofurti, 1590, fol. (pp. 992-1010);  
and in Valgrisi's collection [No. 845].  
Copies. B.M. (all).
845. Boninæ. 1552. Maggius, Bartholomeus.  
De vvlnerum sclopetorum, et Bombardarum curatione  
tractatus. *Bartholomé Bonard*.  
Quarto. \*, A-HH6 in 4°. 2 folding plates.  
Reprinted in Gesner's "De chirurgia scriptores optimi", Tiguri, 1555,  
fol. (pp. 242-286); and in the "De sclopettorum curatione" of Valgrisi and  
Alexium, Venice, 1566. Ital. trans.: Verona, *G. Discepolo*, 1594, 4°.   
Copies. B.M. (all).
846. Gand. 1553. Goddin, Nicolas.  
La Chirurgie Militaire . . . translätée en François par  
J. Blondel. *Iosse Lambert*.

Medical.

- Octavo. A-H7 in 8<sup>s</sup>; E has 3 ff.  
 Another ed. : Anvers, *I. Bellere*, 1558, 8<sup>o</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1553, 1558).
847. Bononiæ. 1555. Rota, Ioannes Francisco.  
 De Tormentariorvm vvlnervm. *Anselm Giaccarelli*.  
 Quarto. A-T2 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
 Eds. : Francofurti, *G. Corvinus*, 1575, 4<sup>o</sup>; Antverpiæ, *A. Coninx*, 1583, 4<sup>o</sup>; and in Valgrisi's collection [No. 845].  
*Copies.* B.M. (all).
848. Lugduni. 1560. Botallus, Leonardo.  
 De cvrandis vvlneribvs scloppetorvm. *Guillaume Rouillé*.  
 Octavo. A-K3 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
 Eds. : Venetiis, *F. Rampazzeto*, 1564, 8<sup>o</sup>, reissued with sheet A reprinted, ib., 1597; Francofurti, *G. Corvinus*, 1575, 4<sup>o</sup>; and in Valgrisi's collection [No. 845].  
*Copies.* B.M. (all).
849. Cracovia. 1564. Schneeberger, Antonius.  
 De Bona Militum valetudine conservanda liber. *L. Andres*.  
 Octavo. a, b4, A-N4 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
 A useful book, in which have been collected the scattered notices to be found in ancient writers on the preservation of health amongst soldiers.  
*Copies.* B.M.
850. Paris. 1570. Joubert, Laurent.  
 Traité des arcbsvades. *Fleury Prevost pour P. l'Huillier*.  
 Octavo. ā, q̄2, A-I2 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.
851. Lugduni. 1576. Du Chesne, Joseph, *called Quersitanus*.  
 J. Q. . . . Sclopetarius, sive de cvrandis vvlneribus, quæ Sclopetorum, etc., ic̄tibus acciderunt, Liber. *I. Lertout*.  
 Octavo. A-P in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
 Ed. : Lipsiæ, *T. Scheurer & B. Voigt*, 1614, 4<sup>o</sup>. French trans. : Lyon, *Lertout*, 1578, 8<sup>o</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M. (all).

852. Bergerac. 1577. Joubert, Laurent. Medical.  
 S'ensit la copie . . . de deux belles questions sur la curation  
 des harquebuses, et autres playes. *Lancelot Vadasot.*  
 Octavo.  
 This ed. was reissued with No. 854. Reprinted with No. 856.  
*Copies.* B.M.
853. Lyon. 1581. Veyras, Jaques.  
 Traicté de Chirvrgie contenant la vraye methode de gverir  
 playes d'arquebusade, selon Hippocras, Galen, and Paracelse,  
 avec refutation des erreurs qui s'y commettent. *B. Vincent.*  
 Octavo. a, b, A-M4 in 8°. *Copies.* B.M.
854. Paris. 1581. Dionyse, Alexandre.  
 Traicté et Response . . . sur la questiō . . . decidee par  
 L. Joubert. Ascavoir si avec la seule eau froide et simple on  
 peut guarir tant les plaies des harquebusades qu'autres. *Jean  
 Parant.*  
 Octavo. A-G3 in 4° (including No. 852). *Copies.* B.M.
855. Paris. 1583. Le Lieure, Esaie.  
 Officinne et Jardin de Chirurgie militaire. *R. Coulombel.*  
 Octavo. A-O4 in 8°. *Copies.* B.M.
856. Lyon. 1588. Joubert, Laurent.  
 Question de huiles traictee problematiquement. *Benoist  
 Rigaud.*  
 Duodecimo. A-F6 in 8°. *The Ded.* is dated 1578.  
*Copies.* B.M.
857. Tubingæ. 1594. Rudolphus, J.  
 De horribilium atque horrosonorum πυροβόλων και σφαιροβόλων

Medical. tormentorum bellicorum vulnerum natura et curatione, posita medica discutienda.

Small Quarto.—Lib. Surg. Genl. Off. U.S. Army.

858. Ferrariae. 1596. Boschi, Hypollito.  
De vulneribus a Bellico fulmine illatis. *V. Baldinus.*

Quarto. †, A-13 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.

859. [Venice ?] 1614. Fabricius, Guilhelmus.  
De vulnere quodam gravissimo et periculoso ictu sclopeti inflicto. *Typis H. Galler, Ære J.-T. de Bry.*

Octavo. A-E7 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
An English trans., the title running :

Guilielm. Fabricius Hildamus, | His | Experiments | In  
Chyrurgerie : | Concerning Combustions or Burnings, made |  
with Gun powder, Iron shot, Hot-water, Lightning, or | any  
other fiery matter whatsoever. In which is excellent- | ly  
described the differences, Signs, Prognostication and | cures, of  
all accidents and burning themselves. | Very necessary and  
useful for all Gentlemen, and Soldiers | as well of the  
Trayned Bands, as others ; especially upon sudden oc- | casions.  
Translated out of Latine by Iohn Steer, Chyrurgeon. | *London,*  
*Printed by Barnard Alsop, living in Grubstreet, 1643.*

Quarto. 6 woodcuts, including that on title-page. Sigs. in 4<sup>s</sup>, A-H.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1614, 1643).

860. Venice. 1618. Plazzoni, Francesco.  
De vulneribus sclopetorum. *Robertus Megliettus.*

Quarto.  
Another ed. : Pataviae, 1643, 4<sup>o</sup> ; ib., 1625.—Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1618, 1643).



861. Nürnberg. [1621.] Minderer, Raymund. Medical.  
Medicina militaris. Das ist Gemeine Handstücklein zur  
Kriegs-Artzney gehörig. *Jeremia Dümmler.*

Duodecimo. A-T 11 in 12°.

Another ed., ib., 1634, 8°. "Englished out of High-Dutch. London, Printed for Charles Shortgrave at the Turk's-Head in St. Paul's Church-Yard, 1686." 8°. (pp. 23-119 of Barbette's "Thesaurus Chirurgiæ").

The work is of little importance, being made up of prescriptions such as the following, recommended for extracting bullets, or small shot, which cannot be got at with instruments: "Burn live Crayfish in a new Pipkin, till they are reducible to powder, but without burning them to ashes. With this powder Hare's suet is to be mixed and then placed on the wound."

*Copies.* B.M. (all).

862. Paris. 1623. Planis Campy, D. de.  
Traicté des playes faites par les mousquetades. Ensemble  
la vraye méthode de les guérir, avec la réfutation des erreurs,  
qui s'y commettent, tant en leur théorie, que pratique.

Sextodecimo.—Lib. Surg. Offic. U.S. Army.

863. Basileæ. 1634. Fabricius, Guilhelmus.  
Cista Militaris.

Octavo. 21 ff.

This is Pt. V. of the "Cheirurgia Militaris" (*J. J. Genath*). Sigs. continuous. An English translation of the "Cista Militaris", London, Printed by *W. Godbid*, and are to be sold by *Moses Pitt*, at the Angel in St. Paul's Churchyard. MDCLXXIV., 8°; reprinted in the 4th ed. of Paul Barbette's "Thesaurus Chirurgiæ", London, 1686, 8°.

Whilst on a visit to the fortified town of Morsk in the Low Countries in 1612, Fabricius was shown by the Governor of the place, the "Military Chest" of Maurice of Orange, consisting of Medicines, Instruments, Linen, Rollers, and other necessaries, which things, he says, were properly arranged in a room ready to be packed in the chests as required. Thus stored, these chests were carried with the army in the field for the purpose of providing for the immediate wants of the wounded, who, as soon as possible after an engagement, were carried to the nearest town, and there left under the care of Physicians and Surgeons appointed by the State.

*Copies.* B.M.

Medical. 864. [n. p.] 1634. Rhumelius, Joh. Pharamundus.  
Medicamenta militaria dogmatica, hermetica et magica.  
Das ist: Ausserlesene und experimentirte Kriegs Artzney, mit  
welchen ein Feld-oder Hand Apotecken aussgerüstet, und ein  
jeder Soldat auff den Nothfall (ihme selbst zu Nutz) versehen  
seyen solle.

Octodecimo.—Lib. Surg. Off. U.S. Army.

## MILITARY LAW AND ORDINANCES OF CHIVALRY.

865. Nàpoli. [1471.] Puteo, Paris de [Pozzo, Paride dal].  
*Begin:* Incomenza lo prologo allo libro de re militari in materno cōposto per . . . messer paris de puteo doctore de lege Lege [*sic*] feliciter. [Fol. 2:] Incomenza lo libro de li Ri e de li principi de la iusticia de le singolare baçtaglie duelli chiamati quale se fanno tra caualiere per dare iudicio de li ocurenti casi. *Sixtus Reissinger*.

Folio. 138 ff. without pag., sigs., or catchwords.

Eds.: Neapoli, 1518, 4° (Brunet); Venetia, 1521; ib., *G. de Gregoriis*, 1523; ib., *M. Sessa et P. de la Serena*, 1525; ib., *P. de N. da Sabbio*, 1536; ib., *Comin da Trino*, 1540, all 8<sup>os</sup>, and with title, "Duello, Libro de re etc." Span. trans.: Sevilla, *D. de Robertis*, 1544, fol. This is a different work from No. 500.

*Copies.* B.M. (all but ed. of 1518).

866. [Rome. 1475?] Cæpolla, Bartholomeus.  
B. C. verones<sup>is</sup>. . . . Ad insignē equitez . . . zacharium Triuisanum . . . de Impãtore Militū diligendo. Prohemii foeliciter Incipit.

Folio. 17 ff. without pag., sigs., or catchwords.

Eds.: see No. 500.

*Copies.* B.M.

867. Burgos. 1487. Alonzo de Cartagena, Bishop of Burgos.  
Doctrinal delos caualleros. *Maestre Fadrique Aleman*.

Folio. 4 ff., then A-T in 8<sup>s</sup>, and V (14 ff.).

On single combat. Taken from the Partides of Alfonso XV. of Castile, and from the statutes of the other Spanish provinces. Very rare.

*Copies.* B.M.

868. Bononie. 1489. Signorelus de Homodeis of Milan.  
*Begin:* Incipit solemnis disputatio . . . de precedentia doctoris vel militis cum additionibus dni Ludouici di bologninis de bononia . . . *Ugonis di rugeriis.*

Folio. 20 columns. (G2 recto—H1 verso).

Published by Ludovicus Bologninus in a collection of tracts. Reprinted in "Tractatus ex variis juris", etc., Lugduni, 1549, fol., vol. 12, and in Zilettus' "Tractatus Universi juris", Lugduni, 1584, fol., vol. 18.

*Copies.* B.M.

869. Taurini. 1525. Castillo, Diego de, called De Villa Sante.  
Tractatus de Duello. *Per Antonium Ranotum.*

Quarto. A-O in 4<sup>s</sup>.

Another ed.: see No. 500.

*Copies.* B.M.

870. Lugduni. 1539. Cotereau, Claude.  
De Jure et priuilegiis militum. *Apud Steph. Doletum.*

Folio. \*8, A-X in 6<sup>s</sup>.

Eds.: see No. 500. Fr. trans. by G. du Préau, Poitiers, 1549.—Thimm.

*Copies.* B.M.

871. Venetiis. 1544. Alciatus, Andreas.  
A. A. . . . de singulare certamine liber. Eiusdem consilium in materia Duelli excepto ex libro quinto Responsorum. His accessere duo consilia in eadem materia duelli M. Socini . . . antea impressa. *Vicentio Vaugris.*

Octavo. A-M4 in 8<sup>s</sup>.

This is Lord Burghley's copy, with his signature. "The 1st Latin ed.," says Ayala, p. 187, "is of Lione, 1544, *apud Jacobum Giuntum*, repeated in 1554 *apud A. Vincentium.*" But the Ded. to Francis I. is of 1529. Other eds.: in "Tractatus ex variis juris", etc., and in Zilettus' collection, Lugduni, 1584, fol. (see No. 500). Ital. trans.: [Venice], *V. Vaugris*, 1545,

8°; ib., *A. de Fortis*, 1545, 8°; ib., *Comin da Trino*, 1552, 8°. Span. trans.: Military Anvers, *M. Nucio* [1558?], 8°. Fr. trans.: Paris, *Gilles Corrozet*, 1550. Law and Another of the treatises of Alciatus is the "De Magistratibus . . . ac Ordinances of Chivalry. *militaribus officiis*", Basileæ, 1552.  
*Copies.* B.M. (all but 1st ed.).

872. Venetiis. 1544. Socinus, Marianus, the younger.  
Consilia duo in materia Duelli.  
Quarto.  
Published with the tract of Alciatus on the same subject. See No. 871.
873. Lugduni. 1549. Arias, Franciscus.  
De bello et ejus justitia.  
Folio.  
See No. 500.
874. Lugduni. 1549. Lanfranchini, Cristoforo.  
Clarissimi . . . C. L. . . . Tractatulus seu questio, Utrum  
preferendus sit doctor, an miles.  
Folio.  
See No. 500.
875. Lugduni. 1549. Legnano, Giovanni.  
Tractatus amenus de duello . . .  
Folio.  
See No. 500.
876. Lugduni. 1549. Lupus, Joannis.  
De bello et belloribus.  
Folio.  
See No. 500.
877. Lugduni. 1549. Mantova, Benavides Marco.  
De priuilegiis militum.  
Folio.  
See No. 500.

878. Lugduni. 1549. Laudensis, Martinus.  
De Castellanis & castris. De bello et ejus effectu. De  
milite et ejus privilegiis.

Three pts. ; pt. 1 begins fol. 117 ; pt. 2, fol. 167 ; pt. 3, fol. 244. Vol.  
12 of "Tractatus ex variis juris", etc. See No. 500.

879. Vinegia. 1551. Mutio, Geronimo (Giustinapolitano).  
Il Dvello . . . Di Nuouo corretto & ristampato. *Gabriel  
Giolito.*

Octavo. A-N in 8°.

Very rare. Eds.: Vinegia, *Giolito*, 1550, 1554, 1560, 1563, and 1564,  
and ib., *Farri*, 1566—all these from Zeno (Fontanini, ii. 369). Fourth ed.,  
with notes, Vinegia, 1558, 8°. Fr. trans.: Lyon, *G. Roville*, 1561, 4°.

Mutio was the great authority on all questions of honour. His study was  
to find means of settling disputes without the intervention of the sword.

*Copies.* B.M. (1551, 1558, 1561).

880. Vinegia. 1551. Mutio, Geronimo.  
Le Risposte Cavalleresche. *G. Giolito.*

Octavo. A-P in 8°; P8, blank.

Brought out with No. 879. For eds. see *ibid.* 4th ed. is dated 1559.

*Copies.* B.M.

881. Vinegia. 1553. Possevino, Giovanni Battista.  
Dialogo dell' honore *etc.* *G. Giolito.*

Quarto. \* 4, A-Z4 in 8°.

Edited by the author's brother, Antonio. Eds.: *ib.*, *ib.*, 1558, 4° (reissued  
1559 with new tp., and, at the end, Antonio's treatise on same subject); *ib.*,  
*ib.*, 1564, 8° (also with Antonio's treatise); *ib.*, *F. Sansovino*, 1568, 8°; *ib.*,  
*Rampazetti*, 1583, 8°; also *ib.*, 1556, 4° (Bod.).

*Copies.* B.M. (all); Bod. (1556).

882. Vinegia. 1554. Pigna, Giovanni Battista.  
Il dvello . . . Diviso in tre libri. Ne quali dell' honore,  
& dell' ordine della Caualleria con nuouo modo si tratta.  
*V. Valgrisi.*

Quarto. A2, A-Z, AA-BB in 4°.

Zeno gives another ed. of Vinegia, 1560, 8°. See Fontanini, ii. 368.

Copies. B.M.

Military  
Law and  
Ordinances  
of Chivalry.

883. Venetia. 1555. Massa, Antonio.  
Contra l'vso del dvello *etc.* *M. Tramezino.*

Ottavo. a, b4, A-K6 in 8°.

The Lat. orig. appeared in January of this year, and was reprinted in Vol. 12 of "Tractatus universi juris", 1584, fol.; and Tubingæ, 1620, 8°.

Copies. B.M. (1555 (Ital.), 1584, 1620).

884. Mantva. 1557. Mérode, Richard de.  
Givstificatione . . . intorno alla querella sua, co'l Signor  
Don Roderigo de Benauides. Dove insieme li Cartelli corsi  
fra loro, *etc.*

Quarto. A-Y in 4°.

Fr. trans.: Mantve, 1560, 4°, reprinted, Bruxelles, 1867, 4°, with an Introduction by Charles Ruelens concerning this celebrated quarrel, and a bibliography of the writers cited by de Mérode in support of his case [v. No. 885].

Copies. B.M. (1557, 1867).

885. Milano. 1558. Benavides, Rodrigo de.  
Manifesti . . . Con pareri de Illustrissimi et Excellen-  
tissimi Principi et Cauaglieri. Et consigli de Dottori Ec-  
cellenti sopra le arme ricusate per il S. Ricardo di Merode.

Quarto. A-Q, a-i in 4°.

The "Consigli dei Dottori" are in Latin [v. No. 884].

Copies. B.M.; Bod.

886. Vinegia. 1558. Susio, Giovanni Battista.  
I Tre Libri di . . . G. B. S. Della ingivstitia del dvello, e  
di coloro, che lo permettono. *Gabriel Giolito.*

Quarto. A-BB in 4°.

The Ded. bears date 18 January, 1555, that of the 1st ed., given by Fontanini. Massa's book in Latin on the same subject had come into Susio's hands on January 17, as he was about to send off his MS. to the printer.

Copies. B.M.

887. Valladolid. 1558. Alvarez, Antonio.  
Tractado sobre la ley dela partida, de lo que son obligados  
a hazer los buenos Alcaydes q̄ tienen a su cargo Fortalezas y  
Castillos fuertes etc. *F. Fernandez de Cordoua.*

Octavo. A-I in 8°.

Copies. B.M.

888. Vinegia. 1559. Fausto da Longiano, Sebastiano.  
Dvello . . . regolato a le leggi de l'honore. Con tvtti li  
cartelli missivi, e risposiui in querela volontaria . . . Ris-  
tampata Con un Discorso . . . e con dve risposte L'una ad vna  
scrittura consultata dal Mutio, l'altra ad vn consiglio de  
L'alciato giovane. *Rutilio Borgominiero.*

Octavo. 2 pts. with sep. tpp. A-X, A-C in 8°.

This ed. was sent out again next year with a new tp. First ed., Venezia,  
1552, 8°.—Fontanini.

The first "Risposta" is to Mutio's defence of de Mérode, published in the  
"Giustificazione" of the latter [v. No. 884].

Copies. B.M. (1559 and 1560).

889. Venetia. 1560. Mutio, Geronimo.  
La Favstina . . . Delle Arme Cavalleresche. *V. Valgrisi.*

Octavo. A-D in 8°.

A reply to the "Risposta" published by Fausto da Longiano in the 2nd  
ed. of his "Duello" [No. 888].

Copies. B.M.

890. [Venice?] 1560. Fausto da Longiano, Sebastiano.  
La Segonda Difesa . . . in risposta a la Favstina del  
Mvtio.

Octavo. A-F3 in 4°.

The first "Defence" is the reply to Mutio published in the "Duello"  
[No. 888].

Copies. B.M.

891. Venetia. 1560. Attendolo, Dario.  
Il dvello . . . Ne i qvali con ragioni legali, et con esempi



d'histoire ordinatamente si tratta, & si dichiara tutto quello che s'appartiene à questa materia, con molte cose degne di consideratione non auertite da gli altri, Con le autorità delle leggi . . . nel Margine. *Francesco Lorenzini.*

Military  
Law and  
Ordinances  
of Chivalry.

Octavo. a-c4, A-I4 in 8°.

This is the 1st ed. Others are: Vinegia, *Gioliti*, 1562, 8° (which is probably pirated); and ib., ib., 1565, 8°: "Nvovamente ristampato et . . . corretto . . . con la giunta d'un Discorso . . . da ridurre ogni querela alla pace", the author, in a new Ded., calling this the 2nd ed.; some copies of it were sent out with the date altered to 1564. The "Discorso" had appeared as a 2nd pt. to the ed. of 1562. In both eds. it has sep. tp. (dated 1562 and 1566), pag., and sigs., and a Ded. dated 1563. All the eds. are rare. Regarding Attendolo and his treatise, see Zeno, Fontanini, ii. 368.

*Copies.* B.M. (all).

892. Padoua. 1561. Mantova Benavides, Marco.

Dialogo brieve et distinto, nelqvale si ragiona del dvello, . . . d'autore incerto . . . et appresso sonoui aggiunte alcune Rime dello istesso autore *etc.* *Gratioso Perchacino.*

Quarto. A-N in 4°; N4, blank.

The author was identified through the sonnets.

*Copies.* B.M.

893. Venetiis. 1563. Belli, Pietrino.

De re militari et bello. Tractatus divisus in partes XV.

Octavo.—Ayala.

Another ed.: v. No. 500.

894. Venegia. 1566. Ximenez de Urrea, Geronymo.

Dialogo de la verdadera honrra militar, que tracta como se ha de conformar la honrra con la conscientia. *Ioan Griso.*

Quarto. \*, A-KK3 in 4°.

Eds.: Zaragoza, *D. Dormer*, 1642, 8° (the 4th). Ital. trans. by A. Ulloa, Venetia, *Gli heredi di M. di Sessa*, 1569, 8°.

*Copies.* B.M. (1566, 1569, 1642).

895. Basileæ. 1578. Acquaviva, Belisario, Duke of Nardo.  
Aliquot aurei libelli de principum liberis educandis, de  
venatione, de aucupio, de re militari, de singulari certamine.  
—Ayala.
896. Fiorenza. 1580. Bocchi, Francesco.  
Discorso . . . Sopra la lite delle Armi, & delle Lettere ;  
et à cui si dee il primo luogo di nobiltà attribuire. *G. Matescotti.*  
Octavo. A and B in 8°. *Copies.* B.M.
897. Duaci. 1582. Ayala, Balthazar.  
B. A. . . . De ivre et officiis bellicis ac disciplina militari,  
Libri III. *Ex Officina Ioannis Bogardi.*  
Octavo. ā, A-Z, a-f4 in 8°. *Other eds.* : Antverpiæ, *M. Nutius*, 1597, 8° ; Lovanii, 1648, 12°.—Ayala.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1582, 1597).
898. Roma. 1583. Albergati, Fabio.  
Trattato di F. A. . . . Del Modo di ridvrre a Pace l'ini-  
micitie private. *Francesco Zannetti.*  
Folio. In 4 bks. \*, A-MM2, NN and OO6 in 4°; OO6, blank.  
Very rare. 2nd ed., Bergamo, *C. Ventura & Compagni*, 1587, 4°; and  
collected ed., Roma, 1664, 4°. Terza Impressione . . . Riveduto &  
Accresciuto, Venetia, *G. Violati*, 1614, 8°. *Copies.* B.M. (all).
899. Venetiis. 1584. Legnano, Giovanni.  
Traçtatus de Bello.  
Folio.  
See No. 500.
900. Lyon. 1589. Loque, B. de.  
Deux traitez l'un de la guerre, l'autre du duel. *I. Ratoyre.*

Octavo. 2 pts. with sep. tpp. A-D7, A-G4 in 8°.

Brunet had seen a notice in the La Vallière Catalogue of an ed. with the date 1588, without the place of printing.

Copies. B.M. (1589).

Military  
Law and  
Ordinances  
of Chivalry.

901. Vilna. 1589. Mora, Domenico.

Il cavaliere in Risposta del gentil'huomo del . . . Mvtio . . . ,  
nella precedenza Del armi et delle lettere. *Danielle Lanciense.*

Quarto. A-SS in 4°.

Mutio in his "Gentilhuomo" (Venetia, 1571, 4°) had given the precedence to letters.

Copies. B.M.

902. Lugduni Batavorum. 1589. Gentilis, Alberico.

De Jvre belli. Commentationes duæ. *Johann de la Croy.*

Quarto. A-G2, A-K, A-N2 in 4°. 3 pts. Ded. to Essex.

The Third Part bears the imprint "Londoni apud Iohannem Wolfium. 1589." From the identity of the type and style of printing it would seem that the three parts were from the same press, and that Wolfe was merely the seller. Eds.: Hanoviæ, G. Antonius, 1598, 8°; ib., *Hæredes G. A.*, 1612, 8°; Oxoniæ, 1877, 4°; also, Anversa, 1590, and Naples, 1770.—Ayala. Exiled on account of his religious views, Gentilis became a professor at Oxford. Grotius quotes extensively from him.

Copies. B.M. (1589, 1598, 1612).

903. Tubingæ. 1591. Bocer, Henricus.

De Jvre Pvgnæ, hoc est, Belli & duelli, etc. *G. Gruppenbach.*

Quarto. ):6, A-DD2 in 4°.

Another ed.: Nunc tertius reformatus, ib., *J. A. Cellius*, 1616, 8°. Thimm gives the 2nd ed., ib., 1607.

Copies. B.M. (1591, 1616).

904. Romæ. 1592. Possevino, Antonio the Elder.

A. P. . . . Iudicium De Nuæ militis Galli Scriptis, quæ ille  
Discursus Politicos, & Militares inscripsit. etc. *Dominicus Basa.*

Octavo. \*4, A-M in 8°.

This is the first of four treatises on various subjects. Ed.: Lugduni, *J. B. Buysson*, 1594, 8°.

Copies. B.M.

905. Lisboa. 1598. Scarion de Pavía.  
Doctrina militar. En la cual se trata de los principios y causas porque fué hallada en el mundo la milicia.  
Oftavo.  
Bod. Lib. Cat.
906. Paris. 1598. Joly, Guillaume.  
Traicté de la jstice militaire de France. *A. Langellier.*  
Oftavo. ā, ē, ī, ōz, A-T6 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.
907. Paris. 1600. Fauchet, Claude.  
Origines des chevaliers, armoires, et heravx. Ensemble de l'Ordonnance, Armes, & Instruments desquels les François ont anciennement usé en leurs Guerres. *Jeremie Perier.*  
Oftavo. ā4, A-H4 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
Second ed.: ib., ib., 1606, 8<sup>o</sup>; another, in "Les Antiquitez et Histoires Gauloises et Françoises" of the same author, Geneva, *P. Marceau*, 1611, 4<sup>o</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1600, 1606); Bod. (1611).
908. Cassel. 1601. Dilich, Wilhelm.  
Beschreibung und Abriss dero Ritterspiel so . . . Moritz Landgraff zu Hessen etc auff die Furstliche Kindtauffen Frewlein Elizabethen etc. *Wilhelm Wessel.*  
Folio. 174 ff., containing 81 + 56 pp. of letterpress (including half-titles) numbered; the rest copperplates.  
*Copies.* B.M.
909. Venetia. 1603. Olevano, Gio. Battista.  
Trattato . . . Nel quale co'l mezo di cinquanta Casi vien posta in atto pratico il modo di ridurre à pace ogni sorte di priuata inimicitia, nata per cagio d' Honore etc. *Giacobo Ant: Somascho.*  
Quarto. 2 pts. a-f, A-O, a, b2, A-P2 in 4<sup>s</sup>.  
Other eds.: ib., ib., 1605, 8<sup>o</sup>, with supplement; Milano, 1620, 8<sup>o</sup>.—  
Fontanini. Ayala has the misprint, 1520, for 1620.  
*Copies.* B.M. (1603, 1605).

910. Francoforti. 1607. Acacius, Georgius.  
De privilegiis militum et militiae. 2 libb.

Quarto.  
Bod. Lib. Cat.

Military  
Law and  
Ordinances  
of Chivalry.

911. Milano. 1609. Soranzo, Giovanni.  
L'idea del cavaliero.

Octavo.—Ayala.

912. Paris. 1611. Dupleix, Scipion.  
Les Loix militaires touchant le duel . . . Edition II.  
reueuë, illustrée & augmentée par l'Auteur. *F. Gueffier.*

Octavo. a, A-LL7 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
1st ed.: Paris, 1602, 4<sup>o</sup> (Bod.).  
*Copies.* B.M. (1611); Bod. (1602).

913. Valladolid. 1614. Nuñez de Velasco.  
Dialogos de contencion entre la milicia y la Ciencia: *etc.*  
*Iuan Godinez de Millis.*

Quarto. \*, \*\*, ¶, A-DDD in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.

914. Venetiis. 1614. Peregrinus, Alexander.  
Tractatus de dvello. In quo quicquid ab vtroque Jure, à  
Sacro Concilio Tridentino, à Summis Pontificibus de Duello  
sancitum est, præcipuè verò Constitutio Clementis VIII  
Pontif. Maximi [dated 17 August, 1592] . . . explicatur.  
*Pietro Dusinelli.*

Octavo. †8, ††6, A-P4 in 8<sup>s</sup>.  
*Copies.* B.M.

915. Genova. 1619. Gaiani, Gio. Battista.  
Discorso del torneare a piedi.

Quarto.—Ayala, p. 198.

916. Bologna. 1623. Baldi, Camillo.  
Delle mentite et offese di parole. Come possino accom-  
modarsi etc. *Theodoro Mascheroni, & Clemente Ferroni.*

Ottavo. a, A-Z4 in 8°.

Edited by Vincenzo Raineri. Second ed., "accreciuto e corretto", with  
a second work by Baldi, entitled "Considerationi . . . Sopra la materia delle  
mentite:" Venetia, *B. Fontana*, 1633, 4°.

*Copies.* B.M.

917. Parisiis. 1625. Groot, Hugo de, called Grotius.  
De jure belli ac pacis. *Nicolaus Bvon.*

Quarto. ã6, ã, î, ð, A-3rd S, 4th A-5th Q in 4°.

Eds.: Editio Secunda, Amsterdam, *G. Bleau*, 1631, fol.; Amsterdam,  
1651, 1667, 1689, 1702, 1712, 1720 (two), 1735, 8°; Hagæ Comitum, 1680,  
8°; Ultrajecti, 1695-1700-1703 (3 pts.), fol.; Wratislaviæ, 1744-47, fol.;  
Lausanne, 1751-52, 4°; Cambridge, 1853, fol.

Eng. trans.: *London, Printed by T. Warren, for William Lee, . . . MD.C.LIV.*;  
ib., *M. W. for T. Basset & Ralph Smith*, 1682, fol. (trans. by W. Evats, B.D.);  
ib., *D. Brown*, 1715, 8° (edited by J. Morrice); ib., *For W. Innys*, etc., 1738,  
fol.; Cambridge, 1853, fol. (abridged). Fr. trans.: Paris, 1687, 4°; Am-  
sterdam, 1724 and 1729, and Basle, 1746, 4°; Leide, 1759, 4°; Paris, 1867,  
8°. Ger. trans.: 1868, 8°.

*Copies.* B.M. (all but Fr. of 1759); Bod. (1759).

918. Bologna. 1627. Pistofilo, Bonaventura.  
Il Torneo. *Clemente Ferroni.*

Quarto. Engraved tp. and portrait of author; then, a, b, A-ZZZ6 in 4°,  
including 117 copperplates, numbered, and 4 pp. of drum music.

Colophon dated 1626. This is probably the ed. of 1626, mentioned by  
Ayala, sent out with a new title-page. All the law of the tournament is  
comprised in this book. The plates represent knights in armour.

*Copies.* B.M.; Ashburnham.

919. Roma. 1627.  
Capitoli e leggi per i soldati delle milizie dello stato  
ecclesiastico.

—Ayala.

## MISCELLANEOUS.

920. Vinegia. 1560. Nannini, Remigio (Fiorentino).  
Orationi militari. Raccolte . . . da tvtti gli historici greci e latini, antichi e moderni. Con gli argomenti, che dichiarono l'occasioni, per le qvali elle furono fatte. Con gli effetti, in questa seconda editione, che elle fecero ne gli animi di coloro, che l'ascoltarono *etc.* *Gabriel Giolito.*

Quarto. a-c4, A-RRR6 in 8°.

Pref. dated 1557. Reprinted, *ib.*, G. A. Bertano, 1585, 4°.

Copies. B.M.

921. Venetijs. 1569. Mercurialis, Hieronymus.  
Artis Gymnasticæ apud antiquos celeberrimæ, nostris temporibus ignoratæ, Libri sex. *Apud Iuntas.*

Quarto. †, ††, †††4, A-P in 8°. 1 cut only (folding).

Eds.: 2nd, 3rd, and 4th, *ib.*, *ib.*, 1573, 1587, and 1601, 4<sup>th</sup>; all with fine, large cuts; Parisiis, *J. du Puy*, 1577, 4° (Secunda editione. Pref. dated 1573, perhaps the year of the 1st ed. of this place), with same designs; Amstelodami, 1672, 4°; and in Poleni's "Utriusque . . . Thesauri . . . Supplementa", 1737, fol. Eng. trans.: London, 1864, 8°; Italian trans.: 1884, 8°.

Copies. B.M. (all); Bod. (1573, 1672).

922. Fiorenza. 1573. Bocchi, Francesco.  
Discorso . . . A chi de' maggiori Guerrieri, che infino à questo tempo sono stati, si dee la maggioranza attribuire.  
*Giorgio Marescotti.*

Quarto. A-R in 4°.

Prof. dated 1572. The preference is given to Cæsar, as uniting military, with oratorical genius.

*Copies.* B.M.

923. [Antwerp?] 1581. Bruyn, Abraham de.  
Omnium pene Europæ, Asiæ, Africæ atque Americæ . . .  
gentium habitus. *etc.* *Abraham de Bruyn Excudit.*

Oblong Folio. Engraved tp. Prof. in Lat., Fr., and Ger. (1 p.). No text. Copperplates numbered 1-58, and 1-17; also 2 unnumbered plates, and 3 numbered 28. Half-title to pt. 2.

Another copy in B.M. has leaves folded again and bound in quarto form. It has the addition of a frontispiece, but is without the 2 unnumbered plates. Reprinted, Bruxelles, 1872, fol., under the title, "Costumes Civils & Militaires."

*Copies.* B.M. (1581, 1872).

924. Madrid. 1599. Vargas Machuca, Bernardo de.  
Milicia y descripcion de las Indias. *Pedro Madrigal.*

Quarto. §, §§, A-CC in 8<sup>a</sup>. Col. on CC7, tailpiece on CC8.

Imprimatur dated 1597 and 1598.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

925. Noribergæ. 1600. Gentilis, Scipio.  
Orationes . . . rectorales . . . I. Pro C. Cæsare. II. De  
Re Militari Romana et Tyrca. III. De Lege Regia.  
Addita & Ediçta. *Paul Kauffmann.*

Octavo. A-L4 in 8<sup>a</sup>.

*Copies.* B.M.

926. Parisiis. 1601. Boulenger, Julius Cæsar.  
J. C. B. Liber de spoliis bellicis, trophæis, arcubus tri-  
umphalibus, & pompa triumphii. *Barth: Macé.*

Octavo. ā, ē2, A-M7 in 8<sup>a</sup>.

See also Gronovius' "Thesaurus Græcarum Antiquitate", vol. ii., 1697, fol.

*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.



927. Lutetiæ. 1601. Rigault, Nicolas.

Miscellane-  
ous.

N. R. Glossarium τακτικὸν μιξοβαρβαρον. De verborvm significatione, quæ ad novellas Impp. qui in Oriente post Justinianum regnaverunt, de re militari Constitutiones pertinent. *Claude Morel.*

Quarto. ā, ē, A-Z, AA-FF3 in 4<sup>o</sup>.

The copyright was shared by Ambroise Drouart, who sent out his copies of this ed. simultaneously, with his own imprint on tp.

*Copies.* B.M. (Morel and Drouart); Bod.

928. Oeniponti. 1601. Schrenck von Nozing, Jacob.

Avgvstissimorum imperatorvm . . . regvm atqve archidvcum . . . principum . . . Nobilium, aliorumq; clarissimorum virorum, qui aut ipsi cum imperio bellorum Duces fuerunt, aut in iisdem præfecturis insignioribus laudabiliter functi sunt, verissimæ imagines, & rerum ab ipsis domi, forisq; gestarum succinctæ descriptiones *etc.* *Ioannes Agricola.*

Folio. Tp., Frontisp., Pref., and Verses (4 ff.). 125 portraits.

The portraits have biographical notices on back. 2nd ed., in Germ., Unszprugg, *D. Baur*, 1603, fol. 3rd ed., with reduced copies of portraits, Noribergæ, 1735, 4<sup>o</sup>. An incomplete copy of fol. ed. in Royal Lib. at Dresden with Lat. tp. dated 1591, having only 57 plates, the backs blank. Contains the finest plates of armour in existence.

*Copies.* B.M. (1601, 1603 (two), 1735).

929. Lisboa. 1630. Freyre, Antonio.

Primor e honra da vida soldadesca no Estado da India. *etc.*  
*Iorge Rodrigues.*

Quarto. ¶, A4, B-R in 8<sup>s</sup>, AA-PP6 in 4<sup>s</sup>.

*Copies.* B.M.

930. Rome. 1637. Naudé, Gabriel de.

Syntagma de Studio Militari.

Quarto.

Part of this essay was reprinted by Schubert, Jena, 1683, 12<sup>o</sup>. Reprinted again and annotated by Crenius, "De eruditione", Art. 14. See Pref.

*Copies.* R.U.S.I. (1637); Bod. (1637); B.M. (1683).

## PYROTECHNICS.

931. Venetia. 1540. Biringuccio, Vanuccio.

De la Pirotechnia libri X., dove ampiamente si tratta . . .  
d'ogni sorte et diversita di miniere *etc.* *Venturino Rossinello*  
*ad instantia di C. Navo & Fratelli.*

Quarto. \*, A-X in 8<sup>s</sup>, including woodcuts.

Eds.: *ib.*, *ib.*, 1550 and 1558, 4<sup>os</sup> (col. of latter dated 1590), both with cuts of 1st ed.; *ib.*, *P. G. Giglio*, 1559, 8<sup>o</sup>; Bologna, 1668—Ayala; Bologna, 1678, 8<sup>o</sup>. Fr. trans.: Paris, *C. Fremy*, 1556 and 1572, 4<sup>os</sup>; Rouen, *I. Cailloüe*, 1627, 4<sup>o</sup>; all with Rossinelli's cuts reproduced. The octavo eds. of orig. have smaller and inferior cuts with the designs reversed.

*Copies.* B.M. (all but 1668); Bod. (1559).

932. Franckfurt am Main. 1557. Fronsperger, Leonhard.

Vonn Geschütz unnd Fewrwerck, wie dasselb zuwerffen  
und schiessen . . . Das ander Buch. Vonn Erbauung,  
Erhaltung, besatzung und profantierung der wehrlichen Be-  
vestungen *etc.* *David Zepbel.*

Folio. A-L4 in 6<sup>s</sup>.

Another ed.: Franckfurt am Mayn, *J. Lechler In verlegung S. Feyerabendt*, 1564, fol. Reprinted in collected works, see No. 531.

*Copies.* B.M.

933. Chaumõt. 1598. Boillot, Joseph.

Modelles artifices de fev, et divers instrvmēs de gverre,  
avec les moyēs de s'en prevaloir: Pour assieger, battre, sur-  
prendre et deffendre toutes places. *etc.* *Quentin Mareschal.*

Quarto. \* 2, A-S3 in 6<sup>s</sup>, including 91 copperplates.

The first book printed at Chaumont. German trans. by J. Brantz, Pyrotech-  
Strassburg, *Antonius Bertram*, 1605, fol., with same plates, numbered, and nics.  
title in Fr. and Ger.

*Copies.* B.M. (1598, 1605); Bod. (1598); Roy. Art. Inst. (1598);  
W.O. (1605).

934. Nürnberg. 1608. Schmidlap, Johann.  
Kunstliche und rechtschaffene Feuerwerck zum schimpff,  
vormals im Druck nie aussgangen *etc.* *P. Kauffmann.*

Octavo. A-K<sub>4</sub> in 8<sup>s</sup>, with woodcuts.

*Copies.* B.M.

935. [Francofurti.] 1611. Romano, Adriano.  
Pyrotechnia hoc est de ignibvs festivis, jocosis, artificialibvs  
et seriis variisque eorum structuris. Libri duo. Ex scriptoribus  
Latinis, Italis et Germanis collecti *etc.* *In Officina Paltheniana.*

Quarto. )(2, A-I<sub>2</sub> and K<sub>2</sub> in 4<sup>s</sup>.

*Copies.* B.M.

936. Amsterdam. 1624. Schmidlap, Johann.  
Pyrotechnia.

Cat. Lib. Manuscriptorum (Oxonizæ, 1697, fol., p. 311).

937. Pont-a-Mousson. 1620. Thybourel, François, and Appier,  
Jean (*called* Hanzelet).

Recevil de plusieurs Machines Militaires et feux Artificiels  
pour la Guerre et Recreation. *Charles Marchant.*

Quarto. 5 pts. with sep. tpp., etc. ã, A-L<sub>4</sub>, A-E, A-C, A-O, \*2, A-E  
in 4<sup>s</sup>, including copperplates.

*Copies.* B.M.

938. Pont-a-Mousson. 1630. Appier, Jean (*called* Hanzelet).  
La Pyrotechnie . . . ou sont representez les plus rares et  
plus appreuvez secrets des machines et des feux artificiels

Pyrotech-  
nics.

propres pour assieger, battre, surprendre et deffendre toutes places. *Gaspard Bernard.*

Quarto. a, A-K in 4<sup>s</sup>, including copperplates.

This is Appier's part of the preceding work recast. Some of the illustrations are from the same plates.

*Copies.* B.M.

939. Paris. 1633. Malthus, Francis.

Traite des Fevx artificiels povr la Guerre et pour la Récréation, avec plusieurs belles obseruations, abregez de Geometrie, Fortifications *etc.* De nouveau reueu et augmenté. *P. Guillemot.*

Octavo. A-R3 in 8<sup>s</sup>, with copperplates.

The 1st ed. must have appeared in or before 1629 [v. No. 118].

*Copies.* B.M.

## TOPOGRAPHY.

940. Brescia. 1584. Cataneo, Girolamo.

Dell' arte del misvrare libri dve, nel primo de' qvali s'insegna a misvrare, e partir' i campi. Nel secondo a misvrar le mvragle etc. *Pietro Maria Marchetti.*

Quarto. 2 pts.

The 2nd pt. is of no military interest. Posthumously printed, at the same time with the "Arte Militare Libri cinque", by Marchetti, who thus made a collection of the military works of Cataneo, complete except for the "Arte di fare le armi et i fucili" (No. 837). See No. 542.

*Copies.* B.M.

941. Roma. 1586. Orsini, Latino.

Trattato del radio latino. Istrumento . . . per prendere qual si voglia misura, & positione di luogo, tanto in Cielo come in Terra . . . Con li Commentarij del Reuerendo Padre Egnatio Danti . . . & da esso di nuouo ricoretto, & ampliato con molte nuoue operationi. *Marc' Ant: Moretti.*

Ottavo. †, A-F in 8<sup>s</sup>, H and G in 4<sup>s</sup>, with woodcuts.

I believe this to be the 3rd ed., the 1st being that of Rome, *V. Accolti*, 1583 (which is the date of Danti's pref.), as given by Ayala; and the 2nd, one of 1585, referred to in the printer's pref. to the ed. of 1586.

*Copies.* B.M. (1586).

942. Napoli. 1595. Romano, Bartholomeo.

Proteo militare . . . Diviso in tre Libri. Nel primo si descrive la fabrica di detto Proteo, & in esso nuouo Istrumento, tutti gli altri Istrumenti di Matematica che imaginar si

possono. Nel secondo, e terzo si tratta dell' uso di detto Istrumento *etc.* *G. I. Carlino & A. Pace.*

Quarto. \*, \*\*, A-AA in 4<sup>s</sup>, including woodcuts.  
*Copies.* B.M.; Bod.

943. Zurich. 1602. Eberhart, Philip, and Zubler, Leonhard.  
Kurtzer und gruntlicher Bericht von dem Neūwen Geometrischen Instrument oder Triangel . . . allen Fåldobersten / Bũchsenmeisteren auch Bauwmeisteren / unnd anderen kunstliebenden zu gutem beschriben *etc.*

Quarto. A-E1 in 4<sup>s</sup>, including plates. 2 folding plates.

All these tracts by Zubler and Eberhart (Nos. 947, 948, 949, 950) have good and interesting plates, great attention being shown to the costume of the figures. They treat of instruments useful for certain military purposes, such as finding ranges.

*Copies.* B.M.

944. Roma. 1603. Pomodoro, Giovanni.

Geometria pratica dichiarata da Giovanni Scala . . . Sopra le tauole dell' . . . C. P. . . . Opera per Generali da guerra Capitani Architetti Bombardieri e Ingegneri Cosmografi *etc.*  
*Nuoamente ristampato Giouanni Martinelli.*

Folio. a2, A-N6 in 4<sup>s</sup>, including copperplates, numbered 1-43, 1-7.

Date of colophon is 1590; only the tp. and Ded. appear to have been printed in 1603, the rest being of the 1st ed. Another ed., Roma, *A. Ruffinelli*, 1624, fol., with new Ded. by the printer.

*Copies.* B.M. (1603, 1624).

945. Franckfurt am Mayn. 1604, 1603. Hulsius, Levinus.

Erster Tractat der Mechanischen Instrumenten . . . [Ander Tractat . . . Grundlicher unterricht dess newen Bũchsen-Quadrants / wie derselbe / das grosse Geschũts / bey Tag oder bey Nacht zu richten / gebraucht sol werden *etc.*] [Dritter Tractat *etc.*] *Wolfgang Richter.*

Quarto. 3 pts., each with sep. tp., etc. A-Q, A-C3, A-D3 in 4<sup>s</sup>. 16 woodcuts besides those in text.

The First Part is dated 1604 on the tp. and 1603 in the Ded. Lat. trans.:

ib., ib., 1605, 4°. Of the fifteen tracts planned, only four were published, Topo-  
Hulsius dying in 1606. The B.M. has a copy of the "Vierdter Tractat", graphy.  
Frankfurt, 1615, the Pref. dated 1604. Parts V., VII., X., and XV. were  
to have treated of the application of mechanics to military purposes. Hulsius  
well understood the uses of bibliography, for to the "Erster Tractat" he  
prefixed the list of works, twenty of them military, consulted in compiling  
the three parts; which list he was to have reinforced by two more in Parts  
XIII. and XIV.

*Copies.* B.M.

946. Roma. 1605. Fiamelli, Francesco.

La riga matematica, dove si tratta del misurare con la vista  
di lontano senza strumenti, cioè con una sola riga, et levar  
piante di città, di eserciti, d'armate di mare e profondità di  
fiumi. S'insegna ancora adoperare gli strumenti di piu sorti  
con la composizione d'un nuovo strumento, il quale serve per  
tutti gli strumenti . . .

Quarto.  
—Ayala.

947. Basel. 1607. Zubler, Leonhard.

Novvm Instrvmentvm Geometricvm: Das ist Kurtzer und  
grundtlicher Bericht / alle Weite / Breite / Höhe und Tieffe /  
mit sonderbarem Vorthail / kunstlichen und gewiss / auch /  
von der Arithmetic unerfahrenen abzumessen: *etc.* L. König.

Quarto. A-I6 in 4<sup>s</sup>, including 20 copperplates.  
Another ed.: ib., ib., 1614, 4°. Lat. trans.: [Basle], L. Regis, 1607, 4°.  
All with same plates.  
*Copies.* B.M.

948. Zurich. 1608. Zubler, Leonhard.

[Die Geometrische Büchsenmeisterey.]

Quarto. A6, B-N in 4<sup>s</sup>, including 23 copperplates.  
3 pts. The B.M. copy of this ed. wants the tp. Another ed.: [Zurich?]  
1614, 4°, with the title, "Nova Geometrica Pyrobolia. Neuwe Geometrische  
Buchsenmeisterey" [*sic*], with same plates.  
*Copies.* B.M.

Topo-  
graphy.

949. Basel. 1614. Zubler, Leonard.

Novvm Instrumentum Geometricum : Das ist Neue Plani-  
metrische Beschreibung : etc. *Ludwig König.*

Quarto. A-F2 in 4<sup>s</sup>, including 13 copperplates.

Lat. trans. : [Basle], *L. Regis*, 1607, with same plates.

*Copies.* B.M.

950. Zurich. 1616. Eberhart, Philip.

Einfalte und grundtliche Erklehrung dreyer Fürnemmer  
Matematischen kunststucken/ zû den Sonnenuhren/ Visier-  
und Feldmessungen gehörig : Auf besondere kriegs Instru-  
ment/ als Regimentstab/ Musquetengabeln und dergleichen  
aufgetragen und zügerichtet. *Joh: Rudolf Wolff.*

Quarto. 6 ff., with 3 copperplates.

It. trans. : Zurich, 1618, 4<sup>o</sup>, with same plates.

*Copies.* B.M.





## ADDENDA.

1. Paris. 1573. Saint Didier, Henri.

Traicte contenant les secrets dv premier livre svr l'espee sevre, mere de tovttes armes, Qui sont espée dague, cappe, targue, bouclier, rondelle, l'espée deux mains & les deux espées, avec ses pourtraictures, ayans les armes au poing pour se deffendre & offencer à vn mesme temps des coups qu'on peut tirer, tant en assillant qu'en deffendant, fort vtile & profitable pour adextrer la noblesse, & suposts de Mars: redigé par art, ordre & pratique. *Imprimé par Jean Mettayer & Matthurin Challenge et se vend chez Jean Dalier.*

Quarto. Large paper. A-BB6 in 4°, including woodcut figures, numbered 1-128 (two to a block), and two portraits of author, in duplicate (E1, E2, BB4, BB5); one of these occurring a third time separately, as frontispiece. BB6 blank.

The B.M. copy is imperfect, wanting fol. L3.

*Copies.* B.M.

2. Lengres. 1588. Tabourot, Jehan, *otherwise* Arbeau, Thoinot.

Orchesographie [et traicte en forme de dialogue, par lequel tovttes personnes peuvvent facilement apprendre & pratiquer l'honneste exercice des dances. *Jehan despreyze.*]

Quarto. A-Z, a-c in 4°, with woodcuts, and many pages of drum and fife music.

The B.M. copy wants the tp.

Thimm gives an ed., ib., ib., 1596, 4°. Reprinted, Paris, 1888, 4°, with introduction.

The treatise begins with an important passage on military marches, with very minute explanations, accompanied by the notation.

*Copies.* B.M.

3. Paris. 1608. La Beraudière, Marc de.

Le Combat de sevl a sevl en camp clos: *etc.* *Abel L'Angellier.*

Quarto. ā, ēz, A-LL in 4°.

*Copies.* B.M.

4. Paris. 1617. Audiguier, Vital d'.  
 Le vray et ancien vsage des dvcls, *etc.* *Pierre Billaine.*  
 Octavo. ā, ē, A-OO in 8°. *Gives an account of some famous single combats.*  
*Copies.* B.M.
5. Leyde. 1628. Thibault, Girard.  
 Academie de l'espée . . . ou se demonstre Par Reigles Mathematiques sur le fondement d'un Cercle mysterieux la Theorie et Pratique des vrais et iusqu'a present incognus secrets Du Maniement Des Armes a pied et a cheval. *Elzevir.*  
 Large folio. No sigs. 4 ff. of preliminary matter and 10 preliminary plates, besides engraved tp. Text divided into 33 + 13 "Tableaux," containing 290 ff. of letterpress, and 33 + 14 double plates.  
 The Priv. from the King of France is dated 1620. The copy described by Brunet seems to have wanted the last leaf, which contains the Elzevirs' Col., dated 1630, and an "Advertisement" to the effect that the death of the author had retarded the publication and prevented the addition of the Second Part ("Sur le Maniement des Armes a Cheval).  
*Copies.* B.M.
6. Messina. 1629. Ansalone, Antonino.  
 Il Cavaliere . . . Descritto in tre Libri, Nel primo de' qvali si ragiona delle Preminenze, che hanno ottenuto i Cauallieri: Nel secondo de' givochi, che tanto a cauallo, quanto a piede esercitar si possono: Nel terzo del modo, come si debba comparire regli spettacoli, *etc.* *Pietro Brea.*  
 Quarto. \*, \*\*, A-G2, H-S2, T-Z in 4°, including 3 copperplates.  
*Copies.* B.M.

## TREATISES NOT TECHNICAL.

7. Paris. 1610. Savaron, Jean.  
 Traicte de l'Espée Françoise. *A. Perier.*  
 Octavo. A-D4 in 8°.
8. Cambridge. 1624. Chevalier, Guillaume de.  
 The Ghosts of the deceased Sievrs de Villemor and de Fontaines. A . . . Discourse of Duells, *etc.* *Cantrell Legge.*

Octavo. •9, A-K4 in 8°. 3rd ed. Translated by Tho. Heigham. 3rd ed. of orig., Paris, *I. Berjon*, 1610, 8°.

9. London. 1632. *Espagne, Jean d'* (Pastor of the French Church in London).

Anti-dvello . . . wherein is . . . handled, whether a Christian Magistrate may lawfully grant a duel *etc.* *T. Harper for B. Fisher.*

Quarto. A-I in 4°. Reissued the same year with new tp., having neither author's name nor Ded.

10. Hildesheim. 1637. *Salge, Johann.*  
*Exercitii Militaris etc.* *J. Gössel.*

Quarto. A-G in 4°.  
A religious tract.

## EDITIONS.

*Birago, Francesco.* [No. 729.]

This book belongs properly to the section, "Ordinances of Chivalry." There is a 2nd ed. of Milano, *G. B. Bidelli*, 1628, mentioned in Gessi's "Spada di Honore", Bologna, 1672, 8°.

*Cavalcabo, H. (of Bologna).* [No. 759.]

Thimm gives an ed. of de Villamont's Fr. trans., Rouen, *Claude le Villain*, 1609, 12°.

*Fabris, Salvator.* [No. 754.]

Thimm (like Ayala) gives eds. of Padova, *Tozzi*, 1624; Neurenberg, 1617 (in Ger.); also, Leipzig, 1677, 4° (Ital. and Ger.).

*Silver, George.* [No. 69.]

The "Paradoxes" was reprinted, London, *Chiswick Press*, 1898, 4°, with an Introduction by C. G. R. Matthey, and with the addition of the "Brief Instructions" of the same author, printed for the first time from the MS. in the British Museum.

*Della Valle, Battista.* [No. 765.]

The work by Leonardo Fortis in modern Greek verse, mentioned by Naudé (entitled, "Poema Novum . . . de re militari", Vineggia, *P. Rauano della Serena*, 1531, 8°; woodcuts), is believed by Promis to be a translation of Della Valle, and is said to have his woodcuts. It is very rare. The above title, etc., is from a bookseller's catalogue, London, July, 1900.





## INDEX.

The arabic figures refer to the number of the book ; the roman, to the pagination of the preliminary matter. Running headlines of English books are indexed where they differ from the title-page. They are printed in italics. Names of English printers are also printed in italics. Titles of foreign books (unless published anonymously) and names of foreign printers are not indexed.

- A. B.* *v.* *Allen, B.*  
*A B C of Arms.* *v.* *Drill*—*T. J.*  
*A. E.* *v.* *Aggas, E.*  
*Absolute Souldier,* 62. *v.* *Miscell.*  
*Acacius, G.* 910.  
*Achesone, J.,* 120. *v.* *Art Mil.*  
*Aconzio, G.,* 786; mentioned, xxvii.  
*Acquaviva, B., Duke of Nardo.* 895.  
*Actions of the Lowe Countries.* *v.* *Hist.*—*Williams.*  
*Adamson, T.* Alluded to, 25.  
*Adriano, A.* 535.  
*Advice of that Worthy Commander.* *v.* *Invasion*—*Harwood.*  
*Ælianus Tacticus,* 88; mentioned, xviii, xix, xxvii, xxxiii, xxxiv, xxxv, xxxvii, 3.  
*Æneas Tacticus.* Mentioned, xvii, xxxiii, xxxiv, xxxix, 13, 87.  
*Agapitus, Justinian.* 545.  
*Aggas, E.,* 37, 53. *v.* *Translators*—*Ordinances.*  
*Agocchie, G.* 747.  
*Agrippa, C.* 558, 745, 748.  
*Aguilar, P. de.* 714.  
*Ajello d' Ajello Santo.* 682.  
*Alaba y Viamont, D. de,* 566, 665; mentioned, xi, xx.
- Albergati, F.* 898.  
*Alberini, C.* 722.  
*Alciatus, A.,* 871; mentioned, 500, 872.  
*Alde, E.* 92, 100, 102.  
*Alde, J.* 20.  
*Alexium.* 845.  
*Alexander (writer on Tactics).* Alluded to 87.  
*Alferi, F. F.* 743, 764.  
*Alghisi, G.,* 778; mentioned, xxii.  
*All the Famous Battles.* *v.* *History*—*Polman.*  
*All the young Practizers of Chirurgie, To.* 56  
*Allarme to England.* *v.* *Miscell.*—*Rich.*  
*Allen, B.* 56, 129.  
*Allot, R.* 84.  
*Almirante.* xii.  
*Alonzo de Cartagena.* 867.  
*Alphonso XV. of Castile.* 867.  
*Alphonso, Duke of Ferrara.* *v.* *Ferrara.*  
*Altoni, G.* 595.  
*Alvarez, A.* 887.  
*Ammirato, S.* 571.  
*Anderson, H., Heir of.* 121.  
*Angeli, L.* 815.  
*Anima'dversions of Warre.* *v.* *Art Mil.*—*Ward.*

- Ansalone, A. P. 248.  
 Antiduello. *v.* Espagne, J. d'.  
 Antonio, F. 565.  
*Antony of Heusdon.* 163.  
 Aphorismes Civill and Militarie. *v.* Miscell.  
 —Dallington.  
*Aphorismes Lib.* 1 [-v]. 84.  
 Apollodorus. xvii, xviii, xxxv.  
 Appendix, An. *v.* Ordinances—Hexham.  
 Appier, J., 937, 938; alluded to, 118.  
 Approved Order of Martiall discipline, The.  
*v.* Art Mil.—Clayton.  
 Apsyrus. xvii, xxxvii.  
 Aquino, Gio. Paolo d'. 736.  
 Arbeau, T. *v.* Tabourot, J.  
*Archer, J.* 105.  
 Archery, Books in English on :  
     Ascham, R. 9.  
     Markham, G. 129.  
     Neade, W. 106.  
     New Invention of Shooting Fire-shafts.  
         117.  
     S. R. 66.  
 Arias, F., 873; mentioned, 500.  
 Arithmetically Militare Treatise. *v.* Art Mil.  
 —Digges.  
 Arithmetically Warlike Treatise. *v.* Arithmeti-  
 cally Militare Treatise.  
 Armiato, P. 724.  
 Arrian. xvii, xxxiv, xxxvi, xxxix.  
 Art Military, Books in English on :  
     Achesone, J. 120.  
     Barret, R. 68.  
     Barriffe, W. 133.  
     Barry, G. 130.  
     Barwick, H. 59.  
     Bingham, J. 88.  
     Cataneo, G. 19.  
     Clayton, G. 51.  
     Cooke, E. 107, 116.  
     Cruso, J. 155.  
     Dansie, J. 112.  
     Davies, E. 92, 97.  
     Digges, T. 25, 77.  
     Du Praissac. 146.  
     Edmonds, C. 71.  
     Fourquevaux, R. de. 41.  
     Frontinus, S. J. 3.  
     Garrard, W. 54.  
     Gutierrez de la Vega, L. 29.  
     Hurault, J. de. 65.  
     Hexham, H. 136, 163, 164.  
     Kellie, Sir T. 113.  
     La Noue, F. de. 37.  
     Lipsius, J. 98.  
     Londoño, S. de. 48.  
     Lupton, D. 156.  
     Macchiavelli, N. 12.  
     Markham, F. 96.  
     Markham, G. 104, 108, 109.  
     Melzo, L. 122.  
     Mendoza, B. de. 67.  
     Onosander. 14.  
     Order whych a Prince, etc. 4.  
     Ordre or Trayne of Warre. 2.  
     Peacham, H. 128.  
     Pisan, C. de. 1.  
     Policies of War. 43.  
     Porcia, G. 6.  
     Procter, T. 23.  
     Rich, B. 36.  
     Rohan, H., Duc de. 148.  
     Smythe, Sir J. 46, 60.  
     Styward, T. 28.  
     Survey of the New Pretended Discipline,  
         A. 58.  
     Valdes, F. de. 47.  
     Vegetius, F. R. 17.  
     Ward, R. 147.  
     Whitehorne, P. 13.  
     Williams, Sir R. 45.  
 Art Military treated of. 500 to 657.  
 Art of Archerie. *v.* Archery—Markham, G.  
     of Embattailing an Army. *v.* Art Mil.  
     —Ælianus.  
     of Fortification. *v.* Fortification—Maro-  
         lois.  
     of Great Artillery. *v.* Artillery—Norton  
     of Gunnery. *v.* Artillery—Smith.  
     of Riding. *v.* Cavalry—Corte.  
     of War. *v.* Art Mil.—Davies.  
 Arte e precetti. *v.* Ruscelli.

- Arte of shooting in great Ordnance. *v.* Artillery—Bourne.  
     of Warre. *v.* Art Mil.—Du Praissac.  
     of Warre. *v.* Art Mil.—Garrard.  
     of Warre. *v.* Art Mil.—Macchiavelli.  
 Artillery, Books in English on :  
     Bourne, W. 24, 35.  
     Lucar, C. 38, 39.  
     Norton, R. 35, 100, 114, 165.  
     Roberts, J. 140.  
     Smith, T. 73, 74.  
     Tartaglia, N. 38.  
 Artillery treated of. 13, 16, 90, 94, and 658 to 701.  
 Ascham, Roger, 9, *v.* Archery ; mentioned, vi.  
 Asclepiodotus. xvii, xxxvii.  
 Assinito, A. 516.  
 Athenæus. xvii, xviii, xxxiv.  
 Attendolo, D. 891.  
 Audigieur, V. d'. P. 248.  
 Awaykt Memorye, An. *v.* Art Mil.—Markham, Gervase.  
 Ayala, B. 897.  
 Ayala, M. xii.  
  
 B. J. 133.  
 B. W., 103. *v.* Translators ; Miscell.  
 Babington, J., 131. *v.* Pyrotechnics.  
 Bacci, G. 589.  
 Bacellini, M. 611.  
 Bachot, A. 795.  
*Badger, R.* 160.  
 Baker, G., 20. *v.* Medical.  
 Baldi, C., 916 ; mentioned, xxxvi.  
 Balducci, A. 614.  
 Ballino, M. G. 777.  
 Balziani, G. 604.  
 Barbaro, D. 784.  
 Barbette, P. 861, 863.  
 Barca, G. 829.  
 Barca, P. A. 812.  
 Bardin. xii.  
*Barker, C.* 22, 33.  
 — *Deputies of.* 57.  
*Barker, R.* 75, 144, 149.  
 Bar-le-duc. *v.* Errard.  
 Barozzi, G., 782, 796 ; mentioned, xxxix.  
 Barra, F. 701.  
 Barret, R., 68. *v.* Art Mil.  
 Barriffe, W., 133, 143, *v.* Art Mil. ; Miscellaneous ; mentioned, xxxi.  
 Barroso, B. 635.  
 Barry, G., 111, 130. *v.* Translators ; Art Mil.  
*Barlet, J.* 117.  
 Barwick, H., 59, *v.* Art Mil. ; alluded to, vi, 46.  
 Basille, T., 5. *v.* Miscell.  
*Basson, T.* 32.  
 Basta, G., 123, 600, 675, 678, 724 ; *v.* Cavalry ; mentioned, xxxi.  
*Beale, J.* 88.  
 Beccarie de Pavic. *v.* Fourquevaux, de.  
 Becke, von der. 597.  
 Becon, T. *v.* Basille, Theodore.  
 Bedingfield, 30. *v.* Translators.  
 Belici, G. B. 794.  
*Bellamy, J.* 104.  
 Belli, P., 893 ; mentioned, 500.  
*Benavides, R. de,* 885 ; mentioned, 884.  
 Bernard, R., 119. *v.* Miscell.  
*Beribelet, T.* 3, 8.  
 Besoldus, C. 632, 687.  
 Betham, P., 6. *v.* Translators.  
 Bianco. *v.* Capobianco.  
 Bible-Battells. *v.* Miscell.—Bernard, R.  
*Bill, J.* 99, 103, 144, 149.  
 Billon, J. de. 616, 653.  
 Bingham, J., 88, 89, 98, *v.* Drill ; Translators ; Art Mil. ; mentioned, xxxiii.  
 Birago, F., 729, p. 249.  
 Birago, L. xix.  
 Biringuccio, V. 931.  
 Bito. xvii, xviii, xxxiv.  
*Blackmore, E.* 119.  
*Blacklock, L.* 109, 160.  
 Blandy, W., 27. *v.* Miscell.  
 Blondel. xxi.  
*Blount, E.* 69, 84, 122, 123.  
 Blundeville, 12. *v.* Translators.  
*Blunt, E.* *v.* Blount, E.  
 Bocchi, F. 922.  
 Boccer, H. 903.

- Boillot, J. 933.  
*Boler, J.* 119, 134.  
 Bolis, de. 663.  
*Boller, J. v. Boler, J.*  
*Bollifant, E.* 56.  
 Bologninus, L. 868.  
 Bonet, H. de, 504; mentioned, 1.  
 Bonnor, H. *v.* Bonet.  
 Book of Battles. *v.* All the Famous Battels.  
 ————— Second part of the. *v.* History  
 —Polman.  
 Book on Weapons. *v.* Certain Discourses.  
*Booke, First* [—*Second*]. 23.  
*Booke, First* [—*Seventh*]. 12.  
 Booke of Honor and Armes. *v.* Miscell.—  
 Segar; alluded to, 75.  
*Booke of Martiiall Discipline, First* [—*Second*].  
 28.  
*Booke of Military Discipline, First* [—*Third*].  
 41.  
*Booke of the Art of Riding.* 11.  
 Boschi, H. 858.  
 Bossi, G. 840, 841.  
 Botallus, L. 848.  
 Boulenger, J. C. 926.  
*Bourne, N.*, 115; alluded to, xiv.  
 Bourne, W., 24, 35, *v.* Artill.; alluded to, 13,  
 165.  
*Bouwenszoon, J.* 32.  
*Boydell, R.* 684.  
 Bracelos, Duke of. 732.  
 Brancaccio, G. C. 557.  
 Brancaccio, L. 557, 609.  
 Brantz, J. 933.  
 Bras-de-fer. *v.* La Noue, de.  
 Brechtel, F. J., 667; mentioned, xxxii.  
 Brief Instructions, p. 249. *v.* Fencing—Silver.  
 Briefe Discourse. *v.* Art Mil.—Barwick.  
 Briefe Discourse of War. *v.* Art Mil.—Wil-  
 liams.  
 Briefe Treatise, A. *v.* Archery—S., R.  
 Brito de Lemos. 638.  
*Broome, Widow.* 56.  
*Brudenell, T.* 88.  
 Brunct. xii.  
 Bruno, G. 706.  
 Bruccioli, A. 517.  
 Bruyn, A. 710, 923.  
 Bry, J. T. de. 621, 684, 685, 686, 724, 735,  
 802, xxxi, xxxii.  
*Buck, T.* 142.  
 Bufalo, F. del. 613.  
*Bull, J.* 157.  
*Burchoorn, T.* 137.  
*Burre, W.* 82.  
 Busca, G. 659, 785, 811.  
 Bussen Meesterye, Der. 838.  
*Butler, W.* 92.  
*Butter, R.* xiv, 125.  
*Bynneman, H.* 16, 21, 25.  
 C. E. *v.* Cooke, Ed.  
 C. J. *v.* Charlewood, J.  
 C. J. *v.* Cruso, J.  
 C. R. *v.* Cartwright, R.  
 C. T. *v.* Cadman, Th.  
*Cadman, T.* 28, 37.  
 Capolla, B., 866; mentioned, 500.  
 Camasa, F. 642.  
 Campana, C. 587.  
 Capitoli e leggi. 919.  
 Capobianco, A., 673; mentioned, 164.  
 Capoferro, R. 757.  
*Captaine Skill and Captaine Pill.* 78.  
 Caracciolo, P. 713.  
 Carafa, D. 550.  
 Carani. xxxvii.  
 Carpiñano. *v.* Lanario.  
 Carranza, J. 750.  
 Carriao, J. 575.  
*Cartwright, R.* 112, 155, 161.  
 Cassani, A. 594.  
 Castillo, D. del, 869; mentioned, 500.  
 Castle or picture of pollicy, The. *v.* Miscell.  
 —Blandy.  
 Castrametation, English Writer on:  
 Cruso, John. 155.  
 Castrametation, Or the measuring out of the  
 Quarters. *v.* Castrametation—Cruso, John.  
*Castrametation, or the encamping of an Army,*  
 155.  
 Castriotto, G. F., 772, 773; mentioned, 804.



- Cataneo, G., 19, 529, 541, 542, 662, 771, 779, 837, 940; alluded to, 54, 114, 786. *v.* Art Mil.
- Cataneo, P. 768.
- Cataneus. *v.* Cataneo.
- Cato (writer on Tactics). Alluded to, 17.
- Cavalca, A. 630.
- Cavalcabò, H. 749, 759, p. 249.
- Cavallarie, The. *v.* Art Mil.—Markham, G.
- Cavalry and Equitation :  
 Basta, G. 123.  
 Corte, C. 30.  
 Cruso, J. 124.  
 Grisone, F. 11.  
 — treated of, 37, 102, 104, 108, 130, and 705-737.
- Cawood, G. 34, 43.
- Caxton, W., 1. *v.* Translators.
- Cecil, W. Alluded to, 10.
- Celsus (writer on Tactics). Alluded to, 17.
- Centorio de Hortensii, A. 524.
- Certain Additions to the Book of Gunnery. *v.* Artillery—Smith, T.
- Certain Discourses. *v.* Art Mil.—Smythe.
- Certain discourses of Warre, etc.* 59.
- Certain Waies for the orderynge of Souldiers. *v.* Art Mil.—Whitehorne.
- Certaine briefe and speciall Instructions. *v.* Topography—Meier.
- Certaine Orders. *v.* Invasion.
- Certen discourses, etc.* 46.
- Cervellino, E. 626.
- Ch.*, J. 157.
- Character of Warre. *v.* Art Mil.—Cooke.
- Charlewood, J.* 36, 51.
- Cheke, Sir J. xvii, xxxix.
- Chevalier, G. P. 248.
- Chorlton, J.* 78.
- Cicogna, G. M. 536.
- Cicuta, A. *v.* Adriano, A.
- Cinuzzi, J. 596.
- Cito, G. A. 713.
- Clayton, G., 51. *v.* Art Mil.
- Cleves, Philip, Duke of. 523.
- Clowes, W., 56. *v.* Medical.
- Coldock, F.* 21.
- Cole, P.* 56.
- Collado, L., 664, 668; alluded to, xi, 35, 114.
- Colombina, Gio. Batt. 606.
- Colonna, E., 502; mentioned, xix.
- Colony in Virginia, For the. *v.* Ordinances—Strachey.
- Commentaries, The. *v.* History—Verc.
- Compendious Treatise. *v.* Art Mil.—Gutierrez de la Vega.
- Compleat Cannoniere. *v.* Artillery—Roberts.
- Compleat gentleman. *v.* Art Mil.—Peacham.
- Compleat Schoole of War. *v.* Drill—M., R.
- Complete Captain. *v.* Art Mil.—Rohan, de.
- Complete Souldier. *v.* Artillery—Smith.
- Composition of . . . Oleum Magistrale. *v.* Medical—Baker.
- Coniano, Giovacchino da. 532.
- Constable, F.* 128.
- Constantine VII. xvii, xxxix.
- Contarini, P. M. 590.
- Cooke, Ed., 107, 116. *v.* Art Mil.
- Cooke, T.* 41, 42.
- Corazzi, E. 798.
- Corazzini, M. 502.
- Cornazano, A. 505.
- Corte, C., 30, 709; mentioned, 11. *v.* Cavalry.
- Cotta, F. 14.
- Cotereau, C., 870; mentioned, 500.
- Cotes, R.* 843.
- Cotes, T.* 145.
- Count Mansfield's Directions. *v.* Ordinances—G. W.
- Creed, T.* 76, 78.
- Crenius. x, 930.
- Croce, Della. *v.* Della Croce.
- Crompton., R. *v.* Miscell.
- Crooke, A.* 133, 145, 155.
- Crosse, W., 80. *v.* Editors.
- Cruso, J., 124, 146, 148, 155; alluded to, 133. *v.* Cavalry; Art Mil.; Castrametation; Translators.
- Ctesibius. xxxiv, xxxvi.
- Cyllenius, D. 527.
- D., J., 121. *v.* Translators; Ordinances.

*D., J.* v. Day, John.  
 Dallington, Sir R., 84. v. Miscell.  
*Daniel, R.* 64, 92, 97, 142, 146, 148.  
*Dansic, J.*, 112. v. Art Mil.  
*Danti, E.* 941.  
*Davelourt, D.*, 90, 94; mentioned, xvi.  
*Davies, Ed.*, 92, 97. v. Art Mil.  
*Davies, J.* v. Davies, Ed.  
*Da Vinci, L.* xx, 501, 745.  
*Dawolman, R.* 73, 74.  
*Dawson, G.* 133, 143.  
*Dawson, J.* 104, 125, 133, 143, 147.  
*Dawson, M.* 56.  
*Dawson, T.* 35, 38, 56.  
*Day, J.* 27.  
*Decad. I.* [-v.], *Epist.* i. [-x.]. 96.  
 Defence of Militaric profession. v. Miscell.—  
     Gates.  
*Della Croce, F.* 617, 731.  
*Della Rovere, F. M.* v. Urbino, Duke of,  
     556.  
*Della Valle, B.* 765, p. 249.  
*Dell' Orgio, Marc' Antonio.* 625.  
*Dell' Uva, F.* 650.  
*De Morgan, A.* xxiii.  
*Denham, H.* 30.  
*Desciau, J.* 623.  
 Description and use of the Sector. v. Fortifica-  
     tion—Gunter.  
*Diētys, of Candia.* 540.  
*Digby, Sir K.* Mentioned, 742.  
*Digges, D.* 77.  
*Digges, L.* 16, 25.  
*Digges, T.*, 16, 25, 77, v. Art Mil.; Invasion;  
     Topography; alluded to, 46, 53, 56, 100,  
     114, 664, 709.  
*Dilich, W.* 832, 908.  
*Dillingham, Wm.*, 166. v. Editors.  
*Dionyse, A.* 854.  
*Dionysius (Historian)*, alluded to, xviii.  
 Directions for Musters, 142, v. Drill; men-  
     tioned, xxxi.  
 Discourse of Military Discipline. v. Art Mil.  
     —Barry Gerrat.  
 Discourses of Warre and Single Combat. v.  
     Miscell.—Loque, B. de.

*Dociolini, M.* 753.  
*Doisy.* ix, x, xxvi.  
*Dooms, J.* 110.  
 Double-armed Man. v. Archery—Neade, W.  
 Drill, and Pike and Musket Exercises, Books  
     in English on :  
     Bingham, J. 89.  
     Directions for Musters. 142.  
     Edmonds, C. 72.  
     Exercise for yong artillerymen. 152.  
     Exercise of the English. 151.  
     Fisher, T. 126.  
     Gheyn, J. de. 79.  
     Instructions for Musters. 99.  
     Leslie, A., Earl of Leven. 160.  
     M., R. 158.  
     Mars his Feild. 64.  
     Military Discipline. 97.  
     T., J. 86.  
     True Description of the Discipline of  
         War. 159.  
     Trussell, T. 95.  
 Drill treated of, 102, and 738 to 743.  
*Drury, Sir W.*, 18. v. Ordinances.  
*Du Bellay, G.*, 41, 515; mentioned, xix, 54.  
     v. Fourquevaux.  
*Du Chesne*, 50, 851. v. Medical.  
*Du Choul, G.* 702.  
*Dudley, Robert, Earl of Leicester*, 33. v.  
     Ordinances.  
*Duell-Ease.* v. Miscell.—G. F.  
*Duello, The.* v. Miscell.—Selden, John.  
*Dugard, W.* 843.  
*Duke of Rohan's Manual.* 148.  
*Dupleix, S.* 912.  
*Du Praissac*, 634. v. Art Mil.  
*Dürer, A.*, 766; mentioned, xxi, 786.  
  
*E. G.* v. *Eld, G.*  
*E. T.* v. *East, T.*  
*East, T.* 12, 13, 15, 19, 28, 29.  
*Eberhart, P.* 943, 950.  
 Editors. v. Translators.  
*Edmonds, C.*, 71, 72, v. Art Mil., Drill,  
     Translators; mentioned, 148, 166.  
*Eglesfield, F.* 147.

Eguiluz, M. de. 569.  
*Eld*, G. 80, 81.  
 Eldred. 100, 684.  
 Elements and Practice of Artillery, Of the. *v.*  
     Artillery—Norton.  
 Eliot, I., 52. *v.* Translators.  
 Elrich. xxi.  
*England*, N. 13.  
 England's Savety, 157. *v.* Invasion.  
 Errard, A. 802.  
 Errard de Bar-le-duc, J., 802 ; mentioned, xxii.  
 Escalante, B. de. 577.  
 Escriva. xxi.  
 Espagne, J. d'. P. 249.  
 Euangelus, alluded to, 88.  
 Eugeni, G. 599.  
 Evats, W. 917.  
 Evoli, G. d'. 559.  
 Excellent Treatise of Wounds. *v.* Medical—  
     Gale.  
 Exercise for yong Artillery men. *v.* Drill.  
 Exercise of Armes. *v.* Drill—Gheyn, de.  
 Exercise of the English. *v.* Drill—Bingham.  
 Exercise of the English. *v.* Drill.  
 Expedicion into Scotlãde. *v.* History—Patten.  
 F. T. 129.  
 Fabricius, G., 859, 863.  
 Fabricius. xxxix.  
 Fabris, S. 754, p. 249.  
 Facius, C. 607.  
 Fantini, G. 648.  
 Farra, A. 533.  
 Fauchet, C. 907.  
 Faulhaber, J. 695, 806.  
 Fausto da Longiano, S. 888, 890.  
 Fayser von Arnstain, 707. *v.* Grisonc, Fed.  
 Fayt of Armes, Thé. *v.* Art Mil.—Pisan, C. de.  
 Fencing, Books in English on :  
     Grassi, G. di. 61.  
     Hale, G. 85.  
     Saviolo, V. 63.  
     Silver, G. 69.  
     Swetnam, J. 91.  
 — treated of, 744-764.  
 Fernandez de Cordova y Aquilar. *v.* 567.

Fernandez de Eyzaguirre. 603.  
 Ferrara, Alphonso, Duke of. 528.  
 Ferretti, F. 537, 548.  
 Ferrettus, G. 545.  
 Ferrius, A., 844 ; alluded to, 15.  
 Fiamelli, G. F. 591, 592, 601, 801, 946.  
*Field*, R. 25.  
 Firrufino, J. C., 691 ; mentioned, xi, xxiii.  
 First Part of the Principles of the Art Military.  
     *v.* Principles of the Art Militaric.  
*Fisher*, B. 129.  
 Fisher, T., 126. *v.* Drill.  
 Five Decades. *v.* Art Mil.—Markham, F.  
 Flamand, C. 792.  
 Fleurance. *v.* Rivault.  
 Floriani, P. P. 825.  
 Fontana (artist). 744, 745.  
*Forcet*, T. 684.  
 Forte, A. di. 513.  
 Fortification, Books in English on :  
     Gunter, E. 134.  
     Ive, P. 42.  
     \ Marolois, S. 139.  
     Norwood, R. 145.  
 — treated of, 13, 16, 37, 110, 111, 130, 146,  
     and 765-836.  
 Fortification or Architecure, Military. *v.*  
     Fortification—Norwood.  
 Fortis, L. P. 249.  
 Foure bookes of Flavius Vegetius Ranatus. *v.*  
     Art Mil.—Vegetius.  
 Foure Paradoxes. *v.* Art Mil.—Digges.  
 Fourquevaux, R. de, 41, 515 ; *v.* Art Mil. ;  
     mentioned, xix.  
 Frachetta, G. 585, 627.  
 Francesco Maria Della Rovere. *v.* Urbino.  
 Francis I., work attributed to. 41.  
 Free Schoole of Warre. *v.* Miscell.—B. W.  
 Freitag, A., 836 ; alluded to, 163.  
 Fresnes, de, 37. *v.* Editors.  
 Freyre, A. 929.  
 Frezza, F. 624.  
 Friderich, V. 629.  
 Fronsperger, L. 530, 531, 543, 544, 932.  
 Frontinus, 3 ; *v.* Art Mil. ; alluded to, xvii,  
     xviii, xix, xxxiii, xxxv, xxxvii ; 17, 41.

- Fruites of long Experience. *v.* Miscell.—  
 Rich, B.  
 Fucina di Marte, La. 700.  
 Funes, J. de. 553.  
 Furtenbach, J., 692, 824 ; mentioned, xxxi.  
  
 G. C. H., 110. *v.* Translators.  
 G. F., 132. *v.* Miscell.  
 G. H., 19. *v.* Translators.  
 G. I., 61. *v.* Translators.  
 G. W., 102. *v.* Ordinances.  
 Gaiani, G. B. 726, 915.  
 Gale, T., 15. *v.* Medical.  
 Galen. Alluded to, 20.  
 Galeus or Galée, xxi.  
 Galí. 723.  
 Galilei, G., 680, 697 ; mentioned, xx, xxi.  
 Gallo, A. 649.  
 Gallo, F. 631.  
 Galvani, G. 549.  
 Garatis, M. *v.* Laudensis, M.  
 Garcia, de Cespedes. 679.  
 Garcia de Huerta. *v.* Huerta.  
 Garcia de Palacio, D. 555.  
 Garimberto, G. 520.  
 Garrard, W., 54. *v.* Art Mil.  
 Garrido y Figueroa. 570.  
 Gates, G., 26, *v.* Miscell. ; alluded to, 27.  
 General Captain, The. *v.* Art Mil.—Ono-  
 sander.  
 Generall Historie of the Netherlands. *v.* His-  
 tory—Grimstone.  
 Generall Lessley's Directions and Order. *v.*  
 Drill—Leslie.  
 Generall proportion and order of Provision. *v.*  
 Victualling—Hitchcock.  
 Gentilini, E. 669, 683, 699, 790.  
 Gentilis, A. 586, 902.  
 Gentilis, S. 925.  
 Geometrical Practical Treatize, A. *v.* Geo-  
 metrical Practise, A.  
 Geometrical Practise, A. *v.* Topography—  
 Digges.  
 George Silver, his Paradoxes, etc. 69.  
 Gerrare, W. xiii.  
 Gcsner. 844, 845.  
  
 Gessi, B. P. 249.  
 Gheyn, J. de, 79. *v.* Drill.  
 Giacomo di Grassi, his true arte. *v.* Fencing—  
 Grassi.  
 Gianolio Ferrante. 643.  
 Giganti, N. 755.  
 Giorgi, L. 636.  
 Girard, A., 139, 821. *v.* Editors.  
 Girini, S. 644.  
 Giucciardini. Alluded to, 84.  
 Giustello, V. 532.  
 Giustinapolitano. *v.* Mutio.  
 Godbid, W. 863.  
 Goddin, N. 846.  
 Golding, A., 65. *v.* Translators.  
 Gonzalez de Medina Barba. 797.  
 Gorgieri, L. 519.  
 Gough, J. 5.  
 Government of the Light Horse. *v.* Cavalry  
 —Basta.  
 Grafvon, R. 10.  
 Grassi, G. di, 61, 746. *v.* Fencing.  
 Great Yarmouth's Exercise. *v.* Miscell.—  
 Roberts.  
 Griffin, A. 132.  
 Griffin, E. 92.  
 Grimstone, E., 80, 127, *v.* History ; Translators ;  
 mentioned, xiii.  
 Grismand, J. 106.  
 Grisone, F., 11, 707. *v.* Cavalry.  
 Groot, H. de. 808, 917.  
 Grotius, H. *v.* Groot, de.  
 Guarnieri, xi.  
 Gunner, The. *v.* Artillery—Norton.  
 Gunner's Dialogue. *v.* Artillery—Norton.  
 Gunter, E., 134. *v.* Fortification.  
 Gutierrez de la Vega, L., 29, 538. *v.* Art  
 Mil.  
 Gyzicki, von. xiii, 57.  
  
 Hadrian. xxxv.  
 Hale, G., 85. *v.* Fencing.  
 Hall, R. 15.  
 Hanzelet. *v.* Appier.  
 Harford, R. 153.  
 Harper, T. 126, 131, 133, 141 ; p. 249.

- Harper, R.* 158.  
*Harrison, J.* 26, 38.  
*Hart, A., Heirs of.* 113.  
*Harwood, Sir E.,* 153. *v.* Invasion.  
*Hasten, H.* 111.  
*Haviland, J.* 84, 98.  
*Hawkins, R.* 118.  
*Haywood,* 93. *v.* Editors.  
*Heigham, T.* P. 249.  
*Helme, J.* 81, 85, 86.  
*Helpe to the Surgeon's Chest.* 115.  
*Hero the Elder.* xvii, xviii, xxxiv, xxxvi.  
*Hero the Younger.* xvii, xviii, xix, xxxiv, xxxix.  
*Heroicke Acts of his Excellencie, etc.,* 83.  
*Hester, J.,* 50. *v.* Translators.  
*Hexham, H.,* 136, 137, 139, 163, 164, *v.* Art Mil.; Ordinances; Translators; mentioned, xxxi, 77.  
*Hill, Wm.* 4.  
*Hills, Wm.* 135.  
 History:  
     *Grimstone, E.* 80.  
     *Hugo, H.* 110, 111.  
     Late expedition in Scotland, The. 7.  
     *Monro, R.* 138.  
     *Patten, Sir W.* 10.  
     *Polman, J.* 21, 34.  
     *Roe, Sir T.* 125.  
     *Shute, W.* 83.  
     *Veré, Sir F.* 166.  
     *Watts, Dr. W.* 125.  
     *Williams, Sir R.* 93.  
 History of Polybius, The. *v.* Polybius.  
*Hitchcock, R.,* 54, 55. *v.* Editors; Victualling.  
*Hoby, Sir E.,* 67. *v.* Translators.  
*Hodgkinson, R.* 156.  
*Hohenspach, S.* 546.  
*Holland, P.* xviii, xxxiii.  
*Hondius, H.* 816.  
 Honor Military and Civill. *v.* Miscell.—Segar.  
 Honorable reputation of a Souldier. *v.* Miscell.—Whetstone.  
*Horneck, W.* x.  
*Hoyer.* xi.  
*Huerta.* x, xii.
- Hugo, H.,* 110, 111, 733, 817, *v.* History; mentioned, xiii.  
*Hulsius, L.,* 945; mentioned, ix.  
*Humscott, J.* 150.  
*Hurault, J.,* 65, 579. *v.* Art Mil.  
*Hurlock, G.* 140.  
*Huth, F. H.* xiii.  
*Hyginus, Gromaticus.* xvii, xxxv.
- I. W. v. Jones, W.*  
*I. I. v. J. J.*  
 Institution de la discipline militaire. 526.  
 Instruction generale et particuliere. 842.  
*Instruitions and orders militarie, etc.* 60.  
 Instructions for Musters, 99. *v.* Drill.  
 Instructions for the Wars. *v.* Art Mil.—Fourquevaux, de.  
*Instruitions for Travellers.* 44.  
 Instructions, Observations and Orders Mylitarie *v.* Art Mil.—Smythe.  
 Invasion, Tracts concerning, English:  
     Certaine Orders Meete To Be Observed 161.  
     *Digges, T.* 25.  
     England's Savety in Navie and Fortifications. 157.  
     *Harwood, Sir E.* 153.  
 Inventions or Devises. *v.* Artillery—Bourne  
 Iphicrates (writer on Tactics). Alluded to, 88  
*Isaba, M. de,* 572; alluded to, 77.  
*Isacchi, G. B.* 547.  
*Isla, Lazaro de.* 670.  
*Islip, A.* 65, 80, 83.  
*Isselbourg, P.* 741.  
*Ive, Paul,* 41, 42. *v.* Fortification; Translators
- J. J.* 61.  
*J. W. v. Jones, W.*  
*Jabico, Riolante. v. Lanteri.*  
*Jacobi von Wallhausen, J.* 621, 622, 685; 735, 739, 740.  
*Jacobszoon, J. Paedts.* 32.  
*Janssen d' Aelst, A.* 79.  
*Jeffes, A.* 9, 16.  
*Jennings, M.* 28.  
*Jennis, L.* 735.

- Johnson, T. 843.  
 Joly, G. 906.  
 Jones, P., xxiv, 44. *v.* Topography.  
*Jones, R.* 32, 46, 49, 60, 66.  
*Jones, W.* 112, 134, 138.  
 Josephus, Flavius, xxxix.  
 Joubert, L. 850, 852, 856.  
 Julius Africanus. xviii.
- Kellie, Sir T., 113, *v.* Art Mil.; alluded to,  
 106, 120.  
*Kingston, J.* 12, 13.  
*Kitson, A.* 51.  
 Knowledge and conducte of Warres, Of the  
*v.* Art Mil.—Procter.  
 Kriegsmunition und Artillerey-Buch. 690.  
 Kriegsordnung neu gemacht. 508.
- L. A. *v.* Leighton, A.  
 L. H. *v.* Lownes, H.  
 L. I. 143.  
 La Beraudiere, M. de. P. 247.  
 Lanario y Aragon, F. de, Duke of Carpinano.  
 633.  
 Lanfranchini, C., 874; mentioned, 500.  
 Langey, de. *v.* Du Bellay.  
 La Noue, F. de, 37, 560, *v.* Art Mil.; men-  
 tioned, xix.  
 La Noue, P. de. 727.  
 Lanteri, G., 769, 770; mentioned, xxi, 787.  
 La Ramée, P. de. 525.  
 Late Expedition in Scotland, 7. *v.* History.  
 La Treille, F. de. xv, 767.  
 Laudensis, M., 878; mentioned, 500.  
 Law :  
     Sutcliffe, M. 57.  
 — Military and Ordinances of Chivalry  
 treated of. 865 to 919.  
 Laws and Ordinances (English). *v.* Ordinances.  
*Laws and Articles of Marshall discipline*, 137.  
 Lawes, Articles and Ordinances, Appendix of  
 the. *v.* Ordinances—Hexham.  
 Lawes and Ordinances. *v.* Ordinances—  
 Dudley.  
 Lawes and Ordinances of Warre. *v.* Ordinances.
- Lawes and ordinances of Warre. *v.* Ordinances  
 —Northumberland.  
 Lawes and Ordinances touching military dis-  
 cipline. *v.* Ordinances—D., J.  
 Lechuga, C., 593; mentioned, xi.  
 Lefroy, Colonel. xiii.  
*Legge, C.* P. 248.  
 Legnano, G., 875, 899; mentioned, 500.  
 Leicester, E. of. *v.* Dudley.  
 Leighton, A., 101. *v.* Miscell.  
*Lekprevik, R.* 18.  
 Le Lieure, E. 855.  
 Le Normant, R. 641.  
 Leo VI. xvii, xxxix, 155.  
 Leonardi, G. xxi.  
 Leslie, Alexander, Earl of Leven, 160. *v.* Drill.  
 Leu, de (engraver). 799.  
 Leven, Earl of. *v.* Leslie, Alexander.  
 Levo, G. B. 521.  
 Lichfield, N., 29. *v.* Translators.  
 Lingham, J., 31. *v.* Miscell.  
 Lipsius, Justus, 620, 672. *v.* Art Mil.  
 Lisle, L. 88.  
 Lloyd, L., 76. *v.* Miscell.  
 Locatelli, V. 780.  
 Loehneys, G. E. von. 712, 721.  
 Loen. x, xii.  
 Lombardi, A. 826.  
 Londoño, S. de, 48, 563. *v.* Art Mil.  
*Looking-Glasse of the holy War.* 101.  
 Loque, B. de, 52, 900. *v.* Miscell.  
 Lorini, B. 791.  
 Los Rios, V. de. xi.  
*Lownes, H.* 74, 77, 93, 117.  
 Luca, di. Alluded to, 61.  
*Lucar Appendix.* 38, 39.  
 Lucar, C., 38, 39. *v.* Artillery.  
 Lupicini, A. 783, 787.  
 Lupton, D., 156. *v.* Art Mil.  
 Lupus, J., 876; mentioned, 500.
- M. A.* *v.* Matthews, A.  
*M. G.* *v.* Marcelline, G.  
*M. G.* *v.* Markham, G.  
*M. R.*, 158. *v.* Drill.  
*Mab, Ralph.* 88, 98, 131, 133, 143.

- Macchiavelli, N., 12, 135, *v.* Art Mil. ; Miscell. ; 507 ; alluded to, xix, xxi, xxxi, xxxii, 13, 41, 57, 511.
- Machiavels Discourses. *v.* Macchiavelli, N.
- Maggi, G., 772 ; mentioned, 804.
- Maggiari, S. 827.
- Maggius, B. 845.
- Making and refining of Salt-peter, Making of Gunpowder, etc.* 13.
- Malthus, F., 118, 939, *v.* Pyrotechnics ; alluded to, xvi, 100.
- Malthus, T. *v.* Malthus, F.
- Man, T.* 41, 42.
- Manassi, G. B. 660.
- Maner of our Modern Training, The. *v.* Drill—Edmonds.
- Mansion of Magnanimitic. *v.* Miscell.—Crompton.
- Mantova, Benavides, M., 877, 892 ; mentioned, 500.
- Mantua, Vincent I., Duke of. 628.
- Manufacture of Firearms and Powder treated of. 837 to 842.
- Manwood, 93. *v.* Editors.
- Marais, de. *v.* Hurault, de.
- Marcelline, G., 105. *v.* Miscell.
- Marchi, F., 798 ; alluded to, xxii.
- Marchetti. 837.
- Marincola. 646.
- Marinho de Azevedo. 654.
- Marini. xi, xxi, 798.
- Markham, F., 96. *v.* Art Mil.
- Markham, G., 104, 108, 109, 129, *v.* Art Mil. ; Archery ; alluded to, 11, 46, 105.
- Marolois, S., 139, 821, *v.* Fortification ; alluded to, 145, 164.
- Marozzo, or Marozzi, A., 744 ; alluded to, 61.
- Mars his Feild, 64. *v.* Drill.
- Mars his Triumph. *v.* Miscell.—Barriffe.
- Marsh, H.* 9.
- Marsh, T.* 17.
- Martiall shewes of horsemen, 40. *v.* Miscell.
- Marzari, G. 671.
- Massa, A., 883 ; alluded to, 886.
- Massario, Malatesta A. 715, 719.
- Mathematical Manual. *v.* Art Mil.—Dansic, J.
- Matthews, A.* 96, 114.
- Matthews, J.* 154.
- Maurice, Emperor. xvii, xviii, xxxviii, xxxix.
- Maurice, Maj.-Gen. xiii, 57.
- Mayler, J.* 5.
- Medical Books (English) :
- Baker, G. 20.
- Clowes, W. 56.
- Du Chesne. 50.
- Gale, T. 15.
- Woodall, J. 115.
- Medical Books (Foreign). 843 to 864.
- Meier, A., 44, 561. *v.* Topography.
- Meigret, L. 127, 501.
- Melzo, L.*, 122, 723. *v.* Art Mil.
- Mendes de Vasconcellos, L. 615.
- Mendoza, B. de, 67, 580. *v.* Art Mil.
- Mercurialis, H. 921.
- Mérode, R. de, 884 ; mentioned, 885, 888.
- Meteran, E. van. 80.
- Meung, J. de, mentioned, xviii, xix, 1, 17, 503.
- Meyer, J. 751.
- Meynier, Honorat de. 835.
- Michelangelo. 745.
- Micheli, Marquez J. 737.
- Middleton, H.* 22, 26.
- Militarie Instructions for the Cavalry. *v.* Cavalry—Cruso.
- Military Art of Trayning. *v.* Military Directions.
- Military Directions. *v.* Art Mil.—Davies.
- Military Discipline. *v.* Art Mil.—Londoño.
- Military Discipline. *v.* Mars his Feild.
- Military Discipline, 97. *v.* Drill.
- Military Discipline, or The Yong Artillery Man. *v.* Drill—Barriffe.
- Military Discipline, Firewurckes, etc.* 130.
- Military Garden, The. *v.* Art Mil.—Achesone.
- Military Rules. *v.* Art Mil.—Melzo.
- Militia Old and New, 162. *v.* Miscell.
- Minas, M. xviii.
- Minderer, R. 861.
- Miranda, Martin de. 652.
- Mirandola, F. 514.

Miscellaneous (English):

- Absolute Souldier, Thc. 62.  
 B. W. 103.  
 Barriffe, W. 143.  
 Basille, T. 5.  
 Bernard, R. 119.  
 Blandy, W. 27.  
 Crompton, R. 70.  
 Dallington, Sir R. 84.  
 G. F. 132.  
 Gates, G. 26.  
 Leighton, A. 101.  
 Lingham, J. 31.  
 Lloyd, L. 76.  
 Loque, B. de. 52.  
 Macchiavelli, N. 135.  
 Marcelline, G. 105.  
 Martial shewes of Horsemen. 40.  
 Militia Old and New. 162.  
 Rich, B. 22, 78.  
 Roberts, J. 141.  
 Segar, Sir W. 49, 75.  
 Selden, John. 81.  
 Whetstone, G. 32.  
 — (Foreign). 920 to 930.  
 Moccio. Alluded to, 61.  
 Modestus. xvii, xviii, xix, xxxvii, 3.  
*Mommart, J., Widow of.* 130.  
 Monro, R., 138. *v.* History.  
 Monro His Expedition. *v.* History—Monro.  
 Montalbini, G. B. 655.  
 Montemellino, F. 774.  
 Montgommery, L. de. 612.  
 Montis, P. 506.  
 Moore, R. 83.  
 Mora, D. 539, 775, 901.  
 Moradell, Donzell D. de. 651.  
*Morgan, Ellis.* 141.  
 Morrice, J. 917.  
 Morysine, R., 3. *v.* Translators.  
 Mosquera de Figueroa. 581.  
 Most briefe tables. *v.* Art Mil.—Cataneo.  
 Moxon, J. 164.  
 Mutio, G., 879, 880, 889; mentioned, xxii,  
 519, 888, 890, 901.  
 Mutoni. xxxvii.

- N. W. *v.* Neade, W.  
 Nannini, Remigio. 920.  
 Nannius, P. 512.  
 Napier of Murchiston, Lord. Alluded to, 112.  
 Nardo, Duke of. *v.* Acquaviva.  
 Naudé, G. ix, 930, p. 249.  
 Nazzari, G. B. 666.  
 Neade, W., 106, *v.* Archery; alluded to, viii,  
 xxxi, 117.  
*Necessary order to be observed in battaile.* 4.  
*Necessitie and Excellencie of Archerie.* 66.  
 New Invention of Shooting Fire-shafts, 117.  
*v.* Archery.  
 New pollice of Warre. *v.* Art Mil.—Basille.  
 Newe booke containing the arte of ryding.  
*v.* Cavalry—Grison.  
 Nicephorus Phocas. xix, xxxix, xl.  
 Nicolai, F. von. x.  
 Nicolas, Ant. xii.  
 Nieuwe const van Bossenschieten. 674.  
 Norris, Sir J., alluded to, xxii.  
 Northumberland, Earl of, 149. *v.* Ordin-  
 ances.  
*Norton, B.* 99.  
 Norton, R., 35, 100, 114, 165, *v.* Artillery;  
 alluded to, xxxi, 25, 684, 703.  
 Norwood, R., 145. *v.* Fortification.  
 Nuñez, Alva D. 564.  
 Nuñez de Velasco. 913.  
 O. R. 133.  
*Observations for curing of gunsbot.* 56.  
 Observations . . . upon Cæsars Commentaries.  
*v.* Art Mil.—Edmonds.  
*Office of a Regiment and their Duties, etc.*  
 102.  
 Ogle, Sir John. 166.  
 Okes, J. 140.  
 Okes, N. 91, 95, 127.  
 Oldys, W. xiv.  
 Olevano, G. B., 909; mentioned, 729.  
 Oliffe, R. 59.  
 Onosander, xviii, xxxv, xxxvii, 14. *v.* Art  
 Mil.  
 Onosandro Platonico of the Generall Captaine.  
*v.* Art Mil.—Onosander.



Orbicius. xvii, xxxvii.  
 Order of Military Watches. *v.* Art Mil.—Cruso.  
 Order whych a Prince, etc., 4. *v.* Art Mil.  
 Orders established . . . by the societye of  
 Armes, 87. *v.* Ordinances.  
*Ordering of Souldiers in battelraie, etc.* 13.  
 Ordinance of the Lords and Commons. *v.*  
 Ordinances.  
 Ordinances :  
   Aggas, E. 53.  
   D. I. 121.  
   Drury, Sir W. 18.  
   Dudley, R., Earl of Leicester. 33.  
   G. W. 102.  
   Hexham, H. 137.  
   Lawes and Ordinances of Warre. 144.  
   Northumberland, Earl of. 149.  
   Orders established. 87.  
   Ordinance of the Lords and Commons.  
     150.  
   Statutes and ordynances. 8.  
   Strachey, W. 82.  
 Ordinances set fourth by the king. *v.* Ordin-  
 ances—A., E.  
 Ordre or Trayne of Warre, 2. *v.* Art Mil.  
 Orgio Dell'. *v.* Dell' Orgio.  
 Orsini Latino. 941.  
 Orwin, T. 37, 42, 45, 56.  
  
 P. E. 115.  
 P. M. 136.  
 Pacheco de Narvaez. 752, 756, 758, 760,  
 761, 762, 763.  
 Pagano, M. A. 518.  
 Paine, T. 135.  
 Pakeman, D. 135.  
 Pallas Armata. *v.* Art Mil.—Kellie.  
 Panigarola, F. xxvii.  
 Pantometria. *v.* Geometrical Practise, A.  
 Paracelsus. Alluded to, 50.  
*Paradox or Politique Discourses [First—Fourth].*  
 77.  
 Paradoxes of Defence. *v.* Fencing—Silver.  
 Paré, Ambroise, 843; alluded to, 15.  
 Pas, C. de. 730.  
 Pasino, A. di, 781; mentioned, xxii.

Pathwaie to Martiall Discipline, The. *v.* Art  
 Mil.—Styward.  
 Pathway to Military Practise, A. *v.* Art Mil.  
 —Rich.  
 Patrizi, Francesco. 573, 574.  
 Patten, Sir W., 10, *v.* History; alluded to, 7.  
 Pausanias. Alluded to, 88.  
 Pavie, Raimond de Beccarie de. *v.* Four-  
 quevaux, de.  
 Pay :  
   True Abstract of a List, A. 154.  
 — treated of. 116.  
 Peacham, Henry, 128. *v.* Art Mil.  
 Pelliciarì, Bartolommeo. 588, 618, 725.  
 Pennacchi. xxii.  
 Peregrinus, A. 914.  
 Perez de Xea, Migucl. 640.  
 Perfect manner of handling the sword and  
 target. *v.* Mars his Feild.  
 Perret, J. 799.  
*Perry, Hugh.* 109.  
 Peters, H. 153.  
 Petit, Wm. 80.  
 Philip, Duke of Cleves. *v.* Cleves.  
 Philo. xvii, xxxiv, xxxviii.  
 Piccinino, Spadino F. 656.  
 Pigafetta. xxxix.  
 Pigna, G. B. 882.  
 Pinelli, Ant. 681.  
 Pisan, C. de, 1, 503, *v.* Art Mil.; alluded to,  
 xiv, xxxi, 17.  
 Pistofilo, B. 918.  
 Planis Campy, D. de. 862.  
 Plazzoni, Francesco. 860.  
 Pluvinel, A. 730.  
 Policies of War, 43. *v.* Art Mil.  
 Politicke and Militaric Discourses. *v.* Art Mil.  
 —La Noue.  
 Politicke Moral and Martial Discourses. *v.*  
 Art Mil.—Hurault.  
*Pollecy of Warre.* 5.  
 Polman, J, 21, 34. *v.* History.  
 Polyænus. xvii, xxxvi.  
 Polybius, 127; mentioned, xvii, xviii, xix,  
 xxxiii, xxxix, 3, 13, 41, 88.  
 Pomodoro, G. 944.

- Ponsonby, W.* 62, 68, 70, 73.  
 Pons de Perpignan, J. 61.  
 Porcacchi, T. 534, 539, 540.  
 Porcia, G., 6, 510. *v.* Art Mil.  
 Porta, G. B. 804.  
 Possevino, A. 881, 904.  
 Possevino, G. B. 881.  
 Possidonius the Stoic (writer on Tactics), alluded to. 88.  
 Pozzo, Paride dal. *v.* Puteo.  
 Practice, Proceedings and Lawes of armes. *v.* Law—Sutcliffe.  
*Practice of Artillerie.* 114.  
 Practice of Fortification, A. *v.* Fortification—Ive.  
 Préau, G. du. 870.  
 Preceptes of Warre. *v.* Art Mil.—Porcia.  
 Preuss, Jacob. 509.  
 Principles of the Art Militarie. *v.* Art Mil.—Hexham.  
 Private Schoole of Defence. *v.* Fencing—Hale.  
 Procter, Thomas, 23. *v.* Art Mil.  
 Profitable and necessarie Booke of Observations. *v.* Prooved Practice, A.  
 Promis, C. xvi, xix, xxi.  
 Prooved practice for all young Chirurgians. *v.* Medical—Clowes.  
 Prospective Glasse of Warre. *v.* Art Mil.—Cooke.  
*Purfoot, T.* 63.  
 Purlilia. *v.* Porcia, 865.  
 Puteo, Paris de, *otherwise* Pozzo, Paride dal. 500, 865.  
*Pynson.* 8.  
 Pyrotechnia. *v.* Pyrotechnics—Babington.  
 Pyrotechnics, English books on :  
     Babington, J. 131.  
     Malthus, F. 118.  
 — treated of, 13, 16, 74, 130, and 931 to 939.  
 Pyrrhus (writer on Tactics), mentioned, xxxiv, 88.  
 Quersitanus, J. *v.* Du Chesne.  
 Raincri, V. 916.  
 Ramelli, A. 788.  
 Ranzovius, H. 578.  
*Rare Inventions and strange Devices.* 24.  
*Raynold, T.* 4.  
 Regiomontanus. Alluded to, 38.  
 Regulations to be observed. *v.* Ordinances—Drury.  
 Reusnerus, E. L. 608.  
 Rhumelius, J. P. 864.  
 Rich, B., 22, 36, 78, *v.* Art Mil. ; Miscell. ; alluded to, xxvii, 105.  
 Rieffel. 665.  
 Rigault, N. 927.  
 Righi, G. 720.  
*Right practice, proceedings and lawes of armes.* 57.  
 Rinaldini. 805.  
 Rivault, F. 676.  
 Roberts, J., 140, 141. *v.* Artillery ; Miscellaneous.  
 Robins, Benjamin. xxi.  
*Robinson, H.* 114.  
 Rocca, B. 534, 540, 551.  
 Roe, Sir T., 125. *v.* History.  
 Rohan, H., duc de, 645, *v.* Art Mil. ; alluded to, xv, 71.  
 Rojas, C. 602, 793.  
 Roman, Francisco. Alluded to, 61.  
 Romano, A. 935.  
 Romano, B. 942.  
 Romano, V. 583.  
 Rossetti, O. 694.  
 Rota, J. F. 847.  
 Rovere. *v.* Della Rovere.  
 Rudolphus, J. 857.  
 Ruelens, Ch. 884.  
 Ruffo, G. 706.  
 Rumpf. xi, xii, xxiv.  
 Ruscelli, G., 663 ; alluded to, 25, 114.  
 Rusio, L. 705.  
 Ryff, W. H., 661 ; mentioned, xxxii.  
 S., J. *v.* Selden, J.  
 S., R., 66. *v.* Archery.  
 Sadler, J., 17. *v.* Translators.  
 Saint Chaman, H. de. 657.  
 Saint Didier, H. P. 247.

Saint Julien. 677, 803.  
 Saint Rémy, Surirey de. x.  
 Salazar, D. de. 511.  
 Salge, J. P. 249.  
 Salusbury, T. 697.  
 Sansovino, F. 552, 708.  
 Santbech. Alluded to, 25, 38, 114.  
 Santini, P. xix, xx.  
 Sardi, P. 688, 698, 810, 819, 828, 834.  
 Sarti, A. 820, 823.  
 Sarti, P. 637, 822.  
 Savaron, J. P. 248.  
 Saviolo, V., 63, v. Fencing; alluded to, 69, 91.  
 Savonne, P. 554.  
 Savorgnano, M. 587.  
 Scala, G., 800, 818; mentioned, 944.  
 Scarion de Pavia. 905.  
 Scavino. 609.  
 Schiavina. 669.  
 Schmidtlap, Joh. 689, 934, 936.  
 Schneeberger, A. 849.  
 Schoole of the Noble and Worthy Science of Defence, The, 91. v. Fencing—Swetnam.  
 Schoten, F. van. 821.  
 Schrenck, von Nozing J. 928.  
 Schubert. 930.  
 Sciaban, L. 696.  
 Second Part of the booke of Battailles. v. History—Polman.  
 Second Part of the Principles of the Art Military. v. Principles of the Art Militarie.  
 Second Part of the Soldiers Grammar. v. Souldiers Grammar.  
 Segar, Sir W., 49, 75. v. Miscell.  
 Selden, John, 81. v. Miscell.  
 Serdonati, F. 605.  
 Sereno, B. 722.  
 Seres, Wm. 11, 14.  
 Sericant-Maior. v. Art Mil.—Valdes.  
 Sex. Jul. Front. Liber. 3.  
 Shefford, Wm. 108.  
 Sheldrake, J. 50.  
 Shepherd, R. xxxvii.  
 Short Method for the easier resolving of any Militarie Question. v. Art Mil.—Du Praissac.

Short, P. 71.  
 Shute, J. 23.  
 Shute, W., 83. v. History.  
 Siege of Breda, The. v. History—Hugo.  
 Signorelus de Homodeis. 868.  
 Signalling treated of, 13.  
 Silver, G., 69, v. Fencing; alluded to, 63, p. 249.  
 Silvestre, D. 717.  
 Simeoni, G. 522.  
 Sims, V. 50.  
 Single Combat. 81.  
 Smith, T., 73, 74, v. Artillery; alluded to, 114.  
 Smythe, Sir J., 46, 60, v. Art Mil.; alluded to, vi, viii, 25, 58, 59, 66; MS. of, 46.  
 Socinus, M. 872.  
 Solemne, D. 704.  
 Soranzo, G. 911.  
 Souldier Pleading his owne Cause. v. Drill—Trussell.  
 Souldiers Accidence, v. Art Mil.—Markham, G.; alluded to, 11, 108, 109.  
 Souldiers Exercise, v. Art Mil.—Markham, G.; alluded to, 108.  
 Souldiers Grammar. v. Art Mil.—Markham, G.  
 Souldiers Practise. 126.  
 Soulsby, B. H. xiii.  
 Spagericke Antidotarie. v. Medical. — Du Chesne.  
 Sparke, M. 116, 161.  
 Speckle, D., 789; mentioned, xxii.  
 Speculum Belli Sacri. v. Miscell.—Leighton.  
 Spontone, C., 568; mentioned, 600.  
 Statutes and ordynances for the Warre, 8. v. Ordinances.  
 Stansby, W. 86.  
 Steer, J. 859.  
 Stevin, S. 703, 809.  
 Stilliola, M. 610.  
 Strachey, W., 82. v. Ordinances.  
 Stradano. Mentioned, 745.  
 Stratagems of Jerusalem. Miscell.—Lloyd.  
 Stratagems, Sleyghtes and policies of Warre. v. Art Mil.—Frontinus.  
 Stratoticos. v. Arithmetically Militare Treatise

Stratocles (writer on Tactics), alluded to, 88.  
 Struccio, Alberto. 619.  
 Stubbe, H. 660, 688.  
 Stürm, L. x, xii.  
 Styward, T., 28, *v.* Art Mil.; alluded to, 54.  
 Suarez de Peralta. 711.  
 Suidas. xxxiii.  
 Sully, work attributed to. 37.  
 Surgeon's Mate, The. *v.* Medical—Woodall.  
 Survey of the new pretended Discipline, 58.  
     *v.* Art Mil.  
 Susio, G. B. 886.  
 Sutcliffe, M., 57, *v.* Law; mentioned, xvi.  
 Swedish Discipline. *v.* History—Roe.  
 Swedish Intelligencer. 125.  
 Swetnam, J., 91. *v.* Fencing.  
 Symmons, M. 136.  
  
 T., J., 86. *v.* Drill.  
 Tabourot, J. P. 247.  
 Tactics of Ælian. *v.* Art Mil.—Bingham.  
 Tap, John. 100.  
 Tarducci, A. xxxi, 675.  
 Tartaglia, N. 38, 658, 660, *v.* Artillery;  
     alluded to, xi, xx, xxi, xxiii, 24, 25, 35, 114,  
     665, 786.  
 Telotson, W. 6.  
 Tensini, F. 813.  
 Teixeira, Albenas J. 734.  
 Theorike and Practike of Moderne Warres.  
     *v.* Art Mil.—Barret.  
 Theorique and Practise of War. *v.* Art Mil.—  
     Mendoza.  
 Theti, C. 776.  
 Thevenot. xviii.  
 Thibault, G. P. 248.  
 Third Part of the Principles of the Art Military.  
     *v.* Principles of the Art Militarie.  
 Thomassy. Alluded to, 1.  
 Thorins, John, 47, 48. *v.* Translators.  
 Three bookes of colloquies. *v.* Artil.—Tar-  
     taglia.  
 Thyboure, F., 937; alluded to, 100, 118.  
 Topography, Books in English on:  
     Digges, T. 16.  
     Meier, A. 44.

Topography treated of, 940 to 950.  
 Torre, Pedro de la. Alluded to, 61.  
 Torricelli, E. xxi.  
 Tottel, R. 23.  
 Tournes, J. de. 542, 771.  
 Toxophilus. *v.* Archery—Ascham.  
 Trajan. Alluded to, 17.  
 Translators and Editors, English:  
     Aggas, E. 37, 53.  
     B., W. 103.  
     Barry, Gerrat. 111.  
     Bedingfield, T. 30.  
     Betham, P. 6.  
     Bingham, J. 88, 98.  
     Blundeville. 12.  
     Caxton, W. 1.  
     Crosse, W. 80.  
     Cruso, J. 146, 148.  
     D., J. 121.  
     Dillingham, W. 166.  
     Edmonds, C. 71.  
     Eliot, J. 52.  
     Fresnes, de. 37.  
     G., C. H. 110.  
     G., H. 19.  
     G., I. 61.  
     Girard, A. 139.  
     Golding, A. 65.  
     Grimstone, E. 127.  
     Haywood. 93.  
     Hester, J. 50.  
     Hexham, H. 139.  
     Hitchcock, R. 54.  
     Hoby, Sir E. 67.  
     Ive, Paul. 41.  
     Jones, Philip. 44.  
     Lichfield, N. 29.  
     Lucar, C. 38.  
     Manwood. 93.  
     Morysine, R. 3.  
     Sadler, J. 17.  
     Thorins, J. 47, 48.  
     Whitehorne, P. 12, 14.  
 Tratado de re militari. 567.  
 Treatise named Lucar Appendix. *v.* Artillery  
     —Lucar.

- Treatise of Artificial Fire-Works. *v.* Pyrotechnics—Malthus.
- Treatise of Gonesbotte.* 15.
- Treatise of Modern War, A. *v.* Art Mil.—Rohan, de.
- Treu, A. 833.
- Tribolati. 744.
- Triumphs of Nassau, The. *v.* History—Shute.
- Troupitzen, L. à. 647.
- True Abstract of a List, 154. *v.* Pay.
- True defêce of peace, The. *v.* Miscell.—Basille.
- True Description of the Discipline of War, The. *v.* Drill.
- True Relation. *v.* Miscell.—Lingham.
- True Schoole of Warre.* 103.
- Trussell, Thomas, 95. *v.* Drill.
- Turner, Sir J. Alluded to, 113, 156.
- Ubalduino, P. 584.
- Ulloa, A. 894.
- Ufano, D., 684 ; alluded to, xi, xxi, xxxi, 100, 114, 164.
- Uffenbach, 844.
- Urbino, Fran. Maria, Duke of. 556.
- Valdes, F. de, 47, 555. *v.* Art Mil.
- Valgrisi. 844, 845, 848.
- Valle. *v.* Della Valle.
- Valtrinus, J. A. 582.
- Valturius, Robertus. xix, xxxi, 501.
- Vargas, Machuca B. de. 716, 728, 924.
- Varroi, P. 723.
- Vedel, T. 639.
- Vegetius, F. R., 17, *v.* Art Mil. ; alluded to, xvii, xviii, xix, xxxiii, xxxvii, 1, 4, 14, 41, 155 ; editions of, 3.
- Vere, Sir F., 166, *v.* History ; alluded to, xxii, xxxi.
- Veyras, J. 853.
- Viaticum. *v.* Medical—Woodall.
- Victualling :  
     Hitchcock, R. 55.  
     — treated of. 116.
- Vieul, de. *v.* Hurault, de.
- Vigènère, B. de. 598.
- Vigo, J. Alluded to, 15.
- Villalobos, S. de. 718.
- Villa Sante, D. de. *v.* Castillo, de.
- Villamont, de. *v.* Cavalcabo, H.
- Ville, A. de. 830, 831 ; mentioned, 798.
- Vincent I., Duke of Mantua, 628. *v.* Mantua.
- Vincent. Of Honor and honorable quarrels.* 63.
- Vincenzio Saviolo his Practise. *v.* Fencing—Saviolo.
- Viotti. 576.
- Vitruvius. xvii, xxxiv, xxxv.
- Vizani, A. 749.
- Vox Militis. *v.* Miscell.—Marcelline.
- W. M. 917.
- Waelpote, J. P.* 137.
- Walkley, T.* 95.
- Walley, R.* 36.
- Wallhausen. *v.* Jacobi.
- Walther, C. xi, xii, xvi.
- Ward, R., 147. *v.* Art Mil.
- Ward, R.* 31, 54.
- Warlike Directions. *v.* Drill—Fisher.
- Warre, Of. Of Souldiers. Of the Time. Decay on Martiall Discipline.* 22.
- Warre-like Treatise of the Pike. *v.* Art Mil.—Lupton.
- Warren, T.* 917.
- Waterson, S.* 51, 127.
- Watts, Dr. W. 125.
- Wescher. xviii.
- Weston, Thos. 697.
- Whetstone, G., 32. *v.* Miscell.
- Whitehorne, P., 12, 13, 14. *v.* Art Mil.—Translators.
- Whittaker, R.* 102.
- Whytchurch, Ed.* 6, 9.
- Wight, J.* 13, 19.
- Williams, J.* 146.
- Williams, Sir R., 45, 93, *v.* Art Mil.—History ; alluded to, vi, xiii, 46, 59, 80.
- Williamson, W.* 13, 19.
- Wolfe, John.* 40, 44, 47, 48, 52, 53, 58, 63, 507, 902 ; mentioned, xiv, 786.
- Wolfe, Reynold.* 7.
- Woodall, John, 115. *v.* Medical.

Woodalls Viaticum, 115. *v.* Medical.

*Woodcock, T.* 24, 35.

*Wouw, H. J. van.* 121.

*Wreitoun, J.* 120.

*Wyer, R.* 2.

Xea. *v.* Perez de Xea.

Xenophon. xxxiii.

Ximenez de Urrea, G. 894.

Zambelli, L. 814.

Zanchi, G. B., 767 ; mentioned, xxii, xxvii,  
786, 787.

Zetter, J. de. 755.

Zilettus. 500, 868, 871.

Zonca, V. 839.

Zonta, C. 693.

Zubler, L. 943, 947, 948, 949.





U5  
C6

39



RETURN TO CIRCULATION

